

John Stewart  
C. H. S.  
Form 4.

# BELLUM

# GALLICUM

BOOKS I. & II.

HENDERSON

SECOND EDITION.

THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY (LIMITED)

*Milton Baker.*  
The Copp, Clark Company, Ltd. School and College Books.

HENDERSON'S CLASSICS.

The following Classics with Notes, Vocabulary, etc.

By JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.

CAESAR'S BELLUM GALLICUM. (B. I.)

With Life of Caesar—Notes and Vocabulary.

Price . . . . . 50c.

CAESAR'S BELLUM BRITTANICUM.

With Life of Caesar—Notes and Vocabulary.

Price . . . . . 50c.

CICERO IN CATILINAM. (B. I.)

With Life of Cicero—Notes and Vocabulary.

Price . . . . . 50c.

CICERO IN CATILINAM. (B. II.)

With Life of Cicero—Notes and Vocabulary.

Price . . . . . 50c.

VERGIL'S AENEID (B. I.)

With Life of Vergil—Notes and Vocabulary.

Price . . . . . 50c.

VERGIL'S AENEID (B. V.)

With Life of Vergil—Notes and Vocabulary.

Price . . . . . 60c.

CAESAR'S BELLUM GALLICUM. (B. I. and II.)

With Life of Caesar—Maps, Notes and Vocabulary, etc.

Price . . . . . 75c.

(also in separate volumes, each 50c.)

*Milton Baker*

*John D Stewart*  
*Milton Baker*  
*Aylmer F. Baker*  
Form 4 / 1920  
The Copp, Clark Company, Ltd. School and College Books.

188  
FASQUELLE'S FIRST LESSONS IN FRENCH.

New and Revised Edition. Enlarged by Prof. E. Roubaud, B.A.

Special Canadian Authorized Edition . . . . . 65c.

GOODWIN'S CHEMISTRY FOR MEDICAL STUDENTS.

By W. L. Goodwin, D.Sc. (Edin.)

Price, . . . . . \$1.75

This book comprises not only theoretical but practical Chemistry, and may thus serve as a Text Book for the whole course followed by students of medicine

GREEN'S SHORT HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH PEOPLE.

Special Canadian Authorized Edition . . . . . \$1.50

HIGH SCHOOL ZOOLOGY.

By R. Ramsay Wright, M.A., B.Sc. University College, Toronto.

Authorized by Education Department. Price, . . . . . 75c.

MACMURCHY AND BROWN'S ELEMENTARY ARITHMETIC.

Price, . . . . . 25c.

MAGNUS' LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY MECHANICS

Price, . . . . . \$1.00

MOIR'S MAP GEOGRAPHY.

Containing 12 Coloured Maps. Price, . . . . . 25c.

MOIR'S BRITISH HISTORY NOTES.

Price, . . . . . 15c.

*Milton Baker*

# Practical Exercises in Composition,

By H. I. STRANG, B.A.

25 Cents.

---

## MATHEMATICS.

---

### Elementary Trigonometry,

BY J. B. LOCK, M.A., Fellow of Gonville and Caius College,  
Cambridge.

Special Canadia Edition, - - - - \$1.00.

---

### Book-keeping Blanks,

Complete.—Containing Day Book, Journal, Ledger, Six Column  
Journal, Cash and Bill Book.

(For use with McLean's High School Book-keeping.)

25 Cents.

---

### Bi-Lingual Readers,

FIRST READER—PART I.	.	.	.	.	.	.	10	Cents.
" " PART II.	.	.	.	.	.	.	15	"
SECOND BOOK,	.	.	.	.	.	.	25	"
THIRD "	.	.	.	.	.	.	35	"
LES GRAND INVENTIONS	.	.	.	.	.	.	50	"

Authorized by Education Department of Ontario.

---

### Christian Catechism,

BY PHILIP SCHAFF, D.D., New York, slightly abridged (by permission of the Author) from the edition published by the American S. S. Union.

Per 100 - - - - - - - - - - \$3.00.

---

THE COPP, CLARK CO., LTD., TORONTO.

Classical Text-Book Series.

---

CAESAR'S  
BELLUM GALLICUM,  
(BOOKS I. & II.)

WITH

INTRODUCTORY NOTICES, NOTES AND COMPLETE VOCABULARY,

FOR THE USE OF

CLASSES READING FOR DEPARTMENTAL AND UNIVERSITY  
EXAMINATIONS.

BY

JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.,

HEAD MASTER, ST. CATHARINES COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE.

---

TORONTO:  
THE COPP CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED,  
9 FRONT STREET WEST.

1890.

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and ninety, by THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED, Toronto, Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

*Ervin Baker.*



## P R E F A C E .

---

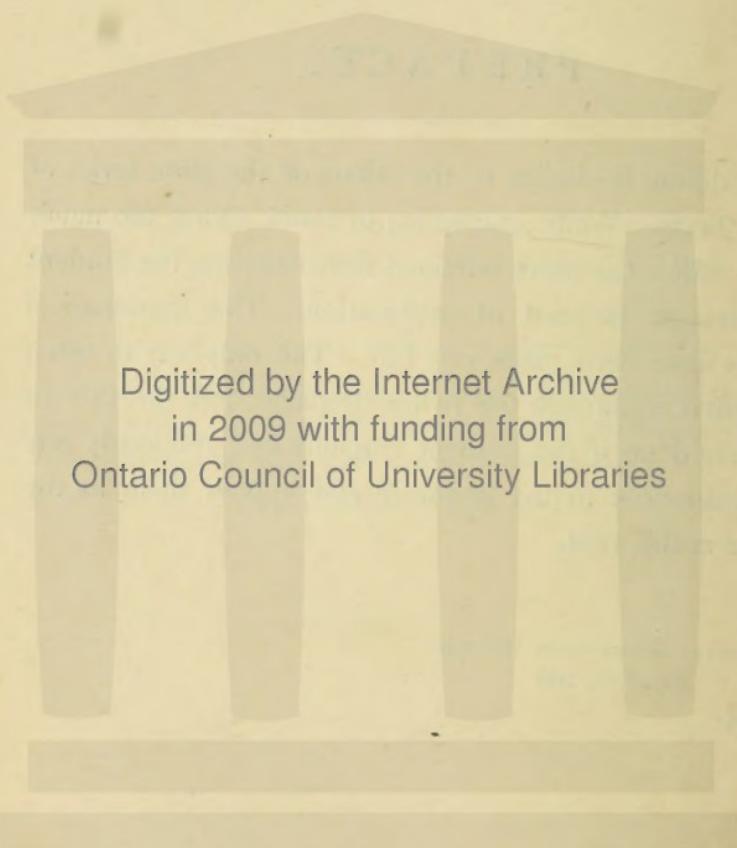
This Edition is similar to the others of the same series of Classical Texts. While attempting to avoid giving too much help, the Editor has never refrained from assisting the Student in all passages in need of explanation. The grammatical references have been made very full. The only way to teach Latin Syntax is through the living language, and this can be successfully done if the Student carefully and studiously gets up the references to the grammar and applies them to the examples in the Text.

ST. CATHARINES COLLEGiate INSTITUTe

March 1st, 1890

2





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2009 with funding from  
Ontario Council of University Libraries

80  
O. Baker.

Springfield  
Ind.

J. Stewart

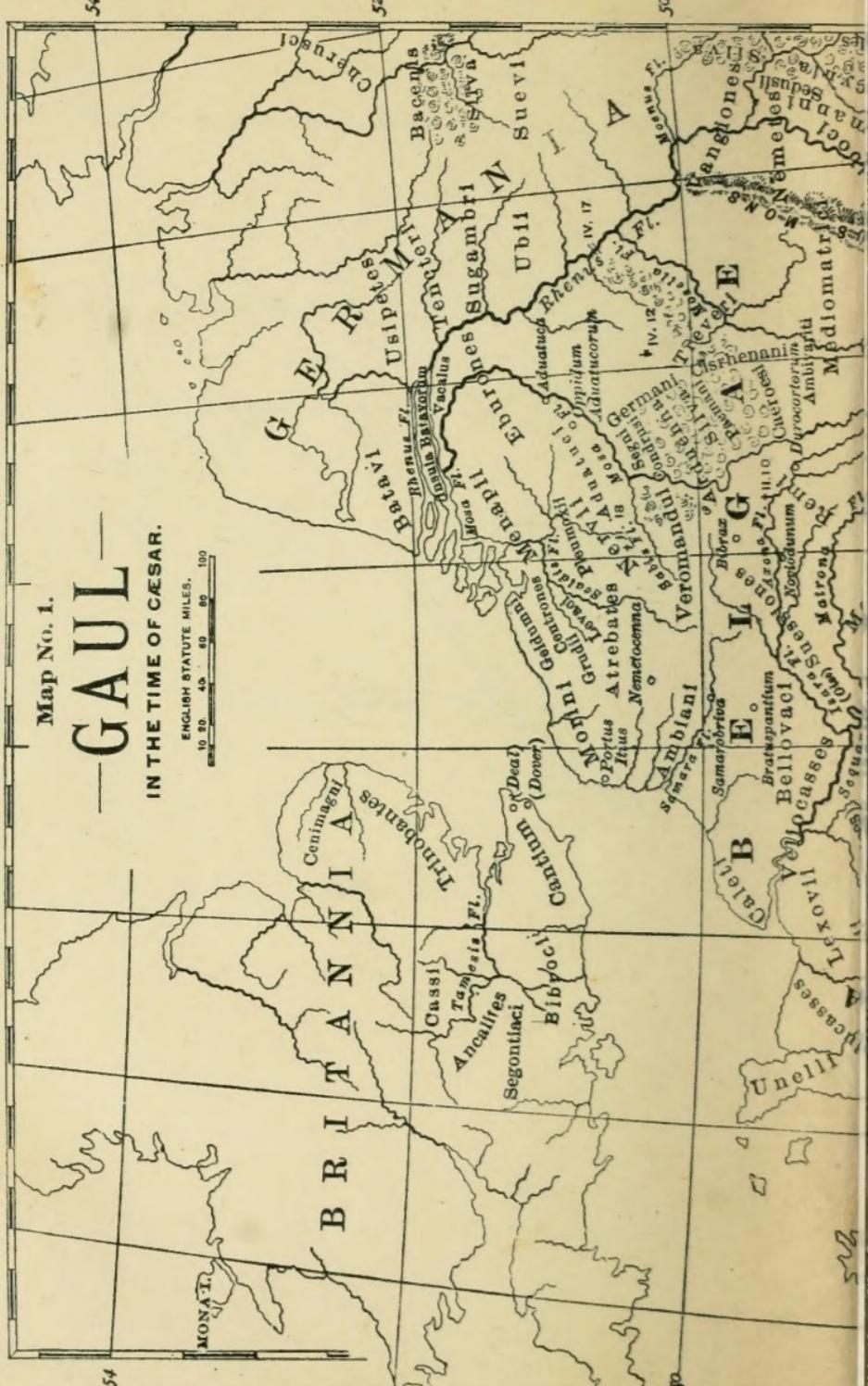
1 Long West 2 0 Longitude 2 East from 4 Greenwich 0

Map No. 1.

GAUL

IN THE TIME OF CÆSAR.

ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.  
10 20 40 60 80 100



INTERNUM

M A R E

VIA A



## I.

# LIFE OF CAESAR.

---

Caius Julius Caesar<sup>1</sup> was born on the 12th of July, B. C. BIRTH 100.<sup>2</sup> He was thus six years younger than Cicero and Pompey. His family (*gens Julia*) was not merely one of the oldest, but *His family.* was also one of the most respected of the patrician families of the capital. It traced its descent to Iulus, son of Aeneas, and thus through Venus claimed to be of divine origin. It also embraced among its members many who distinguished themselves in the service of the state.

Little is known of Caesar's father, except that he held at some time or other the office of *praetor*, and that he died suddenly at *Caesar's father.* Pisa, B.C. 84. The education of young Caesar seems to have been directed chiefly by his mother, *Aurelia*, who was a woman of lofty ambition and a firm believer in the noble destiny of her son. His early training, according to the fashion of that day, consisted in acquiring a knowledge of numbers, grammar, music, and in practising physical exercises. He is also said to have devoted considerable time to verse making.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Each Roman citizen had usually *three names*: called the *praenomen* (marking the *individual*), the *nomen* (designating the *gens* or *clan*), and the *cognomen* (telling the *family*). Thus Caius is a *praenomen*, Julius is a *nomen*, and Caesar, a *cognomen*. Sometimes an *agnomen* was added for honorary distinction as *Africanus* to P. Cornelius Scipio.

<sup>2</sup> Mommsen (Hist. of Rome, Vol. III., 15,) argues that Caesar was born 102 B.C. His main reason for assigning this date is that the *lex annalis*, which prescribed the minimum age at which a citizen could hold certain offices, was observed in Caesar's case. By this law no one could hold the quaestorship before he was 34, the aedileship before 37, the praetorship before 41, the consulship before 43. By referring to the chronological table the plausibility of the argument would appear. In answer to this we may say that: (1) the law was not always observed; (2) Suetonius represents Caesar as 16 years of age when his father died; (3) Plutarch, Suetonius and Appian, state that Caesar was 56 years of age when he was assassinated.

<sup>3</sup> *Laudes Herculis* and *Oedipus* were among his youthful poems.

*Related to  
Marius.*

His aunt Julia was married to C. Marius. To this relationship may be ascribed the fact that Caesar at the early age of 14 was appointed to the office of priest of Jove (*flamen dialis*), by virtue of which he was a member of the sacred college and received a handsome income. We may also ascribe to his connection with Marius the bent of his political opinions. Caesar after the death of the great dictator led the popular or democratic party as opposed to the senatorial or aristocratic party.

*Betrothed to  
Cossutia.*

He was at first betrothed to Cossutia, a wealthy heiress, but he broke off the engagement on the death of his father. In the following year (83 B.C.), he married Cornelia, daughter of L. Cornelius Cinna, the leader of the popular party and the avowed opponent of Sylla. This union was displeasing to Sylla, who ordered Caesar to divorce Cornelia. This Caesar refused to do. Through the intercession of Aurelius Cotta, Caesar was at length pardoned.

*Goes to the  
East, and  
serves his  
first cam-  
paign.*

In consequence of having thwarted the will of Sylla, Caesar incurred his enmity and found it unsafe to remain at Rome. He went to the East, and served his first campaign under M. Minucius Thermus. He seems to have remained in the East for about four years, distinguishing himself for personal bravery at the siege of Mitylene and in the war against the Cilician pirates. On the report of Sylla's death, 78 B.C., he came home.

*Returns  
home.*

The tactics that Caesar adopted at this time to further the interests of his party showed his consummate skill as a political leader. The Roman Senate had become utterly powerless to deal with the duty of administering properly the government. The lower classes thronged with turbulent crowds the cities, in consequence of the free labour of the Italian provincials being in a great measure supplanted by slave labour. Ever since the days of the Gracchi opposed to this democratic element was the

*Composition  
of the  
Senate.*

Senate, conservative in its nature, being composed of men whose interests were likely to suffer if the democratic element should get any power in the state. In the midway between these two forces we have the wealthy class led by such men as Crassus, without any aristocratic antecedents, on the one hand opposed to democracy as men of affluence naturally are, and on the other opposed to the old families who simply prided themselves in having their descent through a long line of ancestors. In fact the history of Rome from the middle of the second century, B.C., down to the time of Augustus, presents little more than

*The three  
parties at  
Rome.*

the intrigues of wily politicians who by unscrupulousness endeavoured to supplant each other in the favour of the people. Caesar attempted to show that the Senatorial government of the provincials was thoroughly corrupt. He indicted Cn. Dolabella (<sup>Caesar indicta Dolabella</sup> 78 B. C.) and C. Antonius (<sup>and Antonius</sup> 77 B. C) for extortion. Though Caesar lost these causes, he really gained a triumph, since he proved the utter corruption of the courts which were filled by the Senatorial faction. To improve his style in oratory, he <sup>Goes to Rhodes.</sup> went to the school of Molo, at Rhodes. On the voyage thither Caesar's vessel was captured by pirates at Pharmacussa (<sup>Captured Fermaco</sup>, now <sup>by pirates</sup> one of the Sporades). He was detained for forty days, and was not released till a ransom of \$50,000 had been paid. During his detention, he is said to have joined with these marauders in their sports, and to have jestingly told them that he would, when liberated, have them crucified. This threat he afterwards made good. Landing at Miletus, he collected a small fleet, captured them, and brought them to Pergamus, where they were executed. He stayed at the school of Molo for two years.

When absent from Rome, Caesar was elected *pontifex*. This office could be held only by one residing in the capital, and *pontifex* thus he was compelled to return. A reaction had meanwhile set in opposed to the policy of Sylla. With the Consulship of Pompey and Crassus (70 B. C.) a reform had been introduced by restoring the rights of the tribunes and the censors, and by remodelling the Senate. Both Pompey and Caesar supported these reforms. In 68 B. C., Caesar became *quaestor*, and by virtue of this office he was entitled to a seat in the Senate. He went soon after his election with Antistius Vetus into Spain, and took up his residence at *Corduba* (now *Cordova*). One of the chief duties of the *quaestor* was to attend the provincial assizes (*conventus*), and settle the disputes that arose between provincials. In this office he displayed a spirit of equity and moderation in striking contrast to the policy of his predecessors. His popularity gained for him many adherents, who, in after days, flocked to his standard at the battle of Munda. It was during this year that he lost his wife *Cornelia*.

Caesar married Pompey's cousin, Pompeia, in the following year. No doubt this union was concluded for political reasons. Pompeia Pompey was now in the height of his fame. This very year he was appointed by the Gabinian law (*lex Gabinia*) sole com-

mander of the Roman fleet to clear the coasts of the Mediterranean of the pirates who invested it. Next year he was equally successful in defeating Mithridates, king of Armenia.

*Elected curule aedile.*

In 65 B. C., Caesar was elected *curule aedile*. While holding this office, he increased his popularity, as well as his debts, by the costly gladiatorial shows he gave to gratify the depraved tastes of a Roman populace. He also showed his devotion to the memory of Marius by causing the trophies of that great commander, which had been destroyed by Sylla, to be replaced. Many a veteran, reading the inscriptions recounting the victories of Campi Raudii, Aquae Sextiae, and over Jugurtha, would recall the memory of the greatest soldier of the age, the deliverer of Italy, and the sturdy supporter of popular rights. In the year 63 B. C., a year noted for the conspiracy of Catilina, Caesar became *pontifex maximus*. On the trial of the conspirators, Caesar advocated the penalty of perpetual banishment, while Cato advocated the death penalty. Subsequent events proved that Caesar was right.

*Caesar pontifex maximus.*

*Elected praetor.*

*Propraetor of Spain.*

*First Triumvirate.*

*Julia, Caesar's daughter, married to Pompey.*

*Goes to Gaul.*

*Gallic campaigns.*

*B. C. 57.*

In 62 B. C., Caesar was elected *praetor*, and while in this office he openly opposed the party of the Senate. On resigning the office, he went as *propraetor* to Spain, when he managed to gain money enough to pay off his enormous debts. On his return, he united with Pompey and Crassus to form the coalition called the *First Triumvirate*. Pompey may be said to have been the representative of the aristocratic classes, Caesar of the democratic, while Crassus was an exponent of the moneyed party. In the next year Caesar was Consul. To further cement the union, Pompey married Julia, Caesar's daughter. During his Consulship he brought up several reforms, especially a bill for the division of the lands among the people. Before laying down his Consulship he procured the passage of a bill by which he was invested for five years with proconsular power over the Gauls and Illyricum.

Nine years were spent in the subjugation of the Gauls. In the first campaign, Caesar at Bibracte (now *Autun*) drove back the Helvetii who were moving westward, and attempted to subdue Gaul. In the same year he defeated at Basle Ariovistus, a German king, who at the instigation of the Arverni and Sequani had been invited to take their part against the Aedui.

In the second campaign, Caesar defeated the Belgae at the river Sabis (now *Sambre*).

Caesar in the third campaign broke up a coalition of the tribes *B.C. 56.* of the north-west of Gaul, which had united against him. During this year, he renewed the agreement with Pompey and Crassus, who covenanted that his command should be extended to five years further.

In his fourth campaign, Caesar crossed the Rhine, but remained *B.C. 55.* only eighteen days on the German side. Later on in the same year he crossed over to Britain.

The next campaign was chiefly against Britain, which, however, he only partially subdued, being recalled by a sudden uprising in Gaul.

He in the next campaign crushed the general revolt, under *B.C. 53* Vercingetorix, of the subject tribes in Gaul. With the fall of Alesia, the power of the Gauls was crushed for ever.

In his eighth campaign, he was complete master of Gaul, *B.C. 52.* having reduced the tribes one after another to subjection.

The last campaign is uneventful. He remained in Cisalpine *B.C. 51.* Gaul, and returned to Transalpine Gaul for a short time in the summer to review his troops.

During Caesar's absence in Gaul, Crassus was slain at the battle of Carrhae, *B.C. 53.* This really broke up the Triumvirate. Pompey began to view Caesar's career with distrust and alarm. He entered into a league with the aristocracy and the Senate. A demand was finally passed by the Senate that Caesar should disband his legions. This Caesar refused to do, unless Pompey followed the same course. Finally a decree "that the Consuls should provide that the State should receive no hurt," was passed. This order was equivalent to a declaration of war, and was regarded as such by Caesar.

With one legion he crossed the Rubicon, the boundary between Gaul and Italy. Soon Italy came over to his side. Pompey and the party of the Senate fled to Greece. Caesar marched to Spain, defeated the party of Pompey at Ilerda, and took Massalia in Southern Gaul.

Caesar then prepared to follow Pompey. For some time both armies encamped on the Apsus in Illyricum. Finally the decisive battle was fought August 9th, *B.C. 48,* at Pharsalia. Though Caesar's forces were but one-half the number of those of Pompey, the superior generalship and the courage of despair won the day, and Pompey's troops were completely routed. Pompey fled to

Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered by an emissary of the king. Caesar followed and became involved in difficulties in settling the succession to the throne.

*Thapsus.* Soon after he crushed the Pompeian party at the battle of *Thapsus*, in Africa, 46 B.C. Caesar was now the master of the Roman world. He returned to Rome, celebrated his three triumphs, and published a general amnesty to his opponents. He reformed the calendar, and introduced many useful measures for the internal economy of the State.

*Munda.* In 45 B.C., the two sons of Pompey had collected a force in Spain. Thither Caesar marched, and at *Munda* totally defeated it. The Senate conferred on him nearly all the offices of State, and thus the whole authority was centered in one man.

*Death of Caesar.* A conspiracy, headed by Brutus and Cassius, was formed against him. They were actuated partly by mistaken patriotic motives, and partly by personal jealousy and hatred. Caesar fell March 15th, 44 B.C., pierced by the daggers of the assassins just as he had entered the Senate house.

*Caesar's appearance.* Caesar was tall, and of commanding aspect ; his features well marked and prominent ; his complexion fair ; his eyes keen, black, and expressive. In latter life he was bald, which he somewhat concealed by wearing a sort of diadem. His robust frame was inured to hardship, and exhibited remarkable powers of endurance. With regard to dress he was very fastidious. His private life was singularly free from many of the vices of the age.

## II.

### THE WORKS OF CAESAR.

#### (1) *Extant :—*

(a) *Commentarii de Bello Gallico*, in seven books. This work contains an account of the conquest of Gaul, from B.C. 58 to B.C. 52. In the first book we have the conquest of the Helvetii mentioned, and in the seventh book the death of Clodius is referred to as lately having taken place. As the death of Clodius happened B.C. 52, we may assume that the events recorded happened between these two dates. An eighth book was added by Aulus Hirtius to complete the events to 51 B.C.

(b) *Commentarii de Bello Civili*, in three books. This gives an account of the civil wars down to the time of the

Alexandrine war. The history of the Alexandrine, African, and Spanish campaigns were afterwards added. Hirtius probably wrote the account of the Alexandrine campaign; Oppius, that of the African; the account of the Spanish war was written probably by a centurion of Caesar's army, according to Niebuhr, who discovers a change in style and expression from that of the other two accounts.

(2) *Lost Works* :—

(a) *Anticato*. A reply to Cicero's panegyric on Cato Uticensis, who fell at Thapsus, B.C. 46.

(b) *De Analogia*, or as Cicero calls it, *De Ratione Latine loquendi*. Dedicated to Cicero, and written when Caesar was crossing the Alps.

(c) *Libri Auspiciorum* or *Auguralia*. Published B.C. 63, when Caesar was *Pontifex maximus*.

(d) *De Astris*. Published also B.C. 63.

(e) *Apothegmata*, or *Dicta Collectanea*. A collection of Witticisms made at different times.

(f) *Poemata*; nearly all written in his youth. To these belong *Oedipus*, *Laudes Herculis*, and *Iter* (describing his journey from Spain, B.C. 46).

### III.

#### THE CONQUEST OF GAUL.

In the year 600 B.C., the Greeks of Phocaea, in Asia Minor, *Greek* emigrated and settled at Massilia (now *Marseilles*). On the *settlement* conquest of Asia Minor by Cyrus, the Great, many of their countrymen joined the Phocaeans; and soon the young Greek colony rose to power. The inhabitants of Massilia became the leaders in learning and commerce, and established colonies along the neighbouring coast of the Mediterranean. As the Greek colonies encroached on the wild barbarians, wars naturally arose. In 154 B.C., the Ligurians besieged Antipolis and Nicaea, two dependencies of Massilia, when the Massiliots called in the aid of the Romans, by whose aid the Ligurians were defeated, and part of the territory of the Ligurians given to the Massiliots. Another attack soon after (125 B.C.) was made by the Ligurians, who were reduced a second time. The army of C. Sextius Calvinus, after three campaigns, plundered their *Romans* territory, and reduced the inhabitants to slavery. Near Massilia,

*Aquae  
Sextiae.*

*Feuds.*

he founded the town of *Aquae Sextiae* (now *Aix*), which obtained its name from the hot springs of the neighbourhood. About this time, the Aedui and Allobroges were at war. The Arverni, the most powerful of the Gallic tribes, aided the Allobroges, while the Aedui concluded a treaty with the Romans. In 121 B.C., Cn. Domitius defeated the Allobroges at Vindallium, a little above *Avignon*; and in the same year the Gallic confederates were defeated by the united armies of Cn. Domitius and Q. Fabius Maximus, near the junction of the Isere and the Rhone. The country of the Allobroges was reduced to a Roman province, and received the name *Provincia*. Massilia, however, still retained her independence. Within the next succeeding years, the Romans enlarged the boundaries of the original *Provincia*, which extended at first from the Alps to the Rhone, by reducing that portion of Gaul from the Rhone to the Pyrenees, thus keeping open the road to Spain.

*Cimbri and  
Teutones.*

*Successive  
defeats of the  
Romans.*

In 113 B.C. the whole of Italy was thrown into consternation by the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones. After wandering about the Northern Italy, they entered Gaul and attacked the Roman Province. In 109 B.C. they defeated the Consul, M. Junius Silanus. The Romans sustained another defeat two years later when they attempted to keep back the Tugurini, one of the Helvetic cantons who were attempting to enter Gaul. In this battle fell L. Piso, the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law. In 106 B.C., Q. Servilius Caepio sacked Toulouse, which had formed a league with the Cimbri and Teutones. This temporary gain was followed by a crushing defeat inflicted on the Romans near the banks of the Rhone by the Cimbri and Teutones.

*Cimbri and  
Teutones  
separate.*

*Defeat of  
Teutones  
and Cimbri.*

The Cimbri separated from the Teutones and laid waste all the land between the Rhone and the Pyrenees. While the Teutones remained on the East of the Rhone, the Cimbri turned back from the Pyrenees, joined the Teutones, and then passed the Alps. Marius, who had gained great glory in the Jugurthine war, was sent against the invaders. He hastened to Southern Gaul, and defeated the Teutones at *Aquae Sextiae*, 102 B.C. In the following year he met the Cimbri at *Vercellae* and crushed them in battle.

*Intrigues of  
Catiline.* During the civil war, Sertorius, a follower of Marius, stirred up the Aquitani to revolt. The revolt, however, was unimportant. During the Consulship of Cicero, Catiline attempted to carry out his nefarious conspiracy. He and his associates

attempted to gain over the deputies of the Allobroges, who were on some mission at Rome, to join the conspiracy. These deputies betrayed the proposals to the Consul. The Allobroges not being successful in their mission, and perhaps instigated by the representations of Catiline, took up arms and defeated Manlius Lentulus. In a second battle, however, they were defeated by Pomptinus.

The Aedui, proud of their alliance with Rome, began to lord it over the other tribes. The Sequani formed an alliance with the Arverni. These two tribes invited Ariovistus, a German, *Ariovistus invited.* to assist them against the Aedui. Soon the Aedui were reduced to submission. Their chief, Divitiacus, went to Rome, and implored the aid of the Senate. The Sequani meanwhile found out that Ariovistus from being an ally turned to be their master. He demanded a third part of the territory of the Sequani, and being refused, defeated them in battle at Magetobriga. After this he ruled them with unbearable insolence.

In B.C. 60, a report reached Rome that the Helvetii, like the *Emigration of Helvetii.* Cimbri and Teutones, were preparing for a grand emigration.

The plan was under the direction of Orgetorix, a wealthy Helvetian noble. Seeing the fertile plains of Gaul, they were dissatisfied with their own land. In the previous year a decree had been passed at Rome, that the Governor of Gaul for the time being should protect the allies of the Roman people. In the next year 59 B.C., Julius Caesar was Consul. During his *Caesar Consul.* Consulship, P. Vatinius proposed a law giving Caesar the government of Gaul and Illyricum for five years. Caesar's object was to complete the conquest of Gaul. He remained at Rome till after the exile of Cicero. Soon after this B.C. 58, he *Sets out to Gaul.* hastily set out for Gaul, on the report that the Helvetii were on the move westward.

#### IV.

#### THE ROMAN ARMY.

In ancient times of Rome, the army was drawn in a solid mass (*phalanx*), a method very common among the Macedonians, and perhaps derived from them. Camillus (circa, 390 B.C.) is said to have broken up the *phalanx* into smaller bodies, called *manipuli*, capable of acting independently and also in concert. The whole legion was arranged in three lines. In the first (*hastati*) were the youngest men, in the second (*principes*) were

men in the full vigor of life, and in the third (*triarii*) were the veterans. Each line contained *ten manipuli*, arranged in the following fashion :

<i>Hastati</i> :	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Principes</i> :	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Triarii</i> :	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

Each *manipulus* of the two first lines contained two *centuria*, each commanded by a *centurio*. The centurian commanding the right century of the manipuli was styled *centurio prior*, the one commanding the left century, *centurio posterior*. Light armed troops (*velites*) were attached, twenty, to each century. Thus we have :

<i>Hastati</i> :	10	manipuli,	120	men	=	20	centuries,	60	men	=	1,200
<i>Principes</i> :	10	"	120	"	=	20	"	60	"	=	1,200
<i>Triarii</i> :	10	"	60	"	=	20	"	30	"	=	600
		—			—		—			—	
		30				60				3,000	
											To every century, 20 velites = 1,200
											—
											4,200

This was the *triplex acies* referred to so often by Caesar. To each legion were attached 10 *turma*, or squadrons of cavalry of 30 men each, each *turma* being sub-divided into three *decuriae* of 10 men each; each *decuria* was headed by an officer called *decurio*.

To Caesar or Marius is ascribed the custom of drawing up the legion of cohorts. Each legion, when complete, had regularly 6,000 men, divided into 10 cohorts (*cohortes*), each cohort divided into 3 maniples (*manipuli*), and each maniple into two centuries (*centuria*). The spear (*hasta*) was given to the *triarii*, who also seem to have been armed with the pike (*pilum*). Hence the two first lines were sometimes called *ante-pilani*.

*Officers.* The officers of the army were :

*Centurions.* (a) *Centurions (Centuriones)*: These were the leaders of the centuries, two in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in each legion. There was a regular system of promotion in the Roman army. The highest centurion was the first centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, so the lowest would be the second centurion of the third

maniple of the tenth cohort. As a badge of authority the centurions carried a staff.

- (b) *Military Tribunes (Tribuni Militum)* : These were six *Tribunes* to each legion: hence ten centurions were under each tribune.
- (c) *Lieutenants (Legati)* : These were next the general in *Legati* command. The cavalry were under the command of the *praefecti equitum* and *decuriones*.

The *weapons* of a Roman soldier were of two kinds :

- (1) *Offensive weapons*. The ordinary soldier (*miles legionarius*) *Arms*. was armed with (a) *the javelin*. Of this there were four kinds : *pilum*, *jaculum*, *hasta*, *lancea*. The *pilum* was a strong heavy pike, consisting of a square shaft of wood four feet long, to the end of which was a strong sharp iron point about two feet long attached. The *jaculum* was a lighter dart used for hurling, while the *hasta* was a long spear used for stabbing. The infantry used the *pilum*, while the cavalry and light armed troops, the *jaculum*, *hasta*, and *lancea*. Some of the latter carried bows (*arcus*, and arrows (*sagittae*), slings (*fundae*).
- (b) *The sword (gladius)* was short, broad, double-edged and pointed more used for stabbing than for slashing. It was kept in a light scabbard fastened to a belt (*balteus*).
- (2) *Defensive weapons*. The soldier of the legion had : (a) *a brazen helmet (cassis)*, surmounted with a crest ; (b) *a cuirass (lorica)*, made of leather, or of strips of metal fastened on the leather, or of metallic scales, or of brazen plates ; (c) *greaves (ocreae)*, reaching as high as the knee : (d) *a shield*, either oblong, made of boards, covered with leather and surrounded with a broad metallic rim (*scutum*), or made of bronze and of an oval shape (*clypeus*). The light armed troops had a small buckler (*parma*) and a helmet of leather (*galea*). The soldier had beneath his armour his tunic (*tunica*), a thick, woollen under-garment reaching nearly to the knees. His cloak (*sagum*) was of heavy, woollen stuff, fastened by a brooch on the shoulder, and open in front. The cloak of the general was called *paludamentum*.

*Standards.* The standards of the Roman army were : (a) *Aquila*, or eagle, the standard of the legion. This was of gold, silver, or bronze, with expanded wings. It was generally borne by the first centurion (*primipilus*). To lose the eagle was a great disgrace. The standard of the maniples was called (b) *signum*, and was of various designs, sometimes a wolf, dog, horse, serpent, figure of victory, &c. (c) The *vexillum* was a square or oblong banner carried by the cavalry.

*Musical instruments.* The musical instruments of the army were : (a) *tuba*, trumpet, was straight, and deep-toned. This was used for the signals of advance and retreat for infantry ; (b) *cornu* and *buccina* were crooked, and had a shriller note, and generally used to indicate a change of watch ; (c) *lituus*, was formed like an augur's staff, and used for cavalry.

## V.

### THE ARMY ON THE MARCH.

The army on the march may be divided into three divisions : (a) *agmen primum*, or van ; (b) *exercitus, agmen legionum*, or main body ; (c) *agmen novissimum*, or rear. The van was generally composed of light armed troops of infantry or cavalry. Their chief duty was to find out the force of the enemy, or to hold the enemy at bay until the main body should arrive. The main body with the baggage train (*impedimenta*), followed. The rear generally consisted of cavalry or light armed troops.

The average march (*iter justum*) was from six to seven hours, or from fifteen to twenty miles a day. On the forced march the soldiers often covered fifty miles a day.

On the march, the soldiers carried two Roman pecks of grain (*frumentum*), cooking utensils (*vasa*), his arms, blanket, and two rampart stakes (*valli*). The private baggage of the soldier was called *sarcinæ*.

## VI.

### THE ARMY IN CAMP.

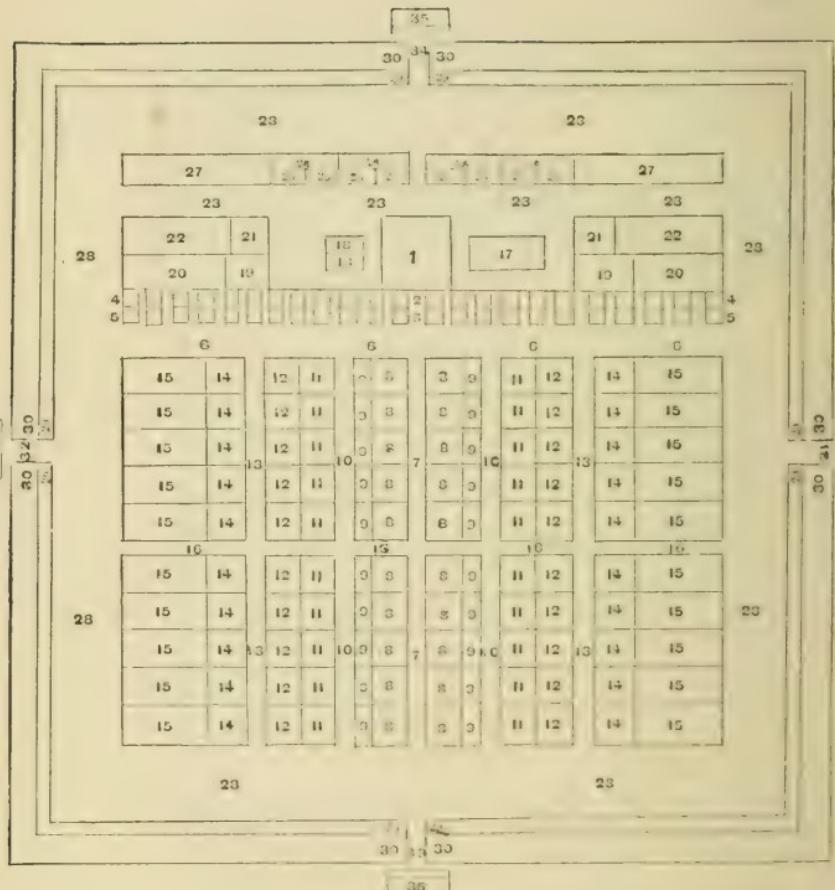
When the army was on the march, men (*metatores*) were sent forward to select a suitable place for a camp. If possible, a high ground (*locus superior*) was sought.

The camp was usually square or oblong. An embankment (*vallum*), formed from the ground thrown up from trench (*fossa*), surrounded the camp. The camp had four gates : (1) *porta praetoria*, near the praetorium, or general's tent, faced the

enemy ; (2) *porta decumana* was opposite to this ; (3) *porta principalis sinistra* on the left ; and (4) *porta principalis dextra* on the right. Connecting these two latter gates was the *via principalis*, and parallel to the street was the *via quintana*. Connecting the *porta praetoria* and *porta decumana* was the *via praetoria*.

The pickets were generally called *excubitores* ; *vigiliae* were night watches ; *custodiae* were sentinels to guard some particular post.

The average pay was about  $6\frac{1}{4}$  cents per day. Caesar doubled this. A centurion received 25 cents a day. Besides their regular pay Caesar often gave them the money that accrued from the sale of booty.



## DIAGRAM OF CAMP.

## EXPLANATION OF DIAGRAM.

1. *Praetorium*, or General's tent.
2. Ground for horses and baggage of the *Tribuni militum*.
3. Tents of the *Tribuni militum*.
4. Ground occupied by horses and baggage of *praefecti sociorum*.
5. Tents of *praefecti sociorum*.
6. Street, 100 feet wide called *principia* or *via principalis*.
7. Cross street, 50 feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the Roman *equites* or horse.
8. The *equites* of two Roman legions, in 10 *turmae* or troops each.
9. The *triarii* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each, forming on two different streets.
10. Two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the *triarii* and *principes* of two legions.
11. The *principes* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
12. The *hastati* of two Roman legions, in 10 *manipuli* each.
13. Two streets, each 50 feet wide between the *hastati* of the two Roman legions and the horse (*equites*) of the allies.
14. The horse of the allies.
15. The infantry of the allies.
16. The *quintana via*, a street 50 feet wide.
17. *Quaestorium*, the quaestor's tent.
18. The tents of *legati*; in front of them and the *quaestorium* was the *forum* where things were sold.
19. The veteran horse (*evocati equites*).
20. The veteran foot (*evocati pedites*).
21. The horse of the consular life guards (*ablecti equites*).
22. The foot of the consular life guards (*ablecti pedites*).
23. A cross street, 100 feet wide.
24. A street, 50 feet wide.
25. *Extraordinarii equites*, a part of allied horse to serve in consul's body guard.
26. *Extraordinarii pedites*, a part of allied foot to serve in consul's body guard.
27. Quarters for strangers coming into camp.
28. A span of 200 feet between tents and rampart.
29. Rampart (*vallum*).
30. Ditch (*fossa*), 9 feet deep, 12 feet wide.
31. *Porta principalis dextra*.
32. *Porta principalis sinistra*.
33. *Porta decumana*.
34. *Porta praetoria*.
35. A transverse breastwork protecting the gates.



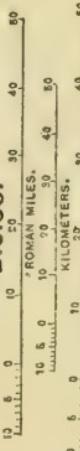


Greene & C. H.

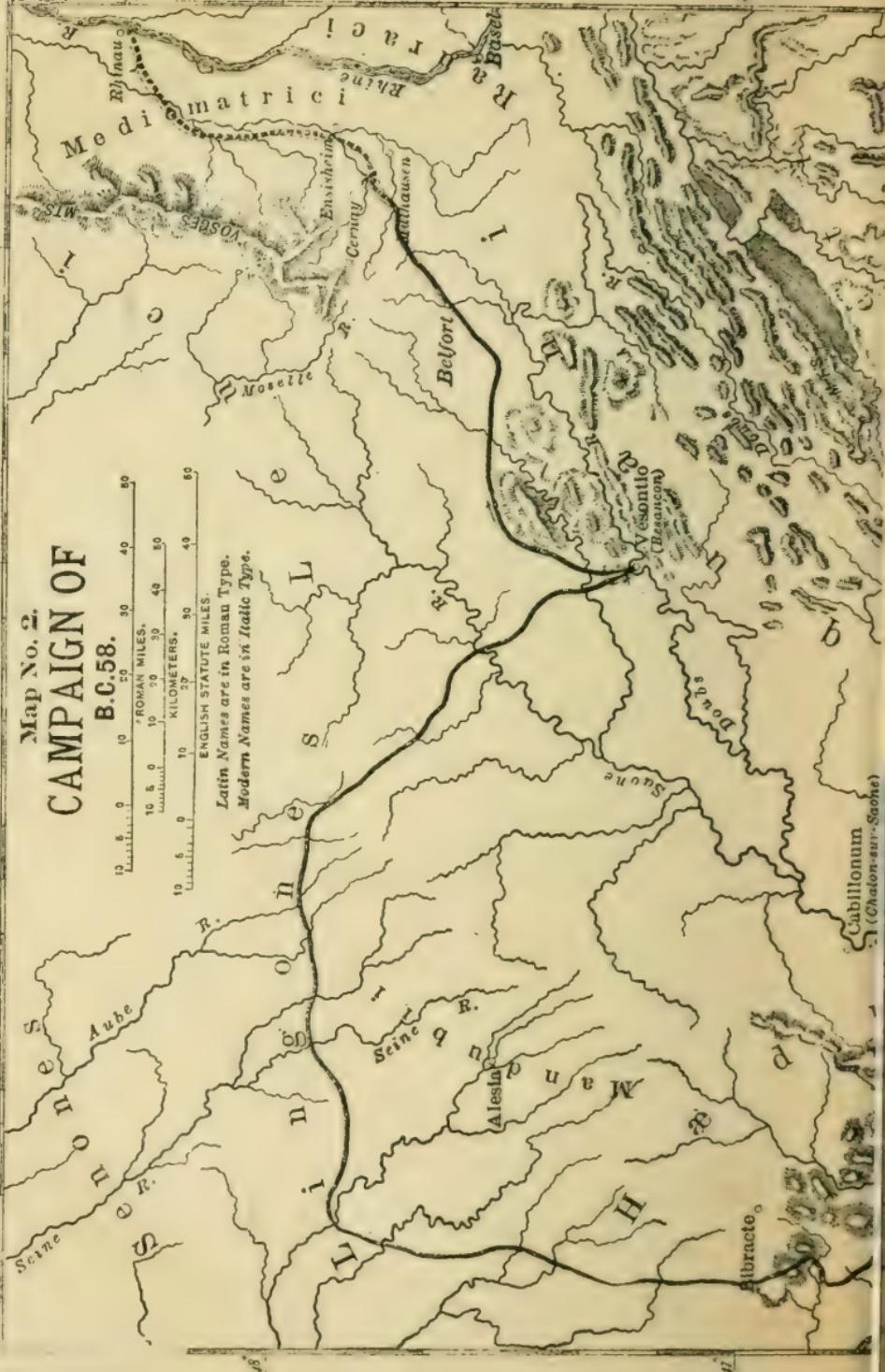
*East*  $6^{\circ}$  *from*

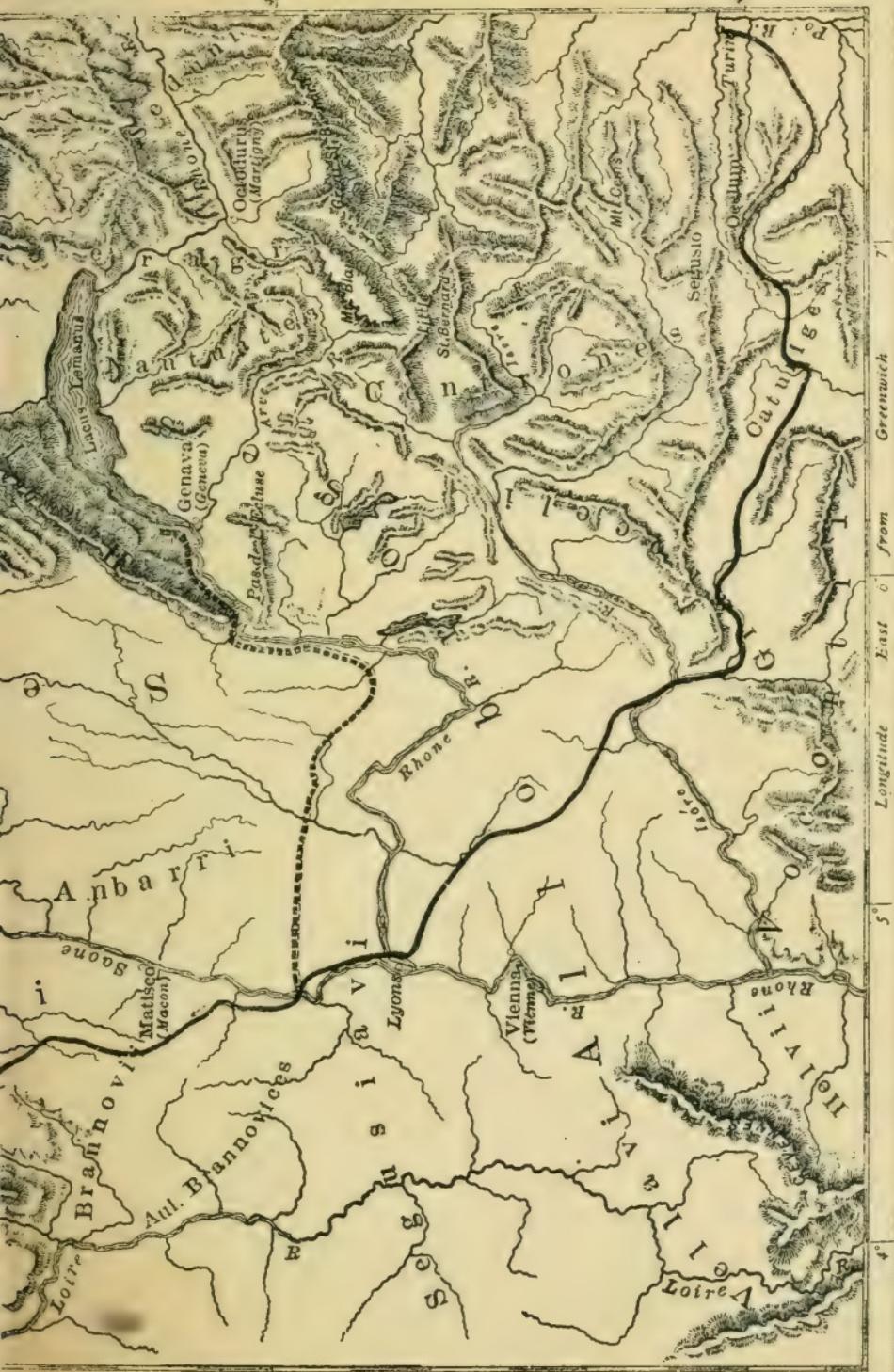
Map No. 2.  
CAMPAIGN OF

B.C.58.



*Latin Names* are in Roman Type.  
*Modern Names* are in *Italic Type*.







C. JULII CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO  
COMMENTARIORUM.  
LIBER PRIMUS.

---

I. **GALLIA** est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli, appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propria quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe conuentant, atque ea quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent important; proximique sunt Germanis qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere quotidiani proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, quum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in septentriones et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem Oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

II.—Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is, Marco Messala et Marco Pisone consulibus, regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit; et civitati pergit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: perfacile esse,

*saying*

quum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit quod undique loci natura Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit: altera ex parte monte Jura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia, lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano qui Provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat ut et minus late vagarentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent: qua de causa homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. Pro multitudine autem hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur qui in longitudinem millia passuum ducenta et quadraginta, in latitudinem centum et octoginta patebant.

III.—His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti constituerunt ea quae ad profisciscendum pertinerent comparare, jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coemere, sementes quam maximas facere ut in itinere copia frumenti suppetret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt; in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cuius pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Aedu, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur, persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. Persicile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset: non esse dubium quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent: se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum ~~con~~ confirmat. Hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant, et regno occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

IV.—Ea res ut Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata, moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coegerunt: damnatum poenam sequi oportebat ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causae dictionis Orgetorix ad judicium omnem suam familiam ad ho-

num millia decem undique coegit ; et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit : per eos ne causam diceret se eripuit. Quum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis jus suum exsequi conaretur, multititudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est : neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

V.—Post ejus mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id quod constituerant facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant. Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt, frumentum omne praeter quod secum portaturi erant comburunt, ut, domum redditionis spe sublata, paratores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent ; trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo esse jubent. Persuadent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis uti eodem usi consilio oppidis suis vicisque exustis una cum iis profisciscantur ; Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnarant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

VI.—Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent : unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur ; mons autem altissimus impendebat ut facile perpauci prohibere possent : alterum per Provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nonnullis locis vado transitur. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum finibus Genava. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum bono animo in Populum Romanum viderentur, existimabant ; vel vi coacturos ut per suos fines eos ire paternerentur. Omnibus rebus ad profec-tionem comparatis diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes convenient : is dies erat ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis, Lucio Pisone Aulo Gabinio consulibus.

VII.—Caesari quum id nuntiatum esset, eos per Provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe profiscisci et quam

maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum militum numerum imperat: erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una: pontem qui erat ad Genavam jubet rescindi. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt nobilissimos civitatis, cuius legationis Nameius et Verudoctius principem locum obtinebant, qui dicerent, Sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum: rogare ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoria tenebat Lucium Cassium consulem occisum exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat: neque homines inimico animo data facultate per provinciam itineris faciundi temperaturos ab injuria et maleficio existimabat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites quos imperaverat convenienter, legatis respondit diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum: si quid vellent, ante diem Idus Apriles reverterentur.

VIII.—Interea ea legione quam secum habebat militibusque qui ex Provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Juram qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, millia passuum decem novem murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perducit. Eo opere perfecto praesidia disponit, castella communis, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere posset. Ubi ea dies quam constituerat cum legatis venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat Se more et exemplo Populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare et si vim facere conentur prohibitum ostendit. Helvetii ea spe dejecti navibus junctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdiu, saepius noctu, si perrumpere possent conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi, hoc conatu destiterunt.

IX.—Relinquebatur una per Seuanos via, qua Seuanis invitatis propter angustias ire non poterant. His quum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt ut eo deprecatore a Seuanis impetrarent. Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Seuanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetiis erat

amicus quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, et cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat et quam plurimas civitates suo sibi beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis impetrat ut per fines suos ire Helvetios patientur obsidesque uti inter sese dent perficit: Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant; Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuria transeant.

X.—Caesari renuntiatur Helvetiis esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in Provincia. Id si fieret, intelligebat magno cum provinciae periculo futurum ut homines bellicosos, Populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitos haberet. Ob eas causas ei munitioni quam fecerat Titum Labienum legatum praefecit: ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit, et qua proximum iter in ulteriore Galliam per Alpes erat cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Centrones et Graioceli et Caturiges locis superioribus occupatis itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsis, ab Ocelo, quod est citerioris provinciae extremum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit, inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusianos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

XI.—Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias transduxerant, et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, quum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: Ita se omni tempore de Populo Romano meritos esse ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. Eodem tempore Aedui Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Aedorum, Caesarem certorem faciunt sese depopulatis agris non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere: item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt, et demonstrant sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rebus adductus Caesar non exspectandum sibi statuit dum omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

XII.—Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat judicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est tres jam copiarum partes Helvetios id flumen transduxisse, quartam vero partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus magnam eorum partem concidit: reliqui fugae sese mandarunt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quatuor pagos divisa est. Illic pagus unus quum domo exisset patrum nostrorum memoria, Lucium Cassium consulem interfecerat et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita sive casu, sive, consilio deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem Populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas sed etiam privatas injurias ultus est, quod ejus socii Lucii Pisonis avum, Lucium Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio quo Cassium interfecrant.

XIII.—Hoc proelio facto, reliquias copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset pontem in Arare faciendum curat, atque ita exercitum transducit. Helvetii repentina ejus adventu commoti, quum id quod ipsi diebus viginti aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, uno illum die fecisse intelligerent, legatos ad eum mittunt, cuius legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare egit: Si pacem Populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset: sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi Populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset, quum hi qui flumen transissent suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret: se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse ut magis virtute quam dolo aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret ut is locus ubi constitissent ex calamitate Populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.

XIV.—His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari quod eas res quas legati Helvetii commemorassent memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre quo minus merito Populi Romani accidissent; qui si alicujus injuriae sibi conscius fuisse, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum quod neque commissum a se intelligeret quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo invito iter per Provinciam per vim tentassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoria deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloria-rentur quodque tamdiu se impune tulisse injurias admirarentur. eodem pertinere: consuesse enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Qum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi dentur uti ea quae polliceantur facturos intelligat, et si Aeduis de injuriis quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse uti obsides accipere, non dare consuerint: ejus rei Populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc responso dato decessit.

XV.—Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem ad numerum quatuor millium, quem ex omni Provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen inseguuti alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublati Helvetii, quod .quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere nonnunquam et novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere cooperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis, pabulationibus populationibusque prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinis aut senis millibus passuum interesset.

XVI.—Interim quotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum quod essent publice polliciti flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub

septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppeterat: eo autem frumento quod flumine Arare navibus subvexerat, propterea uti minus poterat quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat. Diem ex die ducere Aedui; conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit, et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratu praeerat, quem Vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui creatur annus, et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem, graviter eos accusat quod, quum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevetur; praesertim quum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum suscepit, multo etiam gravius, quod sit destitutus, queritur.

XVII.—Tum demum Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus quod antea tacuerat proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privati plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrere ne frumentum conferant quod praestare debeant. Si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possent, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia preferre satius esse, neque dubitare debere quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Aeduī libertatem sint erepturi. Ab iisdem nostra consilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus enuntiari: hos a se coerceri non posse Quin etiam quod necessario rem coactus Caesari enuntiarit, intelligere sese quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam quamdiu potuerit taquisse.

XVIII.—Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratre, designari sentiebat: sed quod pluribus praesentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet: quaerit ex solo ea quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit: reperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum: complures annos portaria reliquaque omnia Aeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. His

rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse: magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alere et circum se habere: neque solum domi sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse, atque hujus potentiae causa matrem in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse: ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere: sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse: favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem: odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos quod corum adventu potentia ejus diminuta et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire; imperio Populi Romani non modo de regno sed etiam de ea quam habeat gratia desperare. Reperiebat etiam inquirendo Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum a Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus; nam equitatui quem auxilio Caesari Aedu miserant Dumnorix praeerat; eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

XIX.—Quibus rebus cognitis, quum ad has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, quod ea omnia non modo injussu suo et civitatis sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod a magistratu Aeduorum accusaretur, satis esse causae arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat quod Divitiaci fratris summum in Populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam ne ejus suppicio Divitiaci animum offenderet verebatur. Itaque priusquam quicquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet et quotidianis interpretibus remotis per Caium Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit: petit atque hortatur ut sine ejus offensione animi vel ipse de eo causa cognita statuat vel civitatem statuere jubeat.

XX.—Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrare coepit Ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur: sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Haec quum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prendit; consolatus rogat finem orandi faciat; tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit uti et reipublicae injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat; fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit: quae ipse intelligat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; praeterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit ut quae agat, qui buscum loquatur, scire possit.

XXI.—Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedisse millia passuum ab ipsis castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus qui cognoscerent misit. Renuntiatum est facilem esse. De tertia vigilia Titum Labienum legatum pro praetore cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus qui iter cognoverant summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere quo hostes ierant ad eos contendit equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur, et in exercitu Lucii Sullae et postea in Marci Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

XXII.—Prima luce, <sup>etiam</sup> quum summus mons a Tito Labieno teneatur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admisso ad eum accurrit, dicit montem quem a Labieno occupari voluerit ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cog-

novisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare ne proelium commiteret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros exspectabat proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse et Considium timore perterritum quod non vidisset pro viso sibi renuntiasse. Eo die quo consuerat intervallo hostes sequitur, et millia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

XXIII.—Postridie ejus diei, quod omnino biduum supererat quum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius millibus passuum octodecim aberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit, iter ab Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos Lucii Aemilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis quod pridie superioribus locis occupatis proelium non commisissent; sive eo quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent, commutato consilio atque itinere converso nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

XXIV.—Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit, equitatumque qui sustineret hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quatuor veteranarum, ita ut supra se in summo jugo duas legiones quas in Gallia citeriore proxime conscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocaret, ac totum montem hominibus compleret; interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri et eum ab his qui in superiore acie constiterant muniri jussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris sequuti impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt: ipsi confertissima acie rejecto nostro equitatu phalange facta sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

XXV.—Caesar primum suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos proelium commisit. Milites e loco superiore pilis missis facile hostium phalangem prefregerunt. Ea disjecta

gladiis destrictis in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento quod pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, quum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistra impedita satis commode pugnare poterant; multi ut diu jactato bracchio praeoptarent scutum manu emittere et nudo corpore pugnare. Tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre, et quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum eo se recipere coeperunt. Capto monte et succendentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum millibus circiter quindecim agmen hostium cludebant et novissimis praesidio erant, ex itinere nostros latere aperto aggressi circumvenere, et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Romani conversa signa bipartito intulerunt: prima ac secunda acies ut victis ac summotis resisteret, tertia ut venientes exciperet.

**XXVI.**—Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius quum nostrorum impetus sustinere non possent, alteri se ut cooperant in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto proelio, quum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros objecerant et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela conjiciebant, et nonnulli inter carros rotasque mataras ac tragulas subjiciebant nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu quum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter millia hominum centum et triginta superfuerunt, caque tota nocte continenter ierunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, quum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occisorum nostri triduum morati eos sequi non potuerint. Caesar ad Lingonas literas nuntiosque misit ne eos frumento neve alia re juarent: qui si juvissent, se eodem loco quo Helvetios habiturum. Ipse triduo intermisso cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit

**XXVII.**—Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti legatos de ditione ad eum miserunt. Qui quum eum in itinere convenissent seque ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque loquuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco quo tum essent suum adven-

rum exspectare jussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos qui ad eos perfugissent poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur, et conferuntur nocte intermissa circiter hominum millia sex ejus pagi, qui Verbigenus appellatur, sive timore perterriti ne armis traditis suppicio afficerentur, sive spe salutis induci quod in tanta multitudine deditiorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, prima nocte ex castris Helvetiorum egressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contulerunt.

XXVIII.—Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quorum per fines ierant, his uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellent, imperavit: reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos omnes obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis in ditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos unde erant profecti reverti jussit, et quod omnibus frugibus amissis domi nihil erat quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit ut iis frumenti copiam facerent; ipsos oppida vicosque quos incenderant restituere jussit. Id ea maxime ratione fecit quod noluit eum locum unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios potentibus Aeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem atque ipsi erant receperunt.

XXIX.—In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repartæ sunt literis Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim pueri, senes, mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa erat, capitum Helvetiorum millia ducenta et sexaginta tria, Tulingorum millia triginta sex, Latobrigorum quatuordecim, Rauracorum viginti tria, Boiorum triginta duo: ex his qui arma ferre possent ad millia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium fuerunt ad millia trecenta et sexaginta octo. Eorum qui domum redierunt censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus millium centum et decem.

XXX.—Bello Helvetiorum confecto totius fere Galliae legati,

principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt: In eligere sese, tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum injuriis Populi Romani ab iis poenas bello repetisset, tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam Populi Romani accidisse, propterea quod eo consilio florentissimis rebus domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum judicassent, reliquaque civitates stipendiarias haberent. Petierunt, Uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntate facere liceret: sese habere quasdam res quas ex communi sensu ab eo petere vellent. Ea re permissa diem concilio constituerunt, et jurejurando ne quis enuntiaret nisi quibus communi consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

XXXI.—Eo concilio dimisso, iidem principes civitatum, qui ante fuerant ad Caesarem, reverterunt petieruntque uti sibi secreto in occulto de sua omniumque salute cum eo agere liceret. Ea re impetrata sese omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes projecerunt: Non minus se id contendere et laborare ne ea quae dixissent enuntiarentur, quam uti ea quae vellent impetrarent; propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent. Loquutus est pro his Divitiacus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiones esse duas: harum alterius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi quum tantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contendenter, factum esse uti ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germani mercede arcesserentur. Horum primo circiter millia quindecim Rhenum transisse: posteaquam agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamassent, transductos plures: nunc esse in Gallia ad centum et viginti millium numerum: cum his Aeduos eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse. Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et sua virtute et Populi Romani hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Gallia potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare, nobilissimos civitatis, et jurejurando civitatem obstringere sese neque obsides repetituros neque auxilium a Populo Romano imploraturos neque recusaturos quominus perpetuo sub illorum ditione atque imperio essent. Unum se esse ex omni civitate

Aeduorum qui adduci non potuerit ut juraret aut liberos suos obsides daret. Ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse et Romanum ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque jure-jurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed pejus victoribus Sequanis quam Aeduis victis accidisse; propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in corum finibus consedisset tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos decidere juberet, propterea quod paucis mensibus ante Harudum millia hominum viginta quatuor ad eum venissent quibus locus ac sedes pararentur. Futurum esse paucis annis uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent: neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque hanc consuetudinem vici-tus cum illa comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallo-rum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Mageto-briam, superbe et crudeliter imperare, obsides noblissimi cujusque liberos poscere et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatum ejus facta sit: hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse ejus imperia diutius sustinere. Nisi quid in Caesare Populoque Romano sit auxilii, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium, alias sedes remotas a Germanis petant, fortunamque quaecumque accidat experiantur. Haec si enuntiata Ariovisto sint, non dubitare quin de omnibus obsidibus qui apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sumat. Caesarem vel auctoritate sua atque exercitus vel recenti victoria, vel nomine Populi Romani deterrere posse ne major multitudo Germanorum Rhenum transducatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ario-visti injuria posse defendere.

XXXII.—Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita, omnes qui aderant magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt. Animadvertisit Caesar unos ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere quas ceteri ficerent, sed tristes capite demisso terram intueri. Ejus rei causa quae esset miratus ex ipsis quaesiit. Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia taciti permanere. Quum ab iis saepius quaereret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiacus Aeduus respondit: Hoc esse miseriorem gravioremque fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum quod soli ne in occulto

quidem queri neque auxilium implorare auderent, absentisque Ario-visti crudelitatem velut si coram adesset horrerent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate ejus essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.

X  
XXXIII.—His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram : magnam se habere spem et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum sinem injuriis facturum. Hac oratione habita concilium dimisit ; et secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur quare sibi eam rem cogitandam et suscipiendam putaret ; in primis, quod Aeduos fratres consanguineosque saepenumero ab Senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in ditione videbat Germanorum teneri, eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Seuanos intelligebat : quod in tanto imperio Populi Romani turpissimum sibi et reipublicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire Populo Romano periculosum videbat ; neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat quin, quum omnem Galliam occupassent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contendenter, praesertim quum Seuanos a Provincia nostra Rhodanus divideret. Quibus rebus quam maturrime occurrentum putabat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumpserat ut ferendus non videretur.

XXXIV.—Quamobrem placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret qui ab eo postularent uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio diceret : velle sese de republica et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit : Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse ; si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere quas Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magno commotu atque emolumento in unum locum contrahere posse : sibi autem mirum videri quid in sua Gallia quam bello vicisset aut Caesari aut omnino Populo Romano negotii esset.

XXXV.—His responsis ad Caesarem relatis, iterum ad eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit : Quoniam tanto suo

Populique Romani beneficio affectus, quum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a Senatu appellatus esset, hanc sibi Populoque Romano gratiam referret ut in colloquium venire invitatus gravaretur neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putaret, haec esse quae ab eo postularet: primum, ne quam hominum multitudinem amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam transduceret: deinde obsides quos haberet ab Aeduis redderet, Sequanisque permitteret ut quos illi haberent voluntate ejus reddere illis liceret; neve Aeduos injuria lacesceret neve his sociis eorum bellum inferret: siid ita fecisset, sibi Populoque Romano perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futurum: si non impetraret, sese, quoniam Marco Messala Marco Pisone Consulibus Senatus censuisset, uti, quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod commodo reipublicae facere posset, Aeduos ceterosque amicos Populi Romani defendenteret, se Aeduorum injurias non neglecturum.

XXXVI.—Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: *Jus esse belli ut qui vicissent iis quos vicissent quemadmodum vellent imperarent: item Populum Romanum victis non ad alterius praescriptum sed ad suum arbitrium imperare consuesse.* Si ipse Populo Romano non praescriberet quemadmodum suo jure uteretur, non oportere sese a Populo Romano in suo jure impediri. Aeduos sibi, quoniam bellum fortunam tentassent et armis congressi ac superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem injuriam facere qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret. Aeduis si obsides redditurum non esse, neque his neque eorum sociis injuria bellum illaturum, si in eo manerent quod convenisset, stipendumque quotannis penderent: si id non fecissent, longe iis fraternum nomen Populi Romani abfuturum. Quod sibi Caesar denuntiaret se Aeduorum injurias non neglecturum, neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse. Quum vellet congrederetur; intellecturum quid invicti Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui inter annos quatuordecim tectum non subissent, virtute possent.

XXXVII.—Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata referebantur et legati ab Aeduis et a Treviris veniebant: Aedui questum quod Harudes qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent fines eorum popularentur; sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse: Treviri autem, pagos centum Suevorum ad ripas

Rheni consedisse qui Rhenum transire conarentur; iis praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium fratres. Quibus rebus Caesar vehementer commotus maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Sucrorum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque re frumentaria quam celerrime potuit compara magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

XXXVIII.—Quum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum est ei Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere triduique viam a suis finibus profecisse. Id ne accideret magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimabat. Namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum usui erant summa erat in eo oppido facultas, idque natura loci sic muniebatur ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, propterea quod flumen Alduasdubis ut circino circumductum paene totum oppidum cingit: reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum sexcentorum qua flumen intermittit, mons continet magna altitudine, ita ut radices ejus montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingent. Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppido conjungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupatoque oppido ibi praesidium collocat.

XXXIX.—Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatusque causa moratur, ex percuntatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis esse praedicabant, saepenumero sese cum his congressos ne vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum ferre potuisse, tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret. Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem sequuti non magnum in re militari usum habebant: quorum aliis, alia causa illata, quam sibi ad profiscendum necessariam esse diccret petebat ut ejus voluntate discedere liceret: nonnulli pudore adducti ut timoris suspicionem vitarent remanebant. Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur, aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. Vulgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii qui

magnum in castris usum habebant, milites centurionesque, qui que equitatu praerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum quae intercederent inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam ut satis commode supportari posset timere dicebant. Nonnulli etiam Caesari renuntiabant, quum castra moveri ac signa ferri jussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites nec propter timorem signa laturos.

XL.—Haec quum animadvertisset, convocato consilio omnium que ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis centurionibus vehementer eos incusavit; Primum, quod aut quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent. Ariovistum se consule cupidissime Populi Romani amicitiam appetisse: cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum judicaret? ibi quidem persuaderi cognitis suis postulatis atque acquitate conditionum perspecta eum neque suam neque Populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? Factum ejus hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, quum Cimbris et Teutonis a Caio Mario pulsis non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus videbatur: factum etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina quam a nobis accepissent sublevarent. Ex quo judicari posset quantum haberet in se boni constantia; propterea quod quos aliquamdiu inermes sine causa timuissent, hos postea armatos ac victores superassent. Denique nos esse eosdem quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi non solum in suis sed etiam in illorum finibus plerumque superarint, qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitu non potuerint. Si quos adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos si quaererent reperiire posse diuturnitate belli defatigatis Gallis Ariovistum, quum multos menses castris se ac paludibus tenuisset neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes jam de pugna et dispersos subito adortum magistracione et consilio quam virtute viciisse. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros atque imperitos locus fuisset, hac ne ipsum quidem sperare nostros exercitus capi posse. Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem angustiasque itinerum conferrent facere arroganter, quum aut de officio imperatoris desperare aut praesciri

bere viderentur. Haec sibi esse curae; frumentum Sequanos, Leucos, Lingonas subministrare, jamque esse in agris frumenta matura: de itinere ipsos brevi tempore judicatueros. Quod non fore dicto audientes milites neque signa laturi dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri: scire enim quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut male re gesta fortunam defuisse, aut aliquo facinore comperto avaritiam esse convictam. Suam innocentiam perpetua vita, felicitatem Helvetiorum bello esse perspectam. Itaque se quod in longiorem diem collatus fuissest repraesentaturum et proxima nocte de quarta vigilia castra moturum, ut quam primum intelligere posset, utrum apud eos pudor atque officium an timor valeret. Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum sola decima legione iturum de qua non dubitaret; sibique eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.

**XLI.**—Hac oratione habita mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est; princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit quod de se optimum judicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. Deinde reliquae legiones cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum centurionibus egerunt uti Caesaris satisfacerent: se neque unquam dubitasse neque timuisse, neque de summa belli suum judicium sed imperatoris esse existimavisse. Eorum satisfactione accepta, et itinere exquisito per Divitiacum, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem habebat, ut millium amplius quinquaginta circuitu locis apertis exercitum duceret, de quarta vigilia, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimo die, quum iter non intermitteret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est Ariovisti copias a nostris millibus passuum quatuor et viginti abesse.

**XLII.**—Cognito Caesaris adventu Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: Quod antea de colloquio postulasset id per se fieri licere quoniam propius accessisset: seque id sine periculo facere posse existimare. Non respuit conditionem Caesar: jamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur quum id, quod antea petenti denerasset ultiro polliceretur; magnamque in spem veniebat pro suis tantis Populique Romani in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis postulatis, fore uti pertinacia desisteret. Dies colloquio dictus est, ex eo die

quintus. Interim quum saepe ultro citroque legati inter eos mitterentur, Arioivistus postulavit ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret : Vereri se ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur : uterque cum equitatu veniret : alia ratione se non esse venturum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interposita causa tolli volebat neque salutem suam Gallorum equitatui committere audebat, commodissimum esse statuit omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detrac-tis eo legionarios milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime con-fidebat, imponere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus facto esset, haberet. Quod quum fieret, non irridicule quidam ex militibus decimae legionis dixit, Plus quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere ; pollicitum se in cohortis praetoriae loco deci-mam legionem habiturum nunc ad equum rescribere.

XLIII.—Planities erat magna et in ea tumulus terrenus satis grandis. Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris utrisque aberat. Eo ut erat dictum ad colloquium venerunt. Legionem Caesar, quam equis devexerat, passibus ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Arioisti pari intervallo constiterunt. Arioivistus ex equis ut colloquerentur et praeter se denos ut ad colloquium adducerent postulavit. Ubi eo ventum est, Caesar initio orationis sua Senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit, Quod rex appellatus esset a Senatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissima missa : quam rem et paucis contigisse, et pro magnis hominum officiis consuesse tribui docebat : illum quum neque aditum neque causam postulandi justam haberet, beneficio ac liberalitate sua ac Senatus ea prae-mia consequutum. Docebat etiam quam veteres quamque justae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Aeduis intercederent ; quae Senatus consulta, quoties quamque honorifica in eos facta essent : ut omni tempore totius Galliae principatum Aedui tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam appetissent. Populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratia, dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse : quod vero ad amicitiam Populi Romani attulissent, id iis eripi quis pati posset ? Postulavit deinde eadem quae legatis in mandatis dede-rat, ne aut Aeduis aut eorum sociis bellum inferret ; obsides redderet : si nullam partem Germanorum domum remittere posset, at ne quos amplius Rhenum transire pateretur.

XLIV.—Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit, de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: Transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis; non sine magna spe magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse: sedes habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendum capere jure belli quod victores victis imponere consuerint. Non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio pulsas ac superatas esse. Si iterum experiri velint, se iterum paratum esse decertare; si pace uti velint, iniquum esse de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerint. Amicitiam Populi Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse opertere, idque se ea spe petisse. Si per Populum Romanum stipendum remittatur et dediticij subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recusaturum Populi Romani amicitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam transducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa facere; ejus rei testimonio esse quod nisi rogatus non venerit, et quod bellum non intulerit sed defenderit. Se prius in Galliam venisse quam Populum Romanum. Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercitum Populi Romani Galliae provinciae fines egressum. Quid sibi vellet cur in suas possessiones veniret? Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedi non oporteret, si in nostros fines impetum faceret, sic item nos esse iniquos qui in suo jure se interpellaremus. Quod fratres a Senatu Aeduos appellatos diceret, non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum ut non sciret neque bello Allobrogum proximo Aeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos in his contentionibus, quas Aedui secum et cum Sequanis habuissent, auxilio Populi Romani usos esse. Debere se suspicari simulata Caesarem amicitia, quod exercitum in Gallia habeat, sui opprimendi causa habere. Qui nisi decebat atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed pro hoste habiturum: quod si eum interficerit, multis sese nobilibus principibusque Populi Romani gratum esse facturum; id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam ejus morte redimere posset. Quod si decessisset, et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum, et

quaecumque bella geri vellet sine ullo ejus labore et periculo confecturum.

**XLV.**—Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quare negotio desistere non posset, Et neque suam neque Populi Romani consuetudinem pati ut optime meritos socios desereret, neque se judicare Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam Populi Romani. Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutenos ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus Populus Romanus ignovisset neque in provinciam redegisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, Populi Romani justissimum esse in Gallia imperium : si judicium Senatus observari oporteret, liberam debere esse Galliam quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluisset.

**XLVI.**—Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est equites Ariovisti proprius tumulum accedere et ad nostros adequare, lapides telaque in nostros conjicere. Caesar loquendi finem facit, seque ad suos recepit suisque imperavit ne quod omnino telum in hostes rejicerent. Nam etsi sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat ut pulsis hostibus dici posset eos ab se per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in vulgus militum elatum est, qua arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros ejus equites fecissent, eaque res colloquium ut diremisset. multo major alacritas studiumque pugnandi majus exercitui injectum est.

**XLVII.**—Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit : Velle se de his rebus quae inter eos agi coepiae neque perfectae essent agere cum eo : uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret, aut si id minus vellet ex suis aliquem ad se mitteret. Colloquendi Caesaris causa visa non est, et eo magis quod pridie ejus diei Germani retineri non poterant quin in nostros tela conjicerent. Legatum ex suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missurum et hominibus feris objecturum existimabat. Commodissimum visum est Caium Valerium Procillum, Caiii Valerii Caburi filium, summa virtute et humanitate adolescentem, cuius pater a Caio Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, qua multa jam Ariovistus longinqua consuetudine uteba-

tur, et quod in eo peccandi Germanis causa non esset, ad eum mittere, et Marcum Mettium qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. His mandavit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cognoscerent et ad se referrent. Quos quum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo praesente conclamavit: Quid ad se venirent? An speculandi causa? Conantes dicere prohibuit et in catenas conjecit.

**XLVIII.**—Eodem die castra promovit et millibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub monte consedit. Postridie ejus diei praeter castra Caesaris suas copias transduxit et millibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit, eo consilio uti frumento commeatuque, qui ex Sequanis et Aeduis supportaretur, Caesarem intercluderet. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proelio quotidie contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae quo se Germani exercuerant. Equitum millia erant sex, totidem numero pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copia singuli singulos suae salutis causa delegerant. Cum his in proeliis versabantur, ad hos se equites recipiebant: hi si quid erat durius concurrebant: si qui graviore vulnere accepto equo deciderat, circumstebant: si quo erat longius prodeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas ut jubis equorum sublevati cursum adaequarent.

**XLIX.**—Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani considerant, circiter passus sexcentos ab eis castris idoneum locum de legit acieque triplici instructa ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, uti dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sexdecim millia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit quae copiae nostros perterrerent et munitione prohiberent. Nihilo secius Caesar, ut ante constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere jussit. Munitis castris duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum, quatuor reliquas in castra majora reduxit.

L.—Proximo die instituto suo Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit paulumque a majoribus castris progressus aciem instruxit, hostibusque pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum quae castra minora opugnaret misit. Acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus in castra reduxit. Quum ex captivis quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc reperiebat causam, quod apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset, ut matres familae eorum sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent, utrum proelium committi ex usu esset necne; eas ita dicere; Non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.

LI.—Postridie ejus diei Caesar praesidio utrisque castris quod satis esse visum est reliquit; omnes alarios in conspectu hostium pro castris minoribus constituit, quo minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valebat, ut ad speciem alarii uteretur. Ipse triplici instructa acie usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt generatimque constituerunt paribusque intervallis Harudes, Marcomanos, Triboccos, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suevos, omnemque aciem suam rhedis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga relinqueretur. Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentes milites passis manibus flentes implorabant ne se in servitutem Romanis traderent.

LII.—Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaestorem praefecit, uti eos testes suae quisque virtutis haberet. Ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse animum adverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes repente celeriterque procurerunt ut spatium pila in hostes conjiciendi non daretur. Rejectis pilis comminus gladiis pugnatum est. At Germani celeriter ex consuetudine sua phalange facta impetus gladiorum exceperunt. Reperi sunt complures nostri milites qui in phalangas insilirent et scuta manibus revellerent et desuper vulnerarent. Quum hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram aciem premebant.

Id quum animadvertisset Publius Crassus adolescens, qui equitatu praecerat, quod expeditior erat quam hi qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

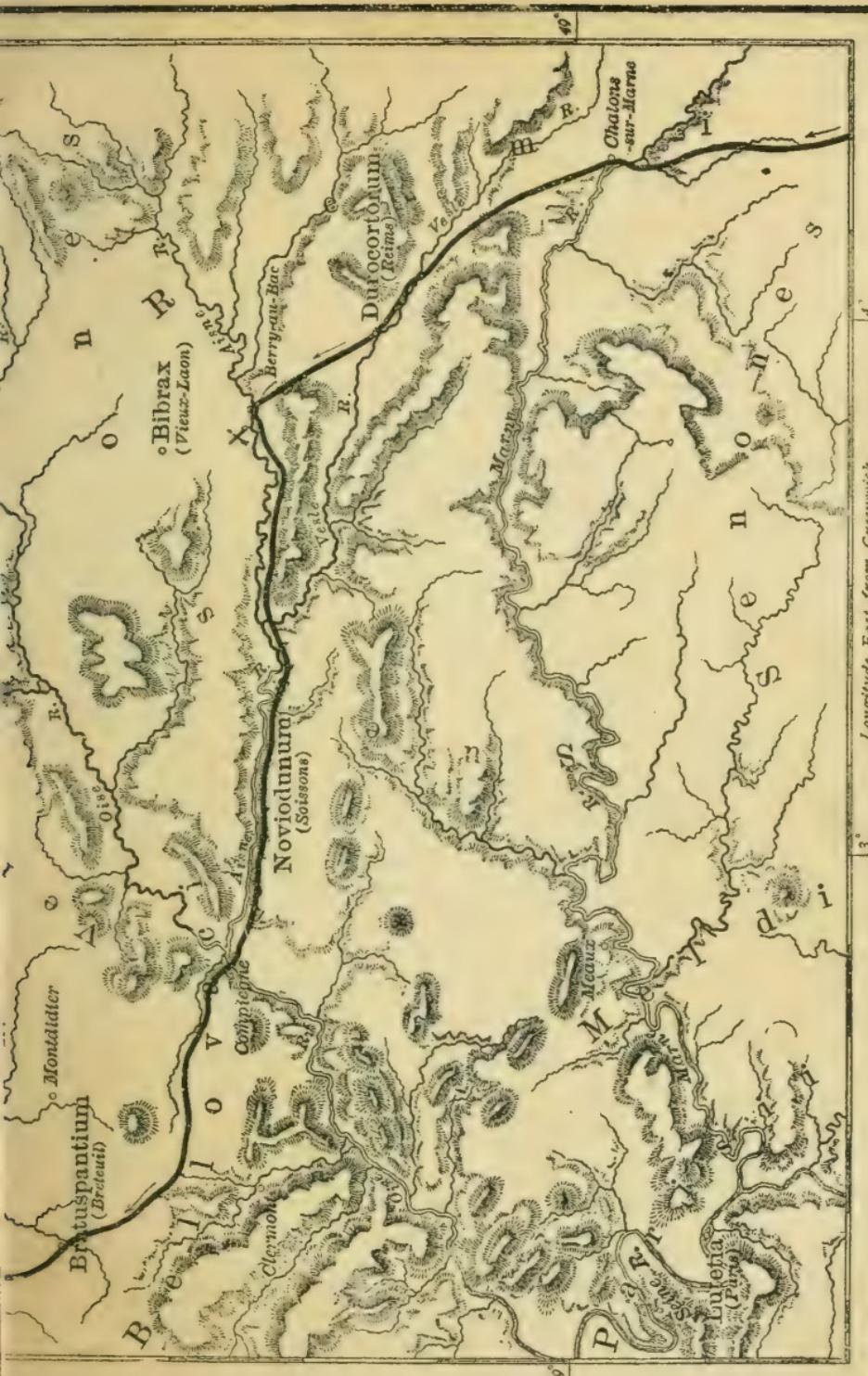
LIII.—Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga verterunt neque prius fugere destiterunt quam ad flumen Rhenum millia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinquaginta pervenerint. Ibi perpauci aut viribus confisi transnatare contenderunt, aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem reppererunt. In his fuit Ariovistus qui navelculam deligatam ad ripam nactus ea profugit: reliquos omnes consequuti equites nostri interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueva natione quam ab domo secum eduxerat; altera Norica, regis Voctionis soror, quam in Gallia duxerat a fratre missam; utraeque in ea fuga perierunt. Duae filiae harum, altera occisa, altera capta est. Caius Valerius Procillus, quum a custodibus in fuga trinis catenis vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostes equitatu consequentem incidit. Quae quidem res Cæsari non minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, creptum e manibus hostium sibi restitutum videbat, neque ejus calamitate de tanta voluptate et gratulatione quicquam fortuna diminuerat. Is se praesente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni statim necaretur an in aliud tempus reservaretur: sortium beneficio se esse incoludem. Item Marcus Mettius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

LIV.—Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato, Suevi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt: quos ubi ii qui proximi Rhenum incolunt perterritos insequuti magnum ex his numerum occiderunt. Cæsar, una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis, maturius paulo quam tempus anni postulabat in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit: hibernis Labienum praeposuit: ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est.





Longitude East from Greenwich





## LIBER SECUNDUS.

I.—QUUM esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia in hibernis, ita ut supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur, literisque item Labieni certior fiebat omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus; contra Populum Romanum conjurare obsidesque inter se dare: conjurandi has esse causas: primum, quod vererentur ne omni pacata Gallia ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis solicitarentur, partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Gallia versari noluerant, ita Populi Romani exercitum hicinare atque inveterascere in Gallia moleste ferebant, partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis imperiis studebant; ab nonnullis etiam, quod in Gallia a potentioribus atque his, qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile eam rem in imperio nostro consequi poterant.

II.—Iis nuntiis literisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscriptis, et inita aestate in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse quum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet ad exercitum venit: dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea quae apud eos gerantur cognoscant seque de his rebus certiorem faciant. Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci. Tum vero dubitandum non existimavit quin ad eos proficeretur. Re frumentaria comparata castra movet diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

III.—Eo quum de improviso celeriusque omnium opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos Iccium et Andocumborum primos civitatis miserunt qui dicerent, Se suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem Populi Romani permittere: neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse neque contra Populum Romanum omnino conjurasse, paratosque esse et obsides dare

et imperata faccre et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus juvare : reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque qui cis Rhenum incolant sese cum his conjunxisse, tantumque esse eorum omnium furorem ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem juré et eisdem legibus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, deterrire potuerint quin cum his consentirent.

IV.—Quum ab his quaceret quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent et quid<sup>t</sup> in bello possent, sic reperiebat : plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis Rhenumque antiquitus transductos propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedisse, Gallosque qui ea loca incolerent expulisse, solosque esse qui patrum nostrorum memoria omni Gallia vexata Teutonos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingredi prohibuerint. Qua ex re fieri uti earum rerum memoria magnam sibi auctoritatem magnosque spiritus in re militari sumerent. De numero eorum omnia se habere explorata Remi dicebant, properea quod propinquitatibus affinitatibusque conjuncti quantum quisque multitudinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognoverint. Plurimum inter eos Belloacos et virtute et auctoritate et hominum numero valere : hos posse confidere armata millia centum, pollicitos ex eo numero electa millia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos ; latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostra etiam memoria Divitiacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui quum magnaee partis harum regionum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit : nunc esse regem Galbam : ad hunc propter justitiam prudentiamque totius belli summam omnium voluntate deferrri : oppida habere numero duodecim, polliceri millia armata quinquaginta : totidem Nervios, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habeantur longissimeque absint : quindecim millia Atrebates ; Ambianos decem millia, Morinos viginti quinque millia, Menapios novem millia, Caletos decem millia, Velocasses et Veromanduos totidem, Aduatucos viginti novem millia ; Condrusos, Eburones, Caeraeos, Paemonos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad quadraginta millia.

V.—Caesar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione prosequutus omnem senatum ad se convenire principumque liberos

obsides ad se adduci jussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum Aeduum magno opere cohortatus docet quanto opere reipublicae communisque salutis intersit manus hostium distineri, ne cum tanta multitudine uno tempore configendum sit. Id fieri posse si suas copias Aedui in fines Belluvacorum introduxerint et eorum agros populari coeperint. His mandatis eum ab se dimittit. Postquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidi, neque jam longe abesse ab his quos miserat exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen Axonam, quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum transducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat et post eum quae essent tuta ab hostibus reddebat, et commeatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculo ad eum portari possent efficiebat. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit et in altera parte fluminis Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallo fossaque duodeviginti pedum munire jubet.

VI.—Ab his castris oppidum Remorum nomine Bibrax aberat millia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatum est. Gallorum eadem atque Belgarum oppugnatio est haec. Ubi circumjecta multitudine hominum totis moenibus, undique lapides in murum jaci coepti sunt, murusque defensoribus nudatus est, testudine facta portas succedunt murumque subruunt. Quod tum facile siebat. Nam quum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conjicerent, in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli. Quum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius Remus, summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos, qui tum oppido praeerat, unus ex his qui legati de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntios ad eum mittit; Nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

VII.—Eo de media nocte Caesar iisdem ducibus usus qui nuntii ab Iccio venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios et funditores Baleares subsidio oppidanis mittit; quorum adventu et Remis cum spe defensionis studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus eadem de causa spes potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morati agrosque Remorum depopulati omnibus vicis aedi-

ficiisque quos adire potuerant incensis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contendenterunt et ab millibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut finno atque ignibus significabatur, amplius millibus passum octo in latitudinem patebant.

VIII.—Caesar primo et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis proelio supersedere statuit; quotidie tamen equestribus proelii quid hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent solicitationibus periclitabatur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris ad aciem instruendam natura opportuno atque idoneo, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planicie editus tantum adversus in latitudinem patebat quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utraque parte lateris dejectus habebat et in fronte leniter fastigatus paulatim ad planitiem redibat, ab utroque latere ejus collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passum quadringentorum, et ad extremas fossas castella constituit ibique tormenta collocavit, ne, quum aciem instruxisset, hostes, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suos circumvenire possent. Hoc facto duabus legionibus quas proxime conscripserat in castris relictis ut, si quo opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reliquas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

IX.—Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent hostes exspectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos aggredierentur parati in armis erant. Interim proelio equitri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundiore equitum proelio nostris Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contendenterunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio ut, si possent, castellum cui praeerat Quintus Titurius legatus expugnarent pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum populararentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatuque nostros prohiberent.

X.—Caesar certior factus ab Titurio omnem equitatum et levis armaturae Numidas, funditores sagittariosque pontem transducit

atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt. Per eorum corpora reliquos audacissime transire conantes multitudine telorum repulerunt; primos qui transierant equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando oppido et de flumine transeundo spem se fefellisse intellexerunt neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causa viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere coepit, concilio convocato constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, ut quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, et potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent et domesticis copiis rei frumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum atque Aeduos finibus Bellovacorum appropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi ut diutius morarentur neque suis auxilium ferrent non poterat.

XI.—Ea re constituta secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris egressi nullo certo ordine neque imperio, quum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatorum cognita insidias veritus, quod qua de causa discederent nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima luce confirmata re ab exploratoribus omnem equitatum qui novissimum agmen moraretur praemisit. His Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praefecit. Titum Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi jussit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa millia passuum prosequuti magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt, quum ab extremo agmine ad quos ventum erat consistenter fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent prioresque, quod abesse a periculo viderentur, neque ulla necessitate neque imperio continerentur, ex auditu clamore perturbatis ordinibus onines in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine ullo periculo tantam eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt quantum fuit diei spatium, sub occasumque solis desitterunt, seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

XII.—Postridie ejus diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant,

exercitum duxit et magno itinere confecto ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem paucis defendantibus expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis vineas agere quaecque ad oppugnandum usui erant comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere jacto turribusque constitutis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti legatos ad Caesarem de ditione mittunt, et potentibus Remis ut conservarentur impetrant.

XIII.—Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in ditionem Suessiones accepit exercitumque in Bellovacos dicit. Qui quum se suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes majores natu ex oppido egressi manus ad Caesarem tendere et voce significare coeperunt sese in ejus fidem ac potestatem venire neque contra Populum Romanum armis contendere. Item, quum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque ex muro passis manibus suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

XIV.—Pro his Divitiacus, nam post discessum Belgarum dimissis Aeduorum copiis ad eum reverterat, facit verba Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae fuisse: impulsos a suis principibus qui dicerent Aeduos a Caesare in servitatem redactos omnes indignitates contumeliasque preferre, et ab Aeduis defecisse et Populo Romano bellum intulisse. Qui hujus consilii principes fuissent, quod inteligerent quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos sed etiam pro his Aeduos ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificaturum; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint.

XV.—Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Aeduorum causa sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum dixit: quod erat civitas

magna inter Belgas auctoritate atque hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides poposcit. His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaque omnia sine mora dediderunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant: quorum de natura moribusque Caesar quum quaereret, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus: nihil pati viai reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his rebus relanguescere animos et remitti virtutem existimarent: esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis; increpitare atque incusare reliquos Belgas qui se Populo Romano deditissent patriamque virtutem projecissent: confirmare sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam conditionem pacis accepturos.

XVI.—Quum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniebat ex captivis Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius millia passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedisse aduentumque ibi Romanorum exspectare una cum Atrebatis et Veromanduis finitimis suis, nam his utrisque persuaserant uti eandem belli fortunam experimententur: exspectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias atque esse in itinere: mulieres quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur in eum locum conjecisse, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

XVII. His rebus cognitis exploratores centurionesque praemitit qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Quumque ex deditiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesarem sequuti una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt atque iis demonstrarunt inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quicquam negotii, quum prima legio in castra venisset, reliquaeque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sacrinis adoriri: qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis futurum ut reliquae contra consistere non auderent. Adjuvabat etiam eorum consilium qui rem deferebant, quod Nervii antiquitus, quum equitatu nihil possent—neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent copiis,—quo facilius finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causa ad eos venisset, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crebris in latitudinem ramis et rubis sentibusque interjectis,

effecerant ut instar muri hae sepes munimenta praebarent, quo non modo intrari, sed ne perspici quidem posset. His rebus quum iter agminis nostri impediretur, non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

XVIII.—Loci natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebatur. Ab eo ilumine pari acclivitate collis nascebatur adversus huic et contrarius passus circiter ducentos, insimus apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris ut non facile introrsus perspici posset. Inter eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant: in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo pedum circiter trium.

XIX.—Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequebatur omnibus copiis: sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam quod ad hostes appropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat: post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat: inde duae legiones quae proxime conscriptae erant totum agmen claudebant praeedioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt. Quum se illi identidem in silvas ad suos reciperent ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem porrecta ac loca aperta pertinebant cedentes insequi audebant, interim legiones sex, quae primae venerant, opere dimenso castra munire cooperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab his qui in silvis abditi latebant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eos committendi proelii convenerat, ita, ut intra silvas aciem ordin esque constituerant atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt. His facile pulsis ac proturbatis incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucur rerunt, ut paene uno tempore et ad silvas et in flumine et jam in manibus nostris hostes viderentur. Eadem autem celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra atque eos qui in opere occupati erant con tenderunt.

XX.—Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum, quod erat insigne quum ad arma concurri oportet,

signum tuba dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causa processerant arcessendi, acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas et successus et incursus hostium impeditabat. His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus proeliis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret non minus commode ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis doceri poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere, nisi munitis castris vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium nihil jam Caesaris imperium exspectabant, sed per se quae videbantur administrabant.

XXI.—Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis ad cohortandos milites quam in partem fors obtulit decucurrit et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent neu perturbarentur animo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant quam quo telum adjici posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causa profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas scutisque tegumenta de- trudenda tempus defuerit. Quam quisque in partem ab opere casu devenit quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad haec constitit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

XXII.—Instructo exercitu magis ut loci natura dejectusque collis et necessitas temporis quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, quum diversis locis legiones aliae alia in parte hostibus resisterent, sepibusque densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, interjectis prospectus impediretur, neque certa subsidia collocari, neque quid in quaue parte opus esset provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque in tanta rerum iniuitate fortunae quoque eventus variis sequebantur.

XXIII.—Legionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistra parte acie constiterant, pilis emissis cursu ac lassitudine examinatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates—nam his ea pars obvenerat, —celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt et transire co-

nantes inseguiti gladiis magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt, et in locum iniquum progressi rursus regressos ac resistentes hostes redintegrato proelio in fugam dederunt. Item alia in parte diversae duae legiones, undecima et octava, profligatis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At tum totis fere a fronte et ab sinistra parte nudatis castris, quum in dextro cornu legio duodecima et non magno ab ea intervallo septima constitisset, omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine duce Boduognato qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum contenderunt : quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

XXIV.—Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu pulsos dixeram, quum se in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrerant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant : et calones, qui ab decumana porta ac summo jugo collis nostros victores flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi causa egressi, quum respexit et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praecipites fugae sese mandabant. Simul eorum qui cum impedimentis veniebant clamor fremitusque oriebatur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferebantur. Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Treviri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis, qui auxilii causa ab civitate missi ad Caesarem venerant, quum multitudine hostium castra nostra compleri, legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, funditores, Numidas, diversos dissipatosque, in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus, domum contendunt : Romanos pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos civitati renuntiaverunt.

XXV.—Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis signiferoque interfecto, signo amissō, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo Publio Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto ut jam se sustinere non posset ; reliquos esse tardiores, et

nonnullos ab novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium quod submitti posset, scuto ab novissimis uni militi detracto, quod ipso eo sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit centurionibusque nominatim appellatis reliquos cohortatus milites signa inferre et manipulos laxare jussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent. Cujus adventu spe illata militibus ac redintegrato animo, quum pro se quisque in conspectu imperatoris et jam in extremis suis rebus operam navare cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardatus est.

XXVI.—Caesar quum septimam legionem, quae juxta constiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum monuit ut paulatim sese legiones conjungerent et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, quum alias alii subsidiū ferret, neque timerent ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare coepérunt. Interim milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, proelio nuntiato, cursu incitato, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur. Et Titus Labienus castris hostium potitus et ex loco superiore quae res in nostris castris gererentur conspicatus decimam legionem subsilio nostris misit. Qui quum ex equitum et calonum fuga, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

XXVII.—Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio facta est ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuisserent, scutis innixi proelium redintegrarent, tum calones perterritos hostes conspicati etiam inermes armatis occurrerent, equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute delerent, omnibus in locis pugnae se legionariis militibus praeferrarent. At hostes etiam in extrema spe salutis tantam virtutem praestiterunt ut, quum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi jacentibus insisterent atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent: his dejectis et coacervatis cadaveribus, qui superessent ut ex tumulo tela in nostros conjicerent et pila intercepta remitterent: ut non nequam tantae virtutis homines judicari deberet ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo redegerat.

**XXVIII.**—Hoc proelio facto et prope internacionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto majores natu, quos una cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes collectos dixeramus, hac pugna nuntiata, quum victoribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium qui supererant consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt seque ei dediderunt. et in commemoranda civitatis calamitate ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum nullibus sexaginta vix ad quingentos qui arina ferre possent sese redactos esse dixerunt. Quos Caesar, ut in miseros ac supplices usus misericordia videretur, diligentissime conservavit suisque finibus atque oppidis uti jussit, et finitimis imperavit ut ab injuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

**XXIX.**—Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, quum omnibus copiis auxilio Nerviis venirent, hac pugna nuntiata ex itinere domum reverterunt : cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie natura munitum contulerunt. Quod quum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, una ex parte leniter acclivis aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum relinquebatur : quem locum dupli altissimo muro munierant, tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacutas trabes in muro collocarant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prognati, qui, quum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiam ex suis ac praesidio sex millia hominum reliquerunt. Hi post eorum obitum multos annos a finitimis exagitati, quum alias bellum inferrent, alias illatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pace facta hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.

**XXX.**—Ac primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras **ex** oppido excursiones faciebant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendebant ; postea vallo pedum duodecim in circuitu quindecim milium crebrisque castellis circummuniti oppido sese continebant. Ubi vineis actis aggere extiucto turrim procul constitui viderunt, prium irridere ex muro atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio institueretur : Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim homines tantulæ staturaæ, nam plerumque hominibus Gallis præ magnitudine corporum suorum brevitas nostra contemptui est, tanti oneris turrim in muro sese collocare confiderent?

XXXI.—Ubi vero moveri et appropinquare moenibus viderunt, nova atque inusitata specie commoti legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum loquuti: Non se existimare Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tanta celeritate promovere et ex ~~propinquitate pugnare~~ possent, se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere dixerunt. Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab illis audirent, statuisset Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret: sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere, a quibus se defendere traditis armis non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum dederentur, quamvis fortunam a Populo Romano pati quam ab his per cruciatum interfici inter quos dominari consuissent.

XXXII.—Ad haec Caesar respondit: Se magis consuetudine sua quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius quam murum aries attigisset se dedidissent: sed deditio nullam esse conditionem nisi armis traditis: se id quod in Nerviis fecisset facturum finitimusque imperaturum, ne quam deditiis Populi Romani injuriam inferrent. Re nuntiata ad suos, quae imperarentur facere dixerunt. Armorum magna multitudine de muro in fossam quae erat ante oppidum jacta sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celata atque in oppido retenta, portis patefactis eo die pace sunt usi.

XXXIII.—Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire jussit ne quam noctu oppidanii ab militibus injuriam acciperent. Illi ante inito, ut intellectum est, consilio, quod deditio facta nostros praesidia deducturos aut denique indiligerent servaturos crediderant, partim cum his quae retinuerant et celaverant armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quae subito, ut temporis exiguitas postulabat, pellibus induxerant, tertia vigilia, qua minime arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repentina ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significatione facta ex proximis castellis eo concursum est, pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter ut a viris fortibus in extrema spe salutis iniquo loco contra eos qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacerent pugnari debuit, quem in

una virtute omnis spes salutis consisteret. Occisis ad hominum millibus quatuor reliqui in oppidum rejecti sunt. Postridie ejus diei refractis portis, quum jam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris sectionem ejus oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab his qui emerant capitum numerus ad eum relatus **est** milium quinquaginta trium.

XXXIV.—Eodem tempore a Publio Crasso, quem cum legione una miserat ad Venetos, Unellos, Osismios, Curiosolitas, Sesuvios, Aulercos, Rhedones, quae sunt maritimae civitates Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnes eas civitates in ditionem potestatemque Populi Romani esse redactas.

XXXV.—His rebus gestis omni Gallia pacata tanta hujus belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est uti ab his nationibus quae trans Rhenum incolerent mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, qui se obides daturas, imperata facturas pollicerentur ; quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properabat, inita proxima aestate ad se reverti jussit. Ipse in Carnutes, Andes, Turonesque, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hiberna deductis, in Italiam profectus est : ob easque res ex literis Caesaris dies quindecim supplicatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.

---

*oido . te voy a dar*

NOTES.



## ABBREVIATIONS.

---

a, or act.	active.	m.	masculine.
abl.	abative.	n. or neut.	neuter.
acc.	accusative.	nom.	nominative.
adj.	adjective.	num.	numeral.
adv.	adverb.	obsol.	obsolete.
comm. gen.	common gender.	ord.	ordinal.
comp.	comparative degree.	p. or part.	participle.
conj.	conjunction.	pass.	passive.
cp.	compare.	perf.	perfect.
dat.	dative.	pers.	person, personal.
def. defect.	defective.	pluperf.	pluperfect.
dem. demonstr.	demonstrative.	plur.	plural.
dep.	deponent.	pos.	positive degree.
dissyll.	dissyllabic.	poss.	possessive.
etym.	etymology.	prep.	preposition.
f.	feminine.	pres.	present.
fr.	from.	prob.	probably.
freq.	frequentative.	pron.	pronoun.
fut.	future.	rel.	relative.
gen.	genitive.	Sans.	Sanskrit.
Gr.	Greek.	semi-dep.	semi-deponent.
imperf.	imperfect.	sing.	singular.
ind. or indic.	indicative.	subj.	subjunctive.
indecl.	indeclinable.	sup.	superlative ; supine.
indef.	indefinite.	v. a.	verb active.
inf. or infin.	infinitive.	v. dep.	verb deponent.
interj.	interjection.	v. n.	verb neuter.
interrog.	interrogative.	voc.	vocative.
irr. or irreg.	irregular.	=	equal to.

Where the etymology is not given, the word is of very uncertain or unknown origin.

## NOTES.

---

N. B.—The grammatical references are to the sections of Harkness's Latin Grammar (Standard Edition, 1881), and to Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar.

### CHAPTER I.

*Gallia—tres*: “Gaul, as a whole, is divided into three parts.” *Gallia omnis* is opposed to one of the parts of Gaul inhabited by the *Galli*, or *Celtæ*. In this passage Caesar refers to *Gallia Transalpina*, but does not include the *Provincia* (modern *Provence*). According to Zeuss, *Gallia* means “the land of the warriors”: derived from *galla*, a Celtic word signifying “a battle;” hence *galat*, “a warrior.” According to others, *Celtæ* and *Galli* are different forms of the same word and are both probably of Celtic origin. Max Müller says (Science of Language, Vol. I, p. 225, note 22) the word *Keltos* may have meant in the ancient language of Gaul, *elevated, upright, proud*, like the Latin *celsus* and *excessus*. Hence *Keltæ* may possibly be simply “highlanders.” For the interchange of k (or c) & g: cp.: κυβερνήτης, *gubernator*: knee, γόνη, *genu*.—*divisa* is here virtually a predicative adjective expressing the result of the action: H. 550, N. 2; A. & G. 291, b. According to Caesar, the *Belgae* occupied from Seine and Meuse to the Rhine, the *Aquitani* from the Pyrenees to the Garonne, and the *Gauls* proper inhabited the rest of the country with the exception of the Roman province (*Provincia*, modern *Provence*) in the south. Under Augustus *Gallia Transalpina* was divided into *Gallia Narbonensis*, *Aquitania*, *Gallia Lugdunensis*, *Gallia Belgica*. [See Ancient Atlas.]

*unam*: scil. *partem*; so with *alteram, tertium* understand *partem*.

*qui*: i.e. (*ii incolunt*) *tertiam (partem) qui.. appellantur*.

*lingua*: II. 420; A. & G. 248. The Aquitanians spoke the Basque or Iberian language, which is still spoken on both sides of the Pyrenees. According to Tacitus (Germ. 28) the *Belgae* regarded themselves Germans rather than Gauls. Still from the names of places belonging to the *Belgae* we may infer that their language was strongly marked by Gallic words.—*diferunt*; conjugate.

*Garumna—Matrona—Sequana*: give modern names. Explain the number of *dividit*: H. 463 II. 3; A. & G. 205, b.—Distinguish in meaning *mātrōna*, *Mātrōna*.

*propterea quod=propter ea quod*: “on account of this, that, &c.,” i.e., “because,” the *ea* being an antecedent of the clause introduced by *quod*.

*cultu—humanitate*: the former refers to the external marks of civilization as dress, food, furniture, &c.; the latter suggests learning, culture, refinement of manners.

*provinciae*, i.e., the Roman province in Southern Gaul. The word still lives in the modern *Provence*.

*minime—saepe=rarissime*: “very seldom.”

*mercatores*: often mentioned by Caesar. The traders were mainly from Massilia (*Marseilles*) and were probably Greeks and Italians who followed th Roman camp. The Helvetii and Belgae lay out of their route.

*quae=pertinent*: “which tend to weaken their courage;” for the const. of the gerundive: see H. 544, 2, Note 2.; A. & G. 300. a.

*proximique=Germanis*: “and they are next the Germans;” for the const. of *proximus*: H. 391, I. II. 2.; A. & G. 234, a. e.

*quibuscum*: see H. 187, 2; A. & G. 104 e.

*quoque*: as well as the Belgae, “the Helvetii also.”

*virtute*: “in valour;” for the const.; H. 424; A. & G. 253.

*finibus*: distinguish in meaning *finis* and *fines*: H. 132; A. & G., 79. c. The indic. *prohibent*, because *cum* is purely temporal.

*eorum, eos*, refer to the Germans.

*corum=horum omnium*: referring to the *hi omnes* above: “one division of their country, which, it is said, the Gauls occupy.” The reference is to the people of Central Gaul.

*initium—capit*: “begins at.” Note that Caesar uses the apposition before or after its noun *flumine Rhodano, Garunna flumine*, though in Greek we say δέ Εὐφράτης ποταμός, τὸ Πήλιον δρός.

*vergit—septentriones*. “it slopes towards the north;” that is, all the rivers of *Gallia* proper, as the *Loire*, *Allier*, &c., run in a northerly direction.—*septentriones*: the word is used in the singular and in the plural. The two constellations, the *Greater* and *Lesser Bear* were called by the name *triones*. The Greeks called the Greater Bear ἀρκτός (*Bear*) and ἄρκαζα (*Wain*). This latter constellation consists of seven stars, four of which form a quadrangle, and the other three lie in a right line attached to the quadrangle. A line drawn through the two extreme stars of the quadrangle passes through the north polar star, which is in the constellation of the Lesser Bear. The word *trio=strio*: cp. Sans. *turā*, “stars,” properly “strewers of light;” cp. Eng. *star*; Germ., *stern*; Lat. *stella* (=ster-ula), all from the root *star* (cp. *sterno*) “to scatter.” Varro (L. L. 7, 73) derives the word from *septem*, “seven,” *trio=bos* “an ox,” so that according to him the words signify the “seven ploughing oxen.”

*extremis*: compare this adj.

*ad*: “at” or “near.”

*occasum—septentriones*: the Belgic rivers, the *Sambre*, *Scheldt*, &c., run N.E., those of Aquitania, the *Garonne*, *Adour*, N.W.

## CHAPTER II.

*ditissimus*: compare this word.

*Orgeterix*: Thierry says the word signifies, “king of a hundred mountains.” Zeuss derives it from *org*, “to slay;” hence “the slayer.”

*M.—consulibus*: “in the consulship of M. Messala and M. Piso?” H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255, a. The Romans marked the year by the names of the consuls in office, as the Athenians did by the name of the chief archon (*ἀρχων ἐπίτιτος*). These were consuls B.C. 61, while Caesar was occupying the Province of Spain.

*regni cupiditate*: “with the desire for supreme power?” H. 416, IV., 7; A. & G. 245, b.

*conjurationem*: “a league:” here not necessarily used in a bad sense: cp. *συνωμοσία*.

*civitati*: what verbs govern a dative? H. 385, II.; A. & G. 227.

*ut—exirent*: object clause of *persuasit*. The subject of *exirent* is *cives*, implied in *civitas*.

*perfacile—potiri*: indirect discourse; sc. *dixit*: H. 522-524; A. & G. 336-340.

*praestarent*: why is this subj.? H. 517, 524; A. & G. 326, 336.

*Galliae—potiri*: what cases may *potior* govern? H. 410, V. 3; 420: A. & G. 223, a; 249.

*hoc*: what case is *hoc*? H. 416: A. & G. 245.

*loci natura*: “by their natural situation;” “by the character of the country.”

*lacu Lemanno*: the Maritime and Cottian Alps separated the Roman provinces from the Helvetii as far as Geneva; from this point to Vienna, the boundary of the Roman province took a south-west direction.

*his—possent*: literally, “for these reasons it happened that they had wandered less widely, and less easily were they able to carry on war against their neighbours,” i.e., than they wished.

*qua de causa*: “for this reason.” Others read *qua ex parte*: “in this respect.”

*pro—patebant*: “moreover, considering the extent of the population and their renown for war and for bravery, they thought they had (too) limited territories, which extended in length two hundred and fifty miles, in breadth one hundred and eighty miles.”—*gloria=clu-or-ia*: root *clu*, “to hear;” hence, “renown.”—*augustos*: the positive for the comparative; cp. Xen. Mem. 3, 13, 3: *ψυχρὸν, ὥστε λούσασθαι, ἔστιν*. The distance from the point where the Jura reaches the Rhone at Fort L’Ecluse, near Geneva, to Bregenz, on Lake Constance, where the Rhine begins to have a northern course, is 180 English miles; and the distance from Fort L’Ecluse to the junction of the Aar and the Rhine, is about 160 English miles.—*millia*: H. 379; A. & G. 257. The Roman mile (*mille passus*, pl. *milii passuum*)=4854 English feet; the *passus*, originally a double pace=5 Roman *pedes*=4 feet 10½ inches, by English measurement.

### CHAPTER III.

*constituerunt—comparare, coemere, facere*: when does *constituo* take an inf., and when *ut* with the subjunctive? H. 498, 1, Note; A. & G. 271, a. Translate into Latin: *The father resolved to remain at home; The father resolved that the son should remain at home.*

*pertinerent*: Caesar is giving the thoughts of the Helvetii rather than his own : H. 528, 1; A. & G. 341, a.

*carorum*: many of the words signifying a *carriage* were of Gallic origin : cp. *rheba*, *petorritum*, *carrus*, *essendum*. The *carrus* was a four-wheeled car.

*quam maximum=tam magnum quam maximum*: “as large as possible:” H. 170, 2, 2); A. & G. 93, b.

*sementes—facere*: “to sow the greatest possible breadth of corn.”

*ut—suppeteret*: “that they might have supplies of corn for the journey:” H. 497, II.; A. & G. 317.

*ad—duixerunt*: “they thought that a space of two years would be sufficient for them to carry out these plans.”—*conficiendas*: H. 544, I.; A. & G. 296.

*in—confirmant*: “by a formal enactment they appoint their setting out for the third year.” *in—annum*: predetermination of future time is expressed by *in* with acc. Translate: *He called together the senate on the third day*; *He called together the senate for the third day*.

*persuadet*: historical present : H. 467, III., 1; A. & G. 276, d.

*regnum—obtinuerat*: “had held sovereign power.”

*amicus*: not unfrequently the senate of Rome conferred the title *amicus* on a foreign chief or ruler for the purpose of gaining his influence.

*occuparet*: imperfect subjunctive after the historical present *persuadet*; so also *conaretur* : H. 495, II.; A. & G. 287, e.

*obtinebat*: give the force of the imperfect : H. 469, II.; A. & G. 115, 2, b.

*dare in matrimonium*, said of a father ; *ducere in matrimonium*, *ducere uxorem*, said of a husband ; *nubere viro*, said of a woman.

*perfacile—possent*: indirect discourse depending on *probat*: “he shows them that it was a very easy matter (lit., very easily to be done) to carry out their plans, because he himself was likely to obtain the sovereign rule of his own state.”—*factu* : H. 547, 1; A. & G. 303, R. For *obtenturus esset*: H. 496, II., 2; A. & G. 129, I.

*non—possent*: “that there was no doubt that the Helvetii possessed the greatest power of all Gaul;” *possum* is here used absolutely, “to be powerful,” not prolatively, “to be able to do a thing.”—*plurimum*: neut. acc. used adverbially; strictly the cog. acc.: H. 304, 1, 3; 371, II (2); A. & G. 148, d; 240, a.

*se—confirmat*. “he assures them that he would gain for them the sovereign power by his influence and his army.” Explain the cases of *copius* and *illis*.

*fidem et jusjurandum*: “an oath-bound pledge of good faith;” a *hendiadys* : H. 636, III., 2; A. & G. p. 298. Decline *jusjurandum*.

*et—esperant*: “and if they can seize the royal power they expect by means of three most powerful and strong nations to be able to gain the sway of all (G. 1).”—*regno occupato*: conditional = *si regnum occuparisset* : H. 431, 2 ); A. & G. 255. *tres populos*: Helvetii, Sequani, Aedui.—*Gallia* : H. 410, V. 3; A. & G. 249, a.

## CHAPTER IV.

*et res* : "this design ;" *res* is a general word, often used by Caesar in the sense of "occurrence," "exploit," "movement," "design," "conspiracy," etc.

*per indicium=per indices* : "by informers ;" so *servitium=servi* : so also *conjuratio=conjurati*.

*moribus suis* : "according to their custom ;" abl. of manner ; cp. *more majorum, more Romano, ea lege, mea sententia* : H. 419, III., note 2 ; A. & G. 248 Remark.

*ex vinculis* : give the force of *ex*. With *causam dicere*, compare *causam uigere, causam habere*.

*damnatum—cremaretur* : "it behooved that the punishment that he should be burnt by fire should be visited upon him, in case he was condemned"—*Damnum=si damnatus esset* ; H. 549, 2 ; A. & G. 292.—*ut*

*cremaretur* in apposition with *poenam* : H. 501, III.; A. & G. 332, f. Burning at the stake for treason was a common punishment among the Gauls.—*igni* ; perhaps a locative ; "in the fire ;" so *nave*—*processit* : "he went by sea."

*die—dictionis* : "on the day appointed for the pleading of his cause;" p. *causam dicere*. With *dictio causae* : cp. *indicta causa*. Is *dies* usually em.? H. 129 ; A. & G. 73.

*familia* : in a Roman sense this word included the slaves (*servi*), dependants (*clientes*), and debtors (*obaeerati*) reduced to a condition of slavery. The word signifies the body of the *famuli* (=*fac-muli*) from *facio*, "to do," or slaves as opposed to *liberi*, or "freedmen," who constituted the family as now understood.

*ad* : adverbially ; "about." What other adverb is thus used with numerals?

*clientes* : "dependants ;" root CLU, "to hear ;" hence "to obey ;" cp. *audio=pereo*.

*per eos—erupit* : "by their aid he escaped pleading his own case :" he so overawed the judges that they did not dare to try him.

*jus—esequi* : "to maintain its right," i.e. its right to punish traitors.

*conaretur—cogerent* : explain these subjunctives : H. 521, II., 2 ; A. & G. 325.

*neque—consciverit* : "and suspicion is not wanting that he was privy to his own death," i.e., that he committed suicide ; a *euphemism* : H. 504, 3, (2) ; A. & G. 319, d. The negative of the dependent clause arises from the negative character of the main clause.—*suspicio=suspicitio* : the lengthening of the *i* probably arises from contraction. Distinguish *suspicio* and *suspicitio*. Parse *consciverit*.

## CHAPTER V.

*nihilo minus* : for the const. see H. 423 ; A. & G. 250.

*ut—exeant* : an objective clause in apposition with *id quod—constituerant* : H. 501, 2 ; A. & G. 329, 2 ; "to leave their territories."

*oppida sua*: “walled towns;” *vicos*, “villages,” groups of houses in the open country. The root *vic* may be seen in *Foikos*, *vicus*, *vicus*; English *-wick* in such names as *Ipswick*, *Hawick*.

*incendunt—comburunt*: *accendere*, to light from without; *incendere*, to light from within; *comburere*, to burn down with a burning heat, as causative of *ardere*; *cremare*, to consume with bright flames, as the causative of *flagrare*.

*ut* is used for *quo*, because so many words intervene between it and the comparative: H. 497, II., 2; A. & G. 317, b.

*domum*: acc. of limit of motion. The idea of motion is implied by *reditionis=redeundi*: H. 380, II., 2; A. & G. 258, b, d.

*ad—subeunda*: “to undergo all dangers:” H. 544, 2, Note 2; A & G. 296.

*essent*: explain this tense: H. 495; A. & G. 287, e.

*trium—jubent*: “they order each one to take with him from home ground provisions which will last for three months.” *-trium mensium*; gen. of description. The word *mensis*: Greek, *μήν*; Sans., *māsa*, month; *mās*, moon; German, *mond*, all point to a root *MA*, “to measure,” the moon being considered by the ancients the measurer of time.—*domo*: H. 412, II.; A. & G. 258, a.

*uti—profisciscantur*: lit. “that adopting the same plan they may set out along with them after setting fire to their towns and villages.” —*oppidis exustis*: H. 431; A. & G. 255. Why is not *oppidis* the abl. of motion from a place? H. 412, I.; A. & G. 258.

*Noreiam oppugnabant*: the Boii were expelled from Italy 161 B.C. by the victories of Scipio Africanus. They then occupied the modern *Styria*. Distinguish in meaning *expugno*, *oppugno*.

*Boios receptos—adsciscunt=Boios ad se recipiunt et (Boios) socios adsciscunt*: “they join to themselves the Boii and unite them as allies:” H. 549, 5; A. & G. 292. Give the parts of *adscisco*.

## CHAPTER VI.

*itinерibus*: not to be translated. The repetition of the antecedent with the relative is frequent in Caesar when exactness is required. Caesar says there were two roads and only two by which they could get out of their own land.

*domo*: H. 412, II.; A. & G. 258, a.

*possent*: potential subjunctive: “routes (of such a character that) by them they (the Helvetii) could go out:” H. 503, 1; A. & G. 320.

*unum—alterum*, scil., *iter*, in partitive apposition with *itinera*: II. 364; A. & G. 184. The first of these journeys was along the right bank of the Rhone. The narrowest part of this route is at *l'as de l'Ecluse*, about 18 English miles below Geneva.

*vix qua singuli=qua vix singuli*: *hyperbaton*; note the emphasis caused by the inversion: “where waggons scarcely in single file could pass.” For the mood of *ducerentur*: see *possent* above.

*alterum*: the other journey would be along the road leading to Vienna (*Vienne*), and Lugdunum (*Lyons*), by way of *Chambery*. They would thus easily reach the Provincia.

*multo*: really abl. of difference : H. 423 ; A. & G. 250, N. 1.

*nuper—erant*: “were recently reduced to submission.” They were defeated by C. Pomptinus, 61 B.C.

*nonnullis locis*: “in several places :” H. 425, II., 2 ; A. & G. 254, a. Distinguish in meaning *nonnulli*, *nulli non*; *nonnunquam*, *nunquam non*; *nonnusquam*, *nusquam non*; *nonnemo*, *nemo non*; *loci*, *loca*. For const. of *vado* : H. 420 ; A. & G. 248. At present the Rhone is fordable in only two places, a few miles below Geneva.

*transitum=transiri potest*.

*extremum* : cp. ἐσχατον : “a border town.” Compare this adjective.

*proximum finibus* : give the different constructions of *prope* : H. 391, I., II., 2 ; A. & G. 234, a, e.

*Allobrogibus* : what verbs govern a dative? H. 385, II.; A. & G. 234, a.

*bono animo*: “kindly disposed :” H. 419, II.; A. & G. 251. For *viderentur* see H. 524 ; A. & G. 336.

*vel—coacturos, scil., existimabant*: “or they thought they would compel them by force.” Decline *vis*.

*suos*, referring to the Allobroges ; *eos* to the Helvetii.

*paterentur* : subjunctive for two reasons : H. 498, II.; 524 ; A. & G. 331, a ; 336.

*qua die*: see note above on *itineribus*. The feminine here expresses the day as a fixed period, a day fixed by authority. *Is dies* is simply “the day,” “the natural day,” “the time.”

*conveniant* : H. 497, I ; A. & G. 317.

*ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles*: *ante* really governs *Kalendas Apriles*, *quintum diem* being attracted from the ablative by the position of *ante*. The whole should be *quinto die ante Kalendas Apriles*, i.e., “five days before the first of April,” or March 28th. For the computation of time : H. 642-644 ; A. & G. 376. Derive *Kalendae*, *Nonae*, *Idus*.

## CHAPTER VII.

*nuntiatum—esset* : for the mood, see H. 521, II., 2 ; A. & G. 325.

*eos—conari* : in apposition with *id* : H. 539, II.; A. & G. 329, 1.

*ab urbe=Roma* : “the city,” by way of distinction : cp. *ātrū*, applied to Athens.

*quam—itineribus* : for *quam* ; H. 170, 2, (2) ; A. & G. 93, b. Caesar must have crossed the Alps, though he does not mention the fact. He travelled with great rapidity, sometimes according to Suetonius (Caesar, 57) at the rate of 100 Roman miles a day.

*Galliam citeriorem* : distinguish *Gallia citerior*, *Gallia ulterior*.

*ad Genavam* : is *ad* necessary ? H. 380, II. 1 (1) ; A. & G. 258, f, R.

*Genavam*, derived from the Celtic word *gena*, "mouth," because the lake there presses into the river's narrow course. Plutarch states that Caesar made the journey from Rome to Geneva in eight days.

*provinciae toti*: H. 385, 1; A. & G. 227. Distinguish the meanings and constructions of *impero*.

*legio una*: probably the tenth.

*certiores sunt*: "were informed," lit., "were made more certain."

*legationis=legatorum*: the abstract is here put for the concrete.

*qui dicerent*: "to say :" II. 497, I.; A. & G. 317. The rest of the discourse is in *oratio obliqua*. For the construction of *oratio obliqua*, see H. 522-4; A. & G. 336—340.

*sibi—animo*: "that their intention was;" literally, "that it was to them in mind." *Sibi=Helvetiis*.

*memoria tenebat*: "he remembered ;" for *memoria*, see H. 420; A. & G. 248.

*occisum, scil., esse*: so also with *pulsum, missum, concedendum, temperaturos*.

*sub jugum*: two spears were set up and a third placed over the top; this was the "yoke" under which conquered soldiers were made to pass, as a token of submission. The defeat here referred to took place 107 B.C.

*concedendum*. "that this request ought to be granted."

*neque-existimabat*: "and he did not think that people of an unfriendly disposition, when once a permission of making a journey through the province was given them, would refrain from committing wrong and violence."—*neque=et non.*—*animo*: H. 419, II.; A. & G. 251.—*data facultate=si facultas data esset*: H. 549, 2; A. & G. 292.

*spatiū*: here = *tempus*.

*convenirent*: for the mood, H. 519, II. 2; A. & G. 328.

*dīem=tempus*.

*si quid-reverterentur*: "if they wished anything, he told them to return about the Ides of April."—*quid*: when is *quis* used for *aliquis*? H. 455, 1; A. & G. 105, d.—*vellent*: for mood see H. 524; A. & G. 336, 337.—*ad*, here = "about." Translate from *si-reverterentur* into direct narrative.

## CHAPTER VIII.

*legione, militibus*: an instrument, rather than agent, because the legion was looked up as a kind of warlike instrument : H. 420; A. & G. 248.

*qui-influit*: as a matter of fact, the Rhone flows into the lake at the upper end and out at the lower.

*decem novem=undeviginti*.

*pedum*: gen. of description : H. 396, V.; A. & G. 215, b.

*murum fossamque*: the probabilities are that Caesar fortified merely places which were without any natural defence. The wall and ditch would be hardly more than three miles long.

*praesidia disponit*: “here and there (*dis-*) he places garrisons.” According to Napoleon III., these lines consisted of a series of redoubts (*castella*) defending the left bank of the river, and connected together by a palisaded entrenchment cut into the bank itself.

*quo facilius*: when is *quo* used for *ut*? H. 497, II. 2; A. & G. 317, b.  
*se invito*: “without his leave,” “against his will:” H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255, a.

*conarentur*: because *communit* is in effect a past tense: H. 495, II.; A. & G. 287, e.

*vēnit*: distinguish in meaning *vēnit*, *vēnīt*.

*reverterunt*: from *revertor*; the tenses derived from the present are passive in form, those from the perfect, active. Generally *revertor*, “to return” before; *redire*, “to return” after, accomplishing one’s journey.

*iter*: “the right of way.”

*conentur*: for the mood, H. 524; A. & G. 336.

*prohibiturum*=*se prohibiturum esse*.

*spe*: H. 414; A. & G. 243.

*navibus—factis*: “by joining boats and forming several rafts:” H. 431, 2 (2); A. & G. 255.

*ali*: we should have expected *alii* before *navibus*, to balance *alii* before *vadis*; “some . . . others.” The use of the latter *alii* shows that most of the Helvetii attempted to cross in the way first mentioned.

*si—conati*: “in the hope that they by their attempts were able to force a passage:” H. 511, Note 3; A. & G. 307, f.

*operis—destiterunt*: “they gave up this attempt, being repelled by the strength of the work, the massing of the soldiers, and the darts.”—*concursu* here refers to the rapid massing of the forces on a particular point.—*conatu*: H. 414; A. & G. 243.

## CHAPTER IX.

*relinquebatur—via*: “the only way that remained was through the Sequani.” The only way left was that by the north bank of the Rhone.

*qua poterant*: “by which they were unable to pass on account of the narrow defiles, in case the Sequani were unwilling.”—*qua*: either adverbial or abl. of relative pro. —*Sequanis invitisi*=*si Sequani invitissent*.—*augustias*; what words in Latin are used in pl. only? The *Pas de l’Ecluse* is referred to, where a few men could prevent a passage.

*sua sponte*: “by their own influence:” H. 420; A. & G. 248. Decline *sponte*. Donaldson supposes the word *sponte*, a collateral form of *pondus*, and that its meanings were “by their own influence,” (as here), and “of their own accord.”

*ut impetrarent*: “that by his intercession they might obtain their request.”—*eo deprecatore*: H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255 a.

*Dumnorix—poterat*: “Dumnorix had the greatest influence among the Sequani by reason of popularity and liberality.”—*gratia*: H. 420; A. &

G. 248.—*plurimum* : neut. acc. use l adverbially ; cog. acc. : H. 304, I, 3; 371, II. (2); A. & G. 148 d; 240 a.

*filiam ducere* : cp. ἀγεσθαι γυναικα : see *dare in matrimonium*, chap. iii.

*novis—studebat* : “ he aimed at a revolution ” ; cp. *novae tabulae*; “ a remission of debts.” With *novis rebus studere* : cp. νεωτερίζειν. For the dative : H. 385; A. & G. 227.

*et—volebat* : “ and he wished to have as many states as possible attached to him by reason of his kind offices towards them.”—*sibi* governed by *obstrictas* : H. 386; A. & G. 228.—*suo beneficio* : H. 413; A. & G. 245.

*ut—patientur* : “ that they may allow the Helvetii to go through their territory ” ; this clause is the object of *impetrant* : H. 498, I.; A. & G. 331 c. The clause *uti dent* is the object of *perficit*.

*Sequani, Helvetii, scil. obsides dant.*

*prohibeant, transeant* ; H. 497, II.; A. & G. 317.

## CHAPTER X.

*renuntiatur* : “ word is brought back.” The subject is really the subsequent inf. clause. There is implied in *re*—the fact that Caesar had sent out men to enquire.

*Helvetiis—animo* : “ that the Helvetii intend ; ” cp. *in animo versari, volvere*.

*quae civitas=et ea civitas* : H. 453.

*id*, referring to *facere iter*. The principal verb of the indirect discourse is *futurum (esse)*, the subject of which is the clause *ut—haberet* : H. 501, I, I; A. & G. 319, 332, a.

*futurum (esse)* : the periphrasis with *futurum esse*, or *fore* with *ut* and the subjunctive for the future inf. indicates that a certain result will follow from causes unspecified. Hence the meaning is, “ if this thing were to take place, he knew that it would be fraught with great danger to the province in its having men famed for war, enemies of the Roman people, bordering upon places open and very fruitful in corn.”—*locis* : II. 391, I; A. & G. 234 a.

*ei munitioni—praefecit* : “ he appointed T. Labienus lieutenant over that line of defence which he had built.” For the dative, H. 386; A. & G. 228. T. Labienus was one of the best officers of Caesar’s army. He was *tribunus plebis* in 63 B.C. On Caesar’s invasion of Italy 49 B.C., he deserted his old commander and fought on the side of Pompey.

*in Italiam* : is the preposition necessary? Translate : *he went home ; he went to the house of Caesar ; he went to Rome ; he went to Italy ; he went to Rome, a great city of Italy.* Italy proper extended to the Rubicon. Then Caesar included *Gallia Cisalpina*.

*magnis itineraryibus* : “ by forced marches.” The regular day’s march (*iter justum*) was from six to seven hours long and usually began at sunrise. The distance ordinarily traversed was from fifteen to twenty English miles. On forced marches (*itinera magna*) of eight to twelve hours, a much greater distance was covered.

*duasque—conscriptit* : the two legions he levied in Cisalpine Gaul were the 11th and 12th ; the three drawn from winter quarters at Aquileia were the 7th, 8th, 9th. The 10th was at Geneva. So Caesar had in all six legions. What was the number of men in a legion? Give the divisions of a Roman legion.

*in—Galliam—in Galliam Transalpinam.*

*ibi—in Alpibus.* Caesar's route lay by way of Turin, Mt. Genèvre, to Briançon and Embrun. The most direct route would have been by Mt. Cenis (*Alpes Cottiae*), which road, however, did not begin to be used till the days of Augustus.

*locis—occupatis* : “the heights having been previously seized :” H. 431; A. & G. 255.

*compluribus—pulsis* : the order is *his pulsis compluribus proeliis*.

*ab Ocelo—in fines* : when is a preposition permissible before the name of a town? H. 412, II., 3; A. & G. 259, f.

*citerioris provinciae=Galliae Cisalpinae.*

## CHAPTER XI.

*jam—transduxerant* : “had already led.”

*angustias* : decline this word.

*populabantur* : note the change of tense. Bring this out in translating. The imperfect shows that the action was still going on.

*quum—possent* : “since they were not able to defend themselves and their property from them,” i.e., from the Helvetii. Account for the mood in *possent*.

*rogatum* : supine; what are the uses of the supines in *-um* and *-u?* In how many ways may you express, *he sent men to ask for help?*

*ita debuerint* : “that at all times they had so deserved of the Roman people, that their fields ought not to be ravaged almost in sight of our army, their children led into slavery, their towns besieged.” Put this into *oratio recta*.

*Aedui Ambarri* : the Aedui around the Arar (*Saône*). The prefix *amb* is Celtic for *ἀνθεῖ* in Greek. The main body of the nation were on the east of the Middle *Loire*. Bibracte (*Autun*), the great Druidical capital, and Noviodunum (*Nevers*) were in their domains. We frequently find the generic name as *Aedui* with the specific name as *Ambarri* : cp. *Ligures Salyes, Dalmatae Scordisci* : *σὺν καπτρός* ; *βοῦς ταῦρος*.

*necessarii—consanguinei* : the former denotes those who are bound by a permanent connection whether of an official kind as *cliens, patronus*, or of a private nature, as *amicus, familiaris*. With *necessarii*, cp. *ἀναγκαιοί* : *consanguineus* denotes a relation derived from a common origin ; cp. *συγγενῆς*.

*Caesarēm—prohibere* : “inform Caesar that their lands having been ravaged they now could hardly keep off from their towns a force of the enemy.”—*depopulatis* : the most common passive deponent participles are : *abominatus, amplexus, confessus, detestatus, dimensus, execratus, meditatus, ultus*.

*sibi—reliqui*: “that to them nothing was now left except the soil of their land.” Distinguish *sōlum*, *sōlum*; *rēlīqui*, *rēlīqui*. What case is *reliqui*? H. 397, I; A. & G. 216, a, I.

*Caesar—pervenirent*: “Caesar resolved, after all the resources of his allies had been destroyed, not to wait till the Helvetii reached the territories of the Santoni.”—*exspectandum sibi*: H. 388; A. & G. 232.—*pervenirent*: for mood: H. 519, II., 2; A. & G. 328.

## CHAPTER XII.

*flumen est Arar*: “there is a river (called) Arar.” The word *Arar* is said to be from the Celtic *arar*, “gentle;” cp. *āporīc*. The word *Garonne*, from the Celtic *garu*, “rough,” “impetuous.” The modern name of the Arar, *Saône*, is probably from the Celtic *sogham*; Lat. *segnis*, “slow.” For a part of the course, at least, the Arar formed the boundaries between the territories of the Aedui and Sequani.

*incredibili—lenitate*: “with such incredible smoothness:” H. 419, III.; A. & G. 248. As compared with the Rhone, Po, Adige and Tiber, rivers well known to Caesar, the *Saône* would appear very sluggish. He had not yet seen the rivers of Britain, notably the Thames.

*fluat*: dependent question, therefore, the subjunctive: H. 529, I.; A. & G. 334.

*possit*: for the mood: H. 500, II.; A. & G. 319.

*ratibus—transibant*: “attempted to cross by joining rafts and boats.” For *ratibus—junctis*: H. 431, 2, (2); A. & G. 255.—*transibant*: conative imperfect. Where the Helvetii crossed the *Saône* is not known, probably a few miles north of its junction with the Rhone.

*copiarum*: “of the forces.” What words have a different meaning in the singular and the plural? H. 132; A. & G. 79, c.

*partes—flumen*: explain these cases: H. 376; A. & G. 239, b.

*de vigilia*: with the Romans the civil day began at midnight and ended at midnight as with us; the natural day began with the twilight and ended at dark. The day and night were divided into twelve hours each, the length of each hour depending on the season. The night was also for military purposes divided into four watches (*vigilie*), of three hours each. The expression *de tertia vigilia* means, “in the course of the third watch,” implying that the third watch had already begun. What would *tertia vigilia* mean? H. 429; A. & G. 256.

*agressus*: what prepositions prefixed to intransitive verbs of motion may make them transitive? H. 372; A. & G. 228, a.

*concidit*: distinguish this in meaning from *concidit*.

*in—ablderunt*: “they concealed themselves by fleeing into the neighbouring woods.” What would *in proximis silvis ablderunt* mean?

*pagus*: properly a country district of enclosed or cultivated land; root *PAG*, “to bind together;” cp. *πάσσαλος*, “a peg;” *πήγνυμι*, “to fix;” *paciscor*, *pax*, *pango*. With *pagus*: cp. *δῆμος* (from *δέω*, “to bind”); English *town*, A.S. *tun*, from *tynan* (tie), “to enclose.” The word *pagus*

still lives in the French *pays*, which is often used in the same sense; cp. *Pays de Vaud*.

*Tigurinus*: the modern Zurich (called *Turicen* by the Romans, and *Turegum* and *Turicum* in the middle ages) was in this district.

*domo exisset*: "H. 521, II., 2; A. & G. 325.

*memoria*: "within the recollection:" H. 429; A. & G. 256.

*L. Cassium*: in the year 107 B.C. the Tigurini passed into the territory of the Allobroges under the command of Divico. C. Cassius Longinus who marched against them was slain and his army was ignominiously forced to pass under the yoke. In this battle fell L. Piso, a lieutenant of Cassius, and grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law, L. Calpurnius Piso.

*ita—persolvit*: "therefore, whether by chance or design on the part of the immortal Gods, that part of the Helvetian state which had inflicted signal defeat on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty."—*casu*: H. 416; A. & G. 245.—*populo*: H. 386; A. & G. 228.—*princeps*: H. 443, N. 1; A. & G. 191.

*quod—interfecerant*: construe *quod Tigurini, eodem proelio quo Cassium (interfecerunt), interfecerant Lucium Pisonem, legatum avum Lucii Pisonis, ejus (i.e. Caesar's) socii*. Lucius Calpurnius Piso, consul B.C. 58, was the father of Caesar's second wife, *Calpurnia*, familiar to all the readers of Shakespere's "Julius Caesar."—*proelio*: H. 429; A. & G. 256.

### CHAPTER XIII.

*hoc proelio facto=post hoc proelium*: "after the battle was fought:" H. 431; A. & G. 255.

*reliquas—curat*: "he has a bridge built over the Arar that he may overtake the remaining forces of the Helvetii." Note the emphasis of the words of this clause is heightened by inversion.—*posset* because *curat* is a historic present: H. 495, II.; A. & G. 287, e.—*in*: note the idiom.—*pontem faciendum curat*; literally, "he takes care of a bridge, as in the way of making." The gerundive was originally active (if derived from an active verb); cp. *agitandum est* (Plautus, Tr. S69), "I have got to stand guard." The active force is still retained in *secundus*. Then the idea of necessity was developed through that of futurity; e.g. *consilium delendae urbis* would mean, "a plan of a city being destroyed" (i.e. in the process of destruction), then "about to be destroyed," then "to be destroyed," then "of destroying a city": H. 544, note 2; A. & G. 294, b.

*quum—intelligerent*: "when they knew that he in one day had accomplished this (namely) the crossing of the river, a thing which they themselves with the greatest difficulty had taken twenty days to accomplish."—*quum intelligerent*: for the mood: H. 521, II., 2; A. & G. 325.—*id* object of *fecisse* and explained by *ut—transirent*; H. 501, 2; A. & G. 329, 2.—*diebus viginti*: explain the case: H. 429, A. & G. 256.—*illum*, i.e. *Caesarem*: cp. *έκεινος*.

*cujus legationis=quorum legatorum*. See Note 10, Chapter VII.

*bello Cassiano*: "in the war against Cassius:" H. 395, N. 2; A. & G. 190. Since the defeat of Cassius took place 107 B.C. and Caesar was in command 58 B.C., Divico must have been a very old man.

*cum—Caesare*: *cum aliquo agere*: “to have any dealings or transactions with a person;” *cum populo agere*: “to bring a matter before the people,” for their vote or opinion.

*si—pacem*: indirect discourse (*oratio obliqua*); turn this to direct discourse (*oratio recta*): H. 527, II.; A. & G. 337. The direct form is given in A. & G. 339.

*sin—perseveraret*: “if, on the other hand, he (i.e. Caesar) shall continue to harass (them) by war;” after *persequi*, scil., *eos*.

*reminisceretur*, scil., *populus Romanus*: “let the Roman people remember;” in direct discourse (*oratio recta*), *reminiscere*: H. 523, III.; A. & G. 339.

*veteris incommodi*: rather a mild term to apply to the defeat of Cassius: for the case: H. 406, II.; A. & G. 219.

*pristinae virtutis*: “their former valor.” Distinguish *priscus*, denoting “former,” as worthy of honour, said of an age sacred and primitive=ἀρχαῖος; *pristinus*, generally of a time that is past = πότερος; *antiquus*, opposed to *novus*, belonging to an age that previously existed = παλαιός; *vetus*, that which has lasted for a long time, opposed to *recens* = γεράσις.

*quod—esset*: “as to the fact that he had suddenly attacked one canton.”—*quod* is here a causal conjunction: H. 516, II., 2 N.; A. & G. 333. a.—*improviso*: note the emphatic position.—*pagum*, i.e., *pagum Tigurinum*.

*ne—niterentur*: “he should not on account of that circumstance either justly claim anything because of his own valour or despise them; that they had been instructed by their fathers and ancestors rather to trust to their valour, than to trust to artifices or ambuscades.”—*suae*, i.e. *Caesaris*.—*magnopere*: compare this adverbial expression. —*ipsos*: referring to the Helvetii.—*majoribus*, scil., *natu*: compare this.—note the zeugma in *contenderent*

*quare—proderet*: “wherefore let him not so act, that the place on which they had taken their stand should bear its name or hand down a tradition from an overthrow of the Roman people and the destruction of their army.” Explain fully what the mood form would be in direct narrative.

## CHAPTER XIV.

*his*, scil. *legatis*: “to these envoys.”

*eo—teneret*: “he had the less reason for hesitating (what to do on this occasion), because he remembered (literally, retained in memory) those circumstances which the Helvetii had related.”—*eo* is ablative of that to which the clause *quod—teneret* refers.—*dubitacionis*: for the genitive: H. 397, 3; A. & G. 216, a, 3.—*dari*: H. 523, I.; A. & G. 336.

*atque—accidissent*: “and he was more indignant (at this), because (*quo minus*, the less) these things had not happened through any fault (literally desert) of the Roman people.”—*eo—quo*: H. 417, 2; A. & G. 250, R.—With *graviter ferre*; cp. χαλεπῶς φέρειν.—*merito*: an ablative H. 416; A. & G. 245.

*qui—cavere* : “if they had been conscious to themselves of any wrong doing, it would not be a difficult matter to be on their guard.”—*qui*, i.e. *populus Romanus*.—*injuriae* : for the genitive : H. 399, 1, 2; A. & G. 218, a.—*sibi conscius esse*; cp. ἐαυτῷ συνειδέναι.—*cavere* : distinguish *cavere aliquem*, *cavere alicui* : H. 385, II., 1.

*eo—putaret* : “but (he said) that the Roman people were misled by this, because they were not aware that anything had been done by them on account of which they should fear, nor did they think that they ought to be feared without a reason.”—*eo deceptum* : i.e., *populum Romanum eo deceptum*.—*commissum*, scil. *aliquid*.

*quod injuriarum* : “now if he were willing to forget their former insult, could he also lay aside the remembrance of their late wrongs?”—*quod*, properly an adverbial acc. referring to the thought of the preceding sentence ; literally, “as to which :” H. 378, 2; 453, 6; A. & G. 240, a. These wrongs are specified in the clause beginning with *quod* : H. 540, IV.; 363, 5; A. & G., 329, 3.

*eo invito* : “though he (i.e., Caesar) was unwilling :” H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255, a.

*tentassent* : for mood : H. 524; A. & G. 336.

*quod—pertinere* : “as to their boasting in such insolent terms of their victory, and as to their wondering that they had so long done wrong without suffering for it, (the two things) had both one meaning :” i.e., pointed in the same direction.—*quod* : the two clauses beginning with *quod* stand as the subject of *pertinere* : H. 516, II., 2; A. & G. 333, a. —*sua* : i.e., Helvetii. The victory is the one referred to above in which the Romans under Cassius were defeated.

*consuesse—concedere* : “for the immortal gods are accustomed, in order that men whom they intend to punish for their crimes may be more severely pained by a change in circumstances, sometimes to grant to these a more prosperous fortune and a longer exemption from punishments.”—*consuesse* : a perfect present ; cp. *odi*, *novi*, *coepi*, *memini*.—*quo* : when is *quo* used for *ut?* H. 497, II., 2; A. & G. 317, b.

*quum—facturum* : “since these things are so, still, if hostages are given to him by these so that he may know that they would do these things which they promise, and if they make amends to the Aedui (and) likewise to the Allobroges for the wrongs which they have inflicted on them and their allies, (he declares) that he will make peace with them.” Observe the tenses in subjunctive in oblique narrative are those used in the indicative of direct narrative.—*Aeduis* : sc. *satisfaciant* : H. 385, I.; A. & G. 227, e.—*ipsis=Aeduis*.

*ita—testem* : “that the Helvetii had received an established custom from their ancestors, that they were accustomed to receive, not to give hostages.”—*consuerint* : H. 500, II.; A. & G. 319.

## CHAPTER XV.

*movent* : scil. *Helvetii*.

*coactum habebat* : H. 388, 1 N.; A. & G. 292, c.

*qui videant=ut ei videant*: *ei* referring to *equites* implied in *equitatus*: H. 497, I; A. & G. 317.

*faciant*: subj. of indirect question: H. 529, I; A. & G. 334.

*novissimum agmen*, scil. *Helvetiorum*. Caesar often used *novissimum agmen* for *extremum agmen*.

*alieno loco*: “in an unfavourable place;” literally, “in a place picked out by another;” opposed to *suus locus*: “ground chosen by himself.” For the case: H. 425, II., 2; A. & G. 258, f.

*de nostris*, scil. *militibus=nostrorum militum*: H. 397, 3, N., 3; A. & G. 216, c.

*equitibus*: looked upon as an instrument rather than an agent: H. 420; A. & G. 248.

*audacius—cooperunt*: “they began more boldly to make a stand, and sometimes to provoke to battle our troops on their rear.”—With *audacius*, scil. *solito*: “more boldly than usual.”—*subsistere*, scil. *gradum*.—*non-nunquam et* (*asyndeton*); “(and) sometimes even;” the *et* expressed is not the conjunction, but the adverb=*etiam*. For the case of *aymine*: H. 425, II., 2; A. & G. 258, f: for that of *proelio*: H. 420; A. & G. 248.

*suos*, scil., *milites*.

*ac—prohibere*: “and was content for the moment to keep the enemy from plundering, from foraging and from ravaging.”—*in praesentia=in praesenti tempore*: “for the moment,” “for the time being.” For the case of *rapinis*: H. 414, I; A. & G. 243, a.

*ita* correlative with *uti*.

*dies*: for the case: H. 379; A. & G. 256.

*non—interesset*: “not more than a space of five or six miles (each day) was distant”; for the abl. *milibus*: H. 379, N. 2; A. & G. 257, b; for the distributive: H. 172, 3; A. & G. 95. Distinguish *bina castra*, *duo castra*; *binæ aedes*, *duæ aedes*; *bini horti*, *duo horti*.

## CHAPTER XVI.

*interim*: “meanwhile,” denoting merely a short duration; *interea*, meaning a period more extended; *quotidie*, said of daily repetition; *in dies*, of daily increase or diminution.

*Aeduos frumentum*: for the two accusatives: H. 374; A. & G. 239, c.

*quod—polliciti*: “which they had promised in the name of the state.” The subjunctive here is the subjunctive of oblique narrative: H. 524; A. & G. 336, or it may be equivalent to *quum id polliciti essent*.

*flagiture*: the historical infinitive, “kept asking,” “asked again and again”: H. 536, I; A. & G. 275.

*nam—suppetebat*: “for on account of the frosts, because Gaul is situated beneath the north, as has been mentioned above, not only was the corn not ripe in the fields, but not even was there a sufficiently large abundance of fodder at hand.” Explain the difference in meaning between *frigus* and *frigora*: H. 130, 2; A. & G. 75, c.—*septentrionibus*: see Note on Chapter I.—*ante*, see Note on Chapter I.—*frumenta*, why plural? This

statement shows that a remarkable change must have taken place in the climate of France since the days of the Roman occupation of that country. Caesar waited till after the 24th March at Geneva. He crossed the Alps, levied two legions, and mustered three more at Aquileia. In carrying out these plans, he must have spent at least two months. The date of his arrival at Lugdunum must have been as late as June 6th. The Helvetii after this occupied twenty days in crossing the Seine, so that on the 26th of June the spring had not much more than begun.

*eo—nolebat*: “besides, he was unable to make use of the corn which he had brought up the river Arar in vessels, for the following reasons (*prop-terea*), because the Helvetii, from whom he was unwilling to depart, had turned aside their line of march from the Arar.”—*eo frumento* governed by *uti*. What verbs govern the ablative? H. 421.1; A. & G. 249.—*subvexerat*: “had brought up,” from a lower place to a higher.—*flumine*: H. 420; A. & G. 248.

*diem—ducere*: “they (the Aedui) kept putting off (Caesar) from day to day; they kept saying that corn was being collected, was on the road, was ready for delivery.”—*diem—Aedui*: fully, *Aedui ducere* (historical inf. = *ducebant*) *Cuesarem ex die in diem*; so *dicere=dicebant*: H. 536.1; A. & G. 275. We have a climax in *conferri, comportari, adesse*.

*se duci*: “that he was being put off too long.”—*diutius*; A. & G. 93 a.

*et—oporteret*: “and that the day was at hand on which he had to measure out corn to the soldiers.”—*die*: not translated (See Note on *itineribus*. Chapter VI.).—*metiri*: not necessarily a passive deponent: scil. *eum* before *metiri*. Grain to the extent of two pecks (*modii*), about half a bushel of our measure was served out to the army every fifteen days. This the soldier kept in a sack, and when he required flour he ground up the grain by means of hand-mills (*molae manuales*).

*convocatis—potestatem*: “after collecting together the chiefs of these, of whom he had a large number in his camp, (and) amongst these Divitiacus and Liscus who held the highest office, which officer the Aedui called Vergobretus, and is elected annually, and has the power of life and death over his own people.”—*convocatis—principibus*: H. 431; A. & G. 255.—*copiam*: distinguish *copia* and *copiae* in meaning; also *castrum* and *castra*.—*Divitiaco et Lisco*, scil., *convocatis*. Why is *magistratui* in the dative? H. 386; A. & G. 228.—*Vergobretum*: said to be from the Celtic *Feargo-breith*, “a man for judging”; or *Guerg-breath*, “strong in judgment.” Caesar (8.33) states that the person holding this office could not leave the state during his term of office, and that no one could be elected, if a living member of the family had held the post. The Celtic adj. *guerg* may be connected with the Aryan root *KUR*, “powerful;” cp. *quercus*, the oak, i.e., the strong tree; *Quirites*, “the powerful” as holding the franchise; *quiris*, *κύρος*, *κύριος*, *κοιρανεῖν*.

*graviter—sublevetur*: “he severely reprimands them (saying), that though grain corn could neither be bought nor obtained from the fields in so urgent a crisis, the enemy being so near at hand, he was not assisted by them.”—*posset*; scil., *frumentum*.—*tempore—hostibus*; abl. absol.: H. 431; A. & G. 255.

*praesertim—queritur*: “especially does he complain with still greater

vehemence of his being left unaided (by them) since he mainly (*ex magna parte*) influenced by their entreaties had undertaken the war."—*magna ex parte*, literally "in a great measure." Give the forms of *precibus*. For *multo*: H. 423; A. & G. 250.

## CHAPTER XVII.

*quod—proponit*: "states publicly (that) which he had left unmentioned."—*quod*, referring to *id* understood, object of *proponit*. The rest of the chapter is in *oblique narration*: H. 524; A. & G. 336. Turn this chapter into *direct narrative*.

*esse—magistratus*: "there are some whose influence with the common people is very great, who in their private capacity have more influence than the magistrates themselves."—*plurimum, plus* (see Note on *plurimum*, Chapter III).—*privatim*, others read *private*. The influence of the chieftain was paramount in all Celtic communities, from the days of Caesar till comparatively late times. In Britain we find the same state of matters as here depicted, till the end of the 17th Century.

*hos—perferre*: "these by their seditious and disloyal speeches deterred the people from supplying the corn which they had engaged to supply; if now they were unable to hold the supremacy of Gaul, they had better endure the government of the Gauls than that of the Romans."—*ne confieran*; the plural of the verb arises by a *sense construction* from the plural implied in *multitudinis*: for mood: H. 498, II.; A. & G. 331, e. With *perferre, scil., malle*. Another reading is *praeferre*, instead of *perferre*; the meaning then is: "if they were unable then to hold the supremacy of Gaul, they thought the rule of the Gauls better than that of the Romans."

*neque—erepturi*: "nor ought they to doubt that, if the Romans defeated the Helvetii, they (the Romans) would deprive the Aedui, as well as the rest of Gaul, of their liberty." What meaning and construction has *dubitare* in an affirmative sentence? What in a negative? H. 504.3.(2); A. & G. 332, g.—*Aeduis*, H. 386.2; 385, II., 2; A. & G. 229, b.—*erepturi sint*: more emphatic than *eripiant*: H. 501, II., 2; A. & G., 319, d.

*quaque—gerantur*: "and whatever is done in the camp."

*a se = ab Lisco*.

*quin—tacuisse*: "moreover, in that compelled by necessity, he has told this matter to Caesar, he knew at what risk he did this and for this reason he had been silent as long as he could be."—*quod*: H. 516, II. 2, N; A. & G. 333, a.—*id* refers to the clause, *quod—enuntiarit*.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

*Caesar—sentiebat*: "Caesar felt by this speech of Liscus that Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was meant;" literally, "was pointed at."

*sed—retinet*: "but since he (i.e. Caesar) was unwilling that these matters should be discussed, when many were present, he quietly dismisses the meeting, (and) detains Liscus."—*quod nolebat*. When does *quod* take the indic., and when the subj.? H. 516, I., II.; A. & G., 333; 341.—*pluri-*

*bus praesentibus*; abl. absolute: H. 431.4; A. & G. 255, a. Give the present indic. of *praesum*.—*concilium*; the usual distinction between *consilium*, and *concilium*, that the former means “advice,” “plan,” while the latter means “an assemblage,” does not always hold good, though the distinction holds here. *Concilium*: *con.* = *cum*. root CAL, in *calare*, cp. Gk. *καλεῖν*, “to call together;” *consilium*: *con.* root SEL; cp. *solum*: “a throne,” “to sit together”; root SED; for interchange of *d* and *l*; cp. δάκρυ, *lacrima*; *dingua* = *lingua*.—*dimitit*, *retinet*. What figure? H 467, III.; A. & G. 276, d.

*quaerit*—*dixerit*: “he (i.e. Caesar) inquires from him in private about those things which he (i.e. Liscus) had mentioned in the meeting.” Distinguish in meaning *rogo*, *quaero*, *interrogo*.

*eadem*—*quaerit*: “he makes inquiries about the same things from others in secret.”

*esse vera*: scil. *haec*.

*ipsum*—*novarum*: “that Dumnorix was the very man, of the greatest boldness, of great influence among the common people on account of his liberality, eager for a change of government.”—*ipsum*; *ipse* has often this meaning. Translate *triginta dies erant ipsi, quum has dabam litteras, summa audacia*, scil., *virum*: for the case of *audacia gratia*: H. 419, II.; A. & G. 251.

*complures*—*nemo*: “that he (i. e., Dumnorix) had farmed for many years the revenues arising from the harbours and all the other taxes of the Aedui at a low rate, because, when he was bidding, no one dared to bid against him.”—*annos*: H. 379, A. & G. 256.—*portoria*. The different kinds of taxes were: (1) *tributum*, which was (a) either a tax so much a head (*in capita*); (b) or a tax according to the valuation of the estate (*ex censu*); (c) or extraordinary, exacted in cases of necessity (*temerarium*); (2) *portorium*, money paid at the port for goods imported or exported, the collectors of this tax were called *portores*; (3) *decumae*, tithes, or a tenth part of corn and a fifth of other fruits, which were exacted from all those who tilled the public lands (*ager publicus*) either in Italy or outside of it; (4) *scriptura* was a tax paid from the public pastures or woods. *Vectigal* was a general term applied to anything brought into the treasury (*veho, vectus*).—*parvo pretio*: H. 422, A. & G. 252.—*redempta habere* = *redemisse*: H. 388.1. N, A. & G. 292 c. The revenues were farmed out, that is, the privilege of collecting them was sold at auction to the highest bidder who collected them through agents (*publicani*). The persons who farmed these guaranteed the state a certain sum and pocketed the remainder—*illo licente*: H. 431; A. & G. 255. The verb *liceo* (middle deponent) is from the same root as *linquo*; first meant “to get a thing left to oneself,” hence “to bid for it.” The intransitive *liceo* has the meaning, “to be let,” i.e. “sold” at a given price.

*his*—*comparasse*: “by this means he had both increased the wealth of his own family and had obtained great means to carry out his liberality”—*auxisse*: distinguish *augere*, transitive. and *crescere*, intransitive.—*largendum*: H. 542. III. N 2, A. & G. 300.—*comparasse*, scil., *eum*.

*suo*—*alere*: “at his own expense he always maintained.”—*sumptu*; H. 420; A. & G. 245.

*neque—posse* : “and not only at home, but also among the neighbouring states did he exercise a powerful influence”—*neque = et non.*—*domi* : H. 426.2 ; A. & G. 258. d.

*atque—collocasse* ; “and for the sake of (maintaining) this influence, he had given in marriage his mother to a man among the Bituriges there the most noble and most powerful, (while) he himself had a wife from the Helvetii, (and) had given in marriage a (half) sister on his mother's side, and his own near relations to be married among the other states.”—*causa* : H. 416, foot note 2 ; A. & G. 245 c. *Biturigibus* : the Bituriges were a Celtic people separated from the Aedu by the *Loire*. Their chief town was *Bourges*.—*collocasse*, scil., *nuptum* ; for construction of *nuptum* : H. 546.1 ; A. & G. 302.—*ipsum* : Dumnorix, who had married the daughter of Orgetorix (see Chap. VI.).—*sororem ex matre*, scil., *partam*.

*favere—affinitatem* : “that he was friendly and well disposed to the Helvetii on account of that relationship.”—*Helvetiis* : for the case : H. 385.1 : A. & G. 227. The full phrase is : *cupere omnia Helvetiorum causā, or cupere omnia quae Helvetii cuperent.*

*odisse—restitutus* : “that he further hated Caesar on his own account, and the Romans, because with their approval his power had been curtailed, and his brother Divitiacus had been restored to the old place of influence and of power (held by him i.e. Dumnorix).”—*suo nomine* : H. 416 ; A. & G. 245.—*diminuta*, scil., *sit*. Divitiacus was a Druid of great influence and high position. We may infer that he was a man of refinement. He had spent some time at Rome, B.C. 63, trying to get the aid of the Romans against Ariovistus.

*si—venire* . “if anything adverse should happen the Romans, he had the greatest hope of obtaining the sovereign power by the help of the Helvetii.” Distinguish *accidit, evenit* ; said of favourable or unfavourable things, the former applied to things that are unexpected, that take us by surprise, the latter, to things that are expected and foreseen ; *contigit, obvenit, obtingit*, applies to things that are fortunate, the first referring to the favours of fortune, the other two to things that fall to one's lot.—*si quid accidat* : *euphemism*, a mild way of saying anything ill-omened ; cp. *εἰ τι πάθοτεν* for *εἰ τι πάθοτεν*

*imperio—desperare* : “so long as the empire of the Romans lasted, he despaired not only of (obtaining) sovereign power, but even of (retaining) that influence which he had.”—for *imperio* : H. 416 or 429 : A. & G. 245, or 256.

*reperiebat—equitibus* : “Caesar found out further in the course of his enquiries in regard to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish which had taken place (that) a beginning of the flight in it (i.e. in the battle) had been commenced by Dumnorix and his cavalry.” Distinguish *reperiēre*, said of things found out with difficulty, after a search ; *invenire*, of things accidentally discovered.—*quod* is attracted into the case of the relative clause, while its proper place in the antecedent clause is taken by *fugae*.—*ejus*, either (1) a prominent adjective, “of that flight,” or (2) referring to *proelium*.

*auxilia—Caesari* : H. 390, II. ; A. & G. 233.

## CHAPTER XIX.

*quibus—cognitis*: “after these things were found out”: H. 431; A. & G. 255.

*quum—acciderent*: “when the most undoubted facts were added to these grounds of suspicion.” Distinguish in meaning *suspicio*, *suspicio*.

*quod—traduxisset*: “the fact that he had led”: for the mood: H. 516 II.; 528, I.; A. & G. 341, d. The subjunctive implies that the fact is well-known to the reader.

*quod—curasset*: “the fact that he had taken pains to procure an exchange of hostages.”

*non modo—ipsi*: “not only without his (Caesar’s) own orders, and those of the state (of the Aedui), but even without the knowledge of the latter.” Decline *injussu*.—*ipsi*=*Caesare et Aeduis*.

*a magistratu*, i.e., by the Vergobret, Liscus.

*causæ*: depending on *satis*, which is used as a noun: H. 397, 4; A. & G. 216, 4. What other adverbs are similarly used?

*quare—juberet*: “why either he himself (i.e. Caesar) should punish him or order the state to punish (him).”—*animadverteret*, a mild way of speaking. With an acc. only *animadvertere*, means, “to see,” or “observe.” With acc. with *in*, “to punish.” For mood: H. 524, 529. I.; A. & G. 334.

*his—rebus*: “to all these considerations”: H. 385, I.; A. & G. 227.

*his—cognoverat*: “the one objection that was in the way of all these considerations was the fact that he knew that the good will of his brother Divitiacus towards the Roman people was very great; that his affection towards himself was very great; that his loyalty, his regard for right, his self-control, was pre-eminent.” Divitiacus, though belonging to the Druids, was one of the most Romanized of all the Gauls. Coming to Rome, B.C. 63, when the Senate was engaged in crushing the conspiracy of Catiline, he was detained for some time, frequented the best society and enjoyed the friendship of Cicero, who consulted him, as a Druid, on the subject of the treatise, *De Divinatione*. His name is said to be derived from the Celtic *dui*, “a god.”—*voluntatem—fidem—justitiam—temperantiam*. Note the *asyndeton*.

*nam verebatur*: “for he was afraid that by punishing him (literally by the punishment of him i.e. Dumnorix) he would wound the feelings of Divitiacus.” Explain the use of *ut* and *ne* after verbs of “fearing”: H. 498, III.; A. & G. 331, f.

*priusquam—conaretur*: “before he made any attempt.” For the mood: H. 520, II.; A. & G. 327. Explain the use of *priusquam*, with the indicative and with the subjunctive.

*quotidianis—remotis*: “dismissing the ordinary interpreters”: H. 431; A. & G. 255.

*eui—habebat*: “in whom he had unbounded confidence in all things.”

*simul dixerit*: “at the same time he reminds him of those things which had been said in the council of the Gauls in his (Caesar’s) presence about Dumnorix, and he points out what each one individually had said about

him (*i.e.* Dumnorix) before him (Caesar).”—*dicta sint*. H. 529, 1; A. & G. 334; so also *dixerit*. Distinguish *quisque* and *uterque*.

*petit*—*jubeant*: “he asks and advises that without wounding his (Divitiacus’s) feelings, either that he (*i.e.* Caesar) should decide (the matter) regarding him, after the cause had been heard, or that he should order the state to do so.” *Cognoscere causam*, is “to hear a cause.”—*civitatem*, scil., *Aeduorum*.

## CHAPTER XX.

*ne statuant*: “that he would not come to any decision too severe against his brother.”—*quid*; when is *quis* used for *aliquis*? H. 455.—*gravius*: H. 444, I; A. & G. 93, a. What mood would this statement be in direct narration? From *ne* to *avertentur* we have *oblique narrative*. Change this to *direct*: H. 523, III.; A. & G. 339.

*se scire*: scil., *dixit*.

*plus doloris*: for partitive genitive: H. 397, 3; A. & G. 216, a, 3.

*propterea quod*—*crevisset*: “because, at a time when he (Divitiacus) himself had very great influence at home and throughout the rest of Gaul, (while) he (Dumnorix) had very little on account of his youth, he (Dumnorix) had grown (in influence and power) through his (Divitiacus’s) means.” *gratia*: H. 416; A. & G. 245.—*plurimum, minimum*; strictly speaking, cognate accusatives: H. 304, I, 3; 371, II., (2); A. & G. 148, d; 240 a. With *crevisset*, scil., *opibus ac nervis*; *opes*, refers to resources of any kind; *nervi*, to power, strength, originally physical, then political.

*quibus*—*uteretur*: “wherefore he (Divitiacus) would employ these resources and this power not only to lessen his (Dumnorix’s) influence, but almost to his own destruction.” With *uteretur*, scil., *propterea quod* Foi mood: H. 524; A. & G. 336.

*quod*—*factum*: “but if any punishment too severe should befall him (Dumnorix) at the hands of Caesar, while he (Divitiacus) held such a degree of friendship with him (Caesar), no one would think that this had not been caused without his (Divitiacus’s) consent.”—*si quid accidisset*: a euphemism; cp. *ei τι πάθοι*.—*accideret*; distinguish in meaning *contigit*, *accidit*, *evenit*, *obvenit*: see Chapter XVIII.

*qua ex re*—*avertentur*: “wherefore, (he said) the result would be, that the eyes of all Gaul would be withdrawn from him.”—*Totius Galliae = omnium Gallorum*. What figure?

*peteret*: for the mood: H. 521, II., 2; A. & G. 325.

*faciat*: note the omission of *ut* after *orat* H. 499, 2; A. & G. 331, f. R.

*tanti*—*condonet*. “he points out that his (Divitiacus’s) influence with him (Caesar) was of such weight, that he (Caesar) would not remit the wrongs done to the state or his (Caesar’s) own personal annoyance in return for his (Divitiacus’s) good will and in accordance with his prayers.”—*tanti*: H. 404, 405; A. & G. 215, c; 252, a.—*condonare*, means originally “to remit some debt (acc.) in consideration for something” (dat.). Here it means, to remit a merited punishment, not to the guilty person, but reasonably to another, for the benefit of the guilty.

*fratrem adhibet* : "he has his brother as a witness."

*suspiciones* : "grounds for suspicion." Distinguish *suspicio*, *suspicio*.

*agat, loquatur* : H. 529, I ; 529, II. ; A. & G. 334, 342.

## CHAPTER XXI.

*hostes—consedisse* : "that the enemy had encamped at the base of the mountain." The Helvetii were now in the valley of the Liger (*Loire*), a short distance north of Bibracte (*Autun*).)

*qualis misit* . "he sent out scouts to ascertain the character of the hill, and the chance of ascending it on its various sides."—*èsset* : H. 529, I ; A. & G. 334.—*in circuitu* : literally, "in the going round," i.e., "on the other side." Caesar intended to make a flank movement so that he might get on the other side of the height and occupy the summit above the heads of the enemy.—*cognoscerent* ; for the mood : H. 497, I ; A. & G. 317.—*misiit, scil., exploratores*.

*facilem esse, scil., ascensum.*

*de—vigilia* : distinguish this from *tertia vigilia* ; see note on *de vigilia*, Chapter XII. What were the divisions of the night? See Chapter XII.

*legatum pro praetore* : "lieutenant, with the power of commander," or as we should say, "lieutenant-general."—*praefitor*, "the one who goes before," or "leads," was properly the "general," and was often used for consul in older times. The term *praetor* and *proconsul* were used indifferently in the Provinces. Labienus was next to Caesar in command.

*ducibus* : apposition to *his* : "with these (men as) guides.

*consilii* : H. 397, 3 : A. & G. 216, a, I.

*itinere* : H. 420, I, 3); A. & G. 258, g.

*quo* ; "as :" H. 451, 5.

*qui—habebatur* : "who was considered very well versed in military matters;" for the genitive : H. 399, I, 2 ; A. & G. 218, a.

## CHAPTER XXII.

*prima luce* : H. 440, 2, N. I ; A. & G. 193. It was now midsummer, and daybreak would be about 4 a.m.

*summus mons* : distinguish this from *supremus mons* : distinguish also *imus mons* and *infimus mons*.

*teneretur* : why subjunctive? H. 521, II., 2 ; A. & G. 325, 323.

*passibus* : for ablative : H. 417 ; A. & G. 247. What was the length of a Roman *passus*? See Note at the end of Chapter II.

*comperit* : distinguish *comperio*, I find out by inquiry ; *reperio*, I find out by search something concealed ; *invenio*, I come upon a thing suddenly or unexpectedly without any effort.

*equo—admisso* : abl. abs., "with his horse at full speed."

*vellet* : dependent clause in oblique narration : H. 524 ; A. & G. 336.

*Gallicis insignibus*: the devices on their shields and helmets. Here *Gallicis* = *Helvetiis*.

*dicit—subducit—instruit*: note the force of the presents.

*ut*: give the different uses of *ut*: see Vocabulary.

*committeret*: H. 498, I; A. & G. 331, a.

*visae essent*: H. 529, II.; A. & G. 342.

*proelio*: for ablative: H. 414, I; A. & G. 243.

*multo—die*: “at length when the day was far advanced;” abl. absolute.

*per exploratores*: distinguish this and *ab exploratoribus*: H. 415, I, IV.

*pro viso*: “as (something) seen.” Considius in the dim light of the morning had supposed the detachment of Labienus on the height a Gallic force.

*intervallo*: for ablative: H. 445, 9; A. & G. 200, b.

*millia*: H. 379; A. & G. 257.

### CHAPTER XXIII.

*postridie*: *posteri die*, *cotidie* are locatives merged in a dative; cp. in old Latin, *die quinti*, *die crastini*. Others take *posteri die* as ablative and compare *postea* and *antea*.—*diei* is a pleonasm. for the case, see H. 398, 5: A. & G. 214, g.

*quod—supererat*: “because two days in all remained.” When does *quod* take the indicative, and when the subjunctive? H. 516; A. & G. 321.—*biduum*, the quantity of the *i* is accounted for by the fact that *biduum* = *bidivum*, the second *i* is omitted, the first *i* is long by position.

*quum—oporteret*: “within which it was necessary that he should measure out corn to the army.”—*quum* marks the time at the end of which the corn had to be given out; and the time is determined by *biduum*: H. 521, II., A. & G. 320, 323.

*amplius—octodecim*: *millibus* is ablative of measure, not governed by *amplius*: H. 417, 2; A. & G. 247 c. For the length of a Roman *passus*, see at the end of Chapter II. What other word may be used for *octodecim*?

*rei—existimavit*: “he thought it necessary to provide for a supply of corn.” What cases may *providere* have? H. 385, I, II.; A. & G. 228.

*Bibracte*: what case? H. 380, II.; A. & G. 258, b.

*decurionis*: the cavalry of a Roman legion was divided into 10 *turmae*, each *turma* numbering generally 30; each of these *turmae* was divided into three *decuriae*, each *decuria* numbering 10. The commander of a *decuria* was called *decurio*.

*quod—existimarent*: for the mood: H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d.—*eo*: on this account: H. 416; A. & G. 245, R.

*pridie*: traces of a locative in *e* are found; as *cotidie*, *hodie*.

*quod—confiderent*: “because they trusted that they could not be prevented from obtaining a supply of corn.”—*re*: H. 414, 1; A. & G., 243. Conjugate *confidere*. What verbs are semi-deponent?

## CHAPTER XXIV.

*id—advertisit*: the usual construction with *animum advertere* “to notice,” is *ad aliquam rem*. The two accusatives with *advertere*, *animum* and a pronoun *id*, *hoc*, *illud*, though common in Sallust and Caesar is unusual in other classic Latin writers. Cicero used the form *animadvertere* which Caesar also sometimes uses. *Animum* is governed by the verb, and *il*, by the prep. *ad*: H. 376; A. & G. 239, b. See also Note, C. xix.

*subducit*: “he leads up close”; cp. *subsequor*.

*qui sustineret*: “to keep in check”: for the subjunctive: H. 497, 1; A. & G. 317. The battle was fought to the west of Bibracte.

*interim—medio*: “meanwhile, half way up the hill”; *interim*, implying a short duration; *interea*, “meanwhile” signifying a longer period occupied.—*triplicem aciem*: a legion in Caesar's time numbered 6,000 men, and consisted of 10 cohorts. Four of these cohorts formed the first line; then three behind the first four; then three behind the first three. Each cohort is supposed to have been separated from the other by an interval equal to the length of the cohort.

*legionum—veteranarum*: for the genitive: H. 396 V.; A. & G. 215. The regular time of service for foot soldiers was twenty years; for cavalrymen, *ten*. They were then discharged (*emeriti*), or they re-enlisted and served not with the other soldiers, but under their own flag. They were then called *veterani*, *vezillarii*, *subsignani*, or *evocati*.

*ita—collocaret*: “in such a way that he posted above himself on the top of the ridge the two legions which he had very lately enrolled in further Gaul, and all the auxiliary troops.”—*supra se*; Caesar was with the four legions.—*summo*: H. 440.2, N. 1.2; A. & G. 193—*quas*; see Note on *duasque conscribit*.—Chapter X. Distinguish *auxilium* and *auxilia* in meaning. Here *auxilia* were troops that were not Italian.

*hominibus—compleri*: “to be manned.”

*interea*: see note on *interim*, above.

*sarcinae*, the individual baggage of a Roman soldier consisted of provisions for fifteen days (*cibaria*), utensils (*utensilia*), a saw (*serra*), a basket (*fiscus*) a hook (*falx*), a thong (*lorum*), a chain (*catena*), a pot, and stakes (*valli*); the whole amounting to sixty pounds in weight: *impedimenti*, the general baggage of the legion.

*confertissima—acie*. .this ablative seems to be adverbial of manner after *successerunt*: “after repulsing our cavalry, and forming their phalanx, they advanced in very close order to our van.”—*acie*: H. 419, III.; A. & G. 248.—*phalange*, any compact body of men went by the name of *phalanx*. The Helvetii probably locked their shields together. The Helvetian was quite distinct from the Macedonian *phalanx*.

## CHAPTER XXV.

*suo, scil., equo remoto*: this probably means that Caesar and all his staff officers dismounted to encourage the soldiers of the legion. There is no reason, however, to suppose that the cavalry dismounted. Plutarch mentions that Caesar, in sending his horse away, gave orders that it should be brought back for the pursuit, after the enemy were routed.

*aequato—periculo*: “the danger of all being made equal”; abl. abs.: H. 431; A. & G. 255.

*proelium commisit*: “he commenced the battle.” cp. *μάχην συνάπτειν* with *proelium committere*.

*ea disjecta, scil., phalange*: “when that close band was dislodged.” abl. abs.: H. 431; A. & G. 255.

*gladiis distinctis*: “with drawn swords.”

*Gallis—impedimento*: “it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in the way of their fighting;” for the two datives: H. 390.1; A. & G. 233.1.

*quod—colligatis*: “that when several of their shields were pierced and pinned together by one blow of the javelins, they were neither able to pull out (the javelin), nor, in consequence of their left hand being hampered in its movement, to fight with sufficient advantage, since the iron point (of the javelin) had been bent (in the shield).” Decline *plus*.

*scutis—colligatis*: for the abl. abs., H. 431; A. & G. 255 Distinguish *scutum*, the oblong shield, about four feet long and two and a half broad, made of wood, pinned together with little plates of iron, and the whole covered with bull’s hide, from *clipeus*, a round shield of inferior size, and generally of metal.—*se inflexisset*: H. 517; A. & G. 326.—*sinistra*. The shield was carried on the left arm.—*quod poterant*. When does *quod* take indicative and when the subjunctive? H. 516, I., II., A. & G. 321, 341. d.

*multi—pugnari*. “so that many, after tossing their arms to and fro, chose to drop their shields and fight unprotected.”—*braccio iactato*, i.e., in endeavouring to pull out the javelin.—*nudo*: exposed to the missiles of the enemy.

*vulneribus—cooperunt*: “spent with wounds they began both to retreat, and, because the mountain was about a mile distant, to withdraw to it.” *Mille* here a noun depending on *circiter*: H. 178, 379; A. & G. 94, e. N.; 257.

*capto—claudebant*: “when the mountain had been reached, and when our men were following close behind, the Boii and Tulingi, who, amounting to nearly fifteen thousand men, closed the enemies’ line of march.” With *capere montem*; cp. *portus capere*.—*millibus*. H. 420, A. & G. 248.—*agmen claudebant*, i.e., were bringing up the rear.

*novissimis—erant*: “were a defence to the rear;” for the two datives. H. 390; A. & G. 233.—*in itinere*, “on the march.”—*latere aperto*: “on the unexposed flank;” probably the right side, as the soldiers carried their shields on the left.

*Romani—exciperet*: “the Romans changed their front and advanced in two divisions; the first and second line in such a way that they opposed

(the Helvetii) conquered and dislodged ; the third line (in such a way) that they kept in check (the Boii and Tulingi) coming up."—*Conversa signa* : distinguish *signa inferre, convertere, efferre, referre, inferre, a signis discedere, collatis signis configere, signis infestis ire aut incedere*. The idea here is that the first and second line of cohorts stood their ground to oppose the men dislodged (*summotis*) ; the third changed their position so as to meet the enemy who attacked their flank. The cohorts now presented two fronts to the enemy.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

*ancipiti—pugnatum* : "in a two-fold engagement, long and fiercely the conflict continued."—*anceps*, because the Romans were fighting in both parts. Derive *anceps*.—*pugnatum est* : H. 301 ; A. & G. 146 c.—*possent*, scil. *Helvetii, Boii, Tulingi*.

*alteri—contulerunt* : "some retreated to the mountain as they did in the beginning of the battle ; others fell back in order to the baggage and their waggons" ; *alteri*, the Helvetii ; *alteri*, the Boii and Tulingi. Distinguish *alter* and *alius*.

*quum—potuit* : "though the battle lasted from the seventh hour (of the day) to evening, no one was able to see the back of a foe."—*quum* : H. 515, III.; A. & G. 326.—*septima hora* : one o'clock. The day from sunrise to sunset was divided by the Romans into twelve parts of equal length —*aversum hostem*. Caesar often praises the valour of the enemies of the Romans.

*ad—pugnatum* : "to a late hour of the night, too, the battle continued at the baggage."

*propterea—conjiciebant* : "because they had placed the waggons as a rampart against (our men), and (thus) from a vantage ground kept throwing their javelins against our men (who were) coming up."—*propterea quod*: see Note, Chapter I.—*e—superiore*. The average length of the cast of a javelin was twenty-five yards. It would gain great impetus from even so small an elevation as the height of the carts.

*nonnulli*: distinguish this from *nulli non*. So also distinguish *nonnunquam, nunquam non ; nonnusquam, nusquam non*.

*mataras—subjiciebant* : "kept hurling their spears and light javelins from beneath." i.e. from underneath and through the spokes of the wheels.—*matara* (Livy uses the form *materisj*) a Gallic spear, derived from Celtic *medrydd*, "to aim at a mark ;" *tragula*, a light javelin thrown by means of a leather thong.—*quum—esset* : "after fighting a long time ;" literally, "when the battle has been fought for a long time ;" for subjunctive : H. 521, II., 2 ; A. & G. 323.

*potiti sunt* : what cases does *potior* govern? H. 410, V., 3 ; 421 : A. G. 223, a ; 249.—*tota nocte* : H. 379, I; A. & G. 256, b.

*nullam—intermisso* : "during no part of the night their march being interrupted." For accusative: H. 379 ; A. & G. 256. This must mean the night after the battle.

*triluum—morati* : "having delayed for the space of three days :" with

*triduum, scil., spatium.* The fact that the Romans delayed so long after the battle shows that it must have cost them dearly.

*ne—juarent:* “(telling them) not to aid them with corn or with any other thing.” For the subjunctive: H. 523, III.; A. & G. 339. What would the mood be in direct discourse?

*qui—habitum:* “and if they (*i.e.* Lingones) should aid them (*i.e.* the Helvetii), (he said) that he would regard them in the same light as (he regarded) the Helvetii.” The relative refers to *Lingonas*, and is the subject and (*eos*) the object of *juvissent*, *i.e.* *eos* is omitted.—*quo, scil., haberet.*

## CHAPTER XXVII.

*qui—paruerunt:* “and when these met him on his march and threw themselves at his feet, and addressing him in the manner of suppliants in tears begged for peace, and when he ordered them to await his arrival in the same place in which they were, they obeyed.” Distinguish *eum convenit; ei convenit.*—*qui* refers to ambassadors; *eas*, to the main body of the Helvetii, by a rather loose construction.—*essent:* why subjunctive? H. 529, II.; A. & G. 342.

*obsides—poposcit:* “he demanded (from them) hostages, arms and (such) fugitive slaves as had fled for protection to him.”—*servos qui=(tales) servos qui:* H. 503, I.; A. & G. 341, d.

*dum—conferuntur:* “while these were being hunted up and collected.” Explain the uses of *dum*: H. 519; A. & G. 276, e.—*ea*, neut. pl., referring to *obsides, arma, servi*: H. 445, 3, N. 1; 439, 2, N.; A. & G. 195, 181, b.—*nocte intermissa:* the hostages, arms and slaves were not all collected in one day; a night elapsed, and at the beginning of this night, those six thousand mentioned escaped to avoid surrender.

*pagi:* see Note, Chapter XII.—*Verbigenus:* this canton at home dwelt north of the *pagus Tugurinus*, and occupied the modern district of northern Switzerland.

*perterriti:* explain the gender of this word: H. 438, 6; A. & G. 187, d.—*ne;* explain the use of *ut* and *ne* after verbs of fearing: H. 498, III. N. 1; A. & G. 331, f.

*quod—existimarent:* “because, though the number of those surrendering was so great, they thought that either their flight could be kept secret or would be altogether unnoticed.”—*quod—existimarent;* for subjunctive: H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d.—*in multitudine:* this would be regularly expressed by the abl. absol. of the present part. of *esse*, if such a present part. existed.—*dedititorum:* according to Caesar *dedititii* are those who have taken up arms against the Roman people, and, being vanquished, have surrendered (*se dediderunt*).

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

*rescīt:* “found this out”; *rescio* is to find out a thing concealed, on contrary to expectation.

*quorum:* the relative precedes the antecedent *his*

*his—imperavit:* “he ordered these to hunt after them and bring them

oack, if they wished to be held guiltless."—*conquirerent*: H. 498, 1; A. & G. 331, a.—*sibi*: "in his sight," i.e. in the sight of Caesar: H. 384, 4, N. 3; A. & G. 235.—*reductos—habuit*: "he regarded those brought back in the light of enemies;" a euphemistic way of saying that they would all be put to the sword.

*unde=e quibus.*

*reverti*: see Note, Chapter VIII.

*domi*: a locative: H. 426, 2; A. & G. 258, d. Give other examples of locatives in Latin. Decline *domus*.—*quo*: H. 420; A. & G. 248.—*tolerarent*: H. 503, 1; A. & G. 320, a.—*facerent*: "furnish."—*incendierant*: why indicative?

*quod noluit*: the indicative as indicating the speaker's reason: H. 516; A. & G. 333.

*ne—essent*: "lest on account of the fertility of the land, the Germans who dwell across the Rhine, should cross from their own territory into that of the Helvetii, and become neighbours to the Province of Gaul and to the Allobroges."—*transirent*: H. 497 II.; A. & G. 317. Caesar here alludes to the great western plain of Switzerland. The Helvetii had been reduced to about one-third of what they were before. There was a large amount of land unoccupied, and it is reasonable to suppose that the Germans settled in Helvetia in great numbers.

*Boios—concessit*: "(Caesar) yielded this request at the instigation of the Aedui, that they (i.e. the Aedui) should allow the Boii to settle in their territories, because they (i.e. the Boii) were noted for their pre-eminent valour."—*Aeduis potentibus*: abl. abs. H. 419, III.; A. & G. 255. The phrase *ut—collocarent*, depends on the ablative absolute: *Aeduis—potentibus—quibus=eis*: *quos=eos*: H. 453: A. & G. 180, f.—*postea*: after the rebellion of Vercingetorix, told in Book VII.—*atque*: "as:" H. 554.I.2, IV.; A. & G. 156, a.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

*tabulae—sunt*: "lists were found." Distinguish *reperio*, "to find," after search has been made; *invenio*, to suddenly "come on" a thing without searching for it.

*literis—confectae*: "written in Greek characters." No Gallic alphabet is known. The Gauls probably learned the mode of writing from the Greeks of Massilia, a colony established by the Phocaeans, B.C. 600. Strabo mentions that the Gallic contracts were made out in Greek.—*quibus in tabulis*; for the repetition of the relative, see Note, Chapter vi.: H. 445. 8; A. & G. 200, a.

*ratio—est*: "a computation is made."—*qui*: interrogative: H. 188, II. 1; A. & G. 104, a.—*domo—exisset*: H. 529.1; A. & G. 324; for the latter, see H. 503.1; A. & G. 320, a.

*separatim*: "in separate lists."

*quarum—summa*: "the total of all these various lists was."—*capitum Helvetiorum=Helvetiorum*, by synecdoche. We still say "head" of cattle. The sum total was 368,000; the number bearing arms 92,000; adding the

number of those who left for home, 11,000 to the 32,000 of the Boii who were spared, we find that 226,000 of the Helvetii perished in this four months' campaign.

*qui—possent* : H. 503.1 ; A. & G. 320 a.

*censu—habito* : "after the enumeration was held ;" abl. abs.

### CHAPTER XXX.

*totius—Galliae* : "of almost all the whole of Gaul." By *Gallia*, the land of the *Galli* in a restricted sense is meant.

*gratulatum* : for the construction of the supine in *-um* : H. 546 ; A. & G. 302.

*intelligere*, scil., *dixerunt* : for oblique narrative : see H. 523, 524 ; A. & G. 336 : "they said that they were aware that though he, (Caesar), in return for the former injuries done to the Roman people by the Helvetii, had inflicted punishment on the latter in war, this still had happened no less to the advantage of the land of Gaul than to that of the Roman people." *Helvetiorum—Populi* : the former is the subjunctive, the latter, the objective genitive.

*propterea—haberent* : "because, when their affairs were most prosperous, the Helvetii had left their homes with this design, (namely), to carry on war against all Gaul, to become possessed of absolute power, to choose for settlement from a great abundance (of places) such a place as they would consider the most favourable and the most fruitful, and to hold the remaining states in subjection to them."—*eo* explained by the compound clause introduced by *uti*, which is in apposition to it.—*imperio* : what two meanings and what two constructions has *potior*? See note, Chapter XXVI.

*petierunt—liceret* : "they asked that they would be permitted to appoint for a fixed day a meeting of all the Gauls, and to do this with the consent of Caesar."—*sibi* : why would *eis* be wrong?—*totius—Galliae = omnium Gallorum*.—*voluntate* : they wished to show that there was nothing bad intended by their assembling.

*habere* : H. 523.1, N.; A. & G. 330, e. What is the usual difference between *consilium* and *concilium*? See note, Chapter XVIII.

*et—sanxerunt* : "and they agreed among themselves by an oath that no one except (those) to whom this duty was entrusted by their general consent should divulge (what had been done at the council)."—*jurejurando* : decline this word.—*mandatum esset* : plupf. subj. of indirect for fut. pref. of direct discourse: H. 524 ; A. & G. 336.

### CHAPTER XXXI.

*ad Caesarem* : "to Caesar." Explain the force of *ad*.

*reverterunt* : conjugate the verb. See note, Chapter VIII.

*uti—liceret* : "that they would be allowed by themselves to treat with him with reference to the safety of themselves and of all."—*secreto* : derive the word.—*liceret* : H. 538.1 (2) : A. & G. 270, a.

*sese—projecerunt*: “they all in tears threw themselves at the feet of Caesar.”—*Caesari=Cuesaris*.

*non-impetrarent*:—“(they said) that they were as earnestly and as eagerly anxious for this, (namely), that those things which they said should not be told as they were, that they would obtain these things which they desired.”—*id.* in apposition to the clause beginning with *ne—enuntiarentur*.

*Galliae-duas*: “throughout the whole of Gaul there were two parties;” here *Gallia* means *Celtica*.

*hi—arcesserentur*: “while they were eagerly striving for supremacy for many years among themselves, it had come to pass that the Germans were invited by the Arverni and the Sequani for pay (to aid them against the Aedui).”—*mercede*: H. 422; A. & G. 252.—*arcesserentur*: H. 498, II., N., 2, and 524; A. & G. 332, e, and 336. The form is *arcesso*, not *arcerso*: *ar* = *ad*, as in *arvena = advena*; *arvocatus = advocatus*; and as we have *capesso* from *capio*, so we have *cesso* from root *CI* in *ciere*.

*horum—plures*: “at first about fifteen thousand of them had crossed the Rhine. After these savage and barbarous men had grown fond of the lands, and manner of living, and abundance of the Gauls, a greater number had been brought over.” Decline *millia*.—*transisse*: what prepositions added to intransitive verbs of motion render these verbs transitive?—*copias*: is this form usual in the sense here given?—*adamassent*: note the intensive force of *ad*.

*cum—amisisse*: “with these the Aedui and their dependants repeatedly had engaged in battle; being repulsed they had met with great loss; they had lost all their nobles, all their senators, all their cavalry.”—*clientes*: dependants in the tributary states; root *CLU*, “to hear,” hence “to obey;” cp. *audire* in phrase *dicto audire*.—*calamitatem*; perhaps from *CAD*, “to fall;” hence, *calamitas=cadamitas*.

*quibus—potuissent*: “by these battles and losses their power having been broken, though they held formerly, both by their own valour and by the kind and friendly relations with the Roman people, the greatest power in Gaul.”—*fractos, scil. se.—hospites*, referring to the fact that friendship had existed between the Romans and the Aedui as nations.

*et—repetituros*: “and by an oath he binds the people of the state that they would not demand the hostages they had given;” *sese*, referring to *cives*, implied in *civitatem*.—*quo minus—sub.*: “from being under:” H. 497, II., 2; A. & G. 317, b. In cases like the present, *quo minus* is more polite than *quin*.

*unum—daret*: “that he was the only one of the whole state of the Aedui, who could not be influenced to take the oath, or to give his children as hostages.”—*potuerit*, in direct discourse, the subjunctive would be used: H. 503, II., 1; A. & G. 320, b.—*ut juraret*: H. 498, II.; A. & G. 331, e.—*Romam*: H. 380, II.; A. & G. 258, b.—*postulatum*, used as a law term, “to claim,” as a legal right.

*sed—accidisse*: “but a worse fate had befallen the Sequani than the conquered Aedui.” *Ariovistus*, derived by some from *aar*, “an eagle,” and *vistus* a Latinized form of *first=horst*, “a nest;” the word then means *eyry*: but see prop. names.

*paucis—ante*: expresses this in various forms.

*futurum—pellerentur*: “the result would be within a few years, that all would be driven out of the land of Gaul;” the subject is the clause beginning with *uti*.—*paucis annis*: express this in another way : H. 429 ; A. & G. 256.

*neque—comparandam*: Caesar means that Gaul was superior to Germany both in fertility and in cultivation ; “the soil of Gaul was too good to be compared with that of Germany.”

*ut—semel*: “when once for all.” Distinguish *simul*, “once,” “at once,” and *semel* which brings out the idea of completeness. *Magetobia*, from *maith*, Celtic for Latin *magnus*, Greek *μέγας*; and *brig* or *big*, “a fell.” It is not known where this place was.—*exempla cruciatusque*: hendiadys.

*hominum*: distinguish in meaning, *homo* and *vir* ; *iratus*, *iracundus*.

*nisi—experiuntur*: “unless, indeed, they could get some help from Caesar and the Roman people, all the Gauls would have to do what the Helvetii had done, (namely), to leave home, to seek out another place of abode, another habitation, apart from the Germans, to meet and endure whatever fortune might befall them.”—*auxilii* : H. 397, 3 ; A. & G. 216, a. 3.—*idem*, subject of *faciendum esse* explained by the *ut* clause: H. 501, III.; A. & G. 332, f.

*haec—sumat*: “if these things were told Ariovistus, he (Divitiacus) had no doubt but that he (Ariovistus) would inflict the severest punishment on all the hostages that were in his hands.”—*dubitare*, scil., se. Distinguish *poenas dare*, *poenas sumere*.

*vel—victoria* : described in Chapters XXIV.-XXVII.

## CHAPTER XXXII.

*magno—fletu* : H. 419, II.; A. & G. 248, R.

*animadvertisit* : see Note, Chapter XXIV. —*unos*, “alone.”—*facerent* : H. 524 ; A. & G. 336.

*sed—intueri*: “but with sullen faces, with heads bowed down, they gazed on the ground.” Distinguish *tristis*, “of sad countenance ;” *maestus*, “sad at heart.”

*respondere* : H. 536, 1 ; A. & G. 275.

*cum—posset* : “when he repeatedly asked them and was not able to extort any reply at all.”—*quaereret* : H. 521, II., 2 ; A. & G. 325.

*hoc—queri* : “on this account the lot of the Sequani was more wretched and sadder compared with (the lot) of the others, because not even alone in secret did they dare to lament.”—*hoc* : abl. of difference or of cause.—*prae*, scil., *fortuna*.

*propterea—daretur* : “because to the others the opportunity of escape, at any rate, was granted.”—*reliquis*, scil., *Gallis*.

## CHAPTER XXXIII.

*his—cognitis*: ablative absolute.

*et—putaret*: “and next to these things, (which he had heard), many considerations influenced him why he should conclude that this matter ought to be considered and undertaken by him.”—*putaret*: H. 503, 1; A. & G. 320, a.

*quod—videbat*: the indicative, as giving Caesar’s own reason.

*quod—arbitrabatur*: “and while the empire of the Roman people was so great, he thought this the basest thing to himself and the state.” The preposition *in* is often used as a substitute for the ablative absolute, as the participle of *sum* does not exist.—*quod = et id*.

*paulatim—videbat*: “moreover, for the Germans to become accustomed to cross the Rhine, and for a great number of them to come into Gaul, he saw that this was fraught with danger to the Roman people.” The first two clauses are subjects of *esse* understood.

*sibi—temperatueros*: give the different meanings and constructions of *tempero*.—*ante*, referring to the events of 101 B.C. and 102 B.C.

*praesertim—divideret*: “especially since the Rhine only separated the Sequani from our province.”—*divideret*: H. 517; A. & G. 326.

*ipse—sumerat*: “moreover Ariovistus had put on such airs, (and) assumed so proud a bearing.”—*ferendus non*: “unbearable.”

## CHAPTER XXXIV

*quamobrem—deligeret*: “wherefore he (Caesar) resolved to send envoys to Ariovistus to ask him (Ariovistus) to name some spot midway between both in which they might hold a conference.”—*ut—mitteret*: subject of *placuit*: H. 501, I. 1; A. & G. 332, a.—*qui postularent = ut ei postularent*: H. 497, I.; A. & G. 317.—*medium utriusque*: H. 399, I. 3, note 2; A. & G. 218, d. So we find *medius* with genitive in Caesar: *De Bell. Gall.* 4, 19: *medium fere regionum earum*: “about the middle of that district.”

*velle—agere*: “(stating) that he wished to discuss with him a question affecting the state and matters of the highest importance to both of them.”

*ei legationi = eis legislati*: the abstract noun is put here for the concrete: see note B. I., chapter VII.

*si—oportere*: “if he himself (Ariovistus) should want anything of Caesar, (he said) that he (Ariovistus) would have come to him (Caesar): if he (Caesar) wanted anything of him (Ariovistus), he (Caesar) ought to come to him (Ariovistus).” This sentence well illustrates the exactness of the Latin demonstratives and reflexives, an exactness that we do not possess in English. The demonstratives *eum*, *ille*, *illum*, refer to Caesar: while the reflexives, *ipse*, *sese*, *se*, to Ariovistus. The first *quid* is subject of *opus esset*, the second as well as *se* is governed by *poscere* to be supplied with *velit*: H. 374; A. & G. 239, c. What is the usual construction of *opus est*? H. 414, IV. N. 4; A. & G. 243, e.

*praetere—posse*: “besides, he neither dared to come into those parts of

Gaul which Caesar occupied without an army, nor could he muster an army in one place without a large commissariat and much trouble besides." There is implied here that Arioistus was some distance from Caesar, probably between the Rhine and the Vosges. We have here read *emolumento* which sometimes means "gain," "profit," derived from grinding corn : (*e*, prep.; *mola*, "a mill," hence, "the corn" the miller gets for grinding wheat). It may also express the toil and trouble given in compensation for gain. Some recognizing the difficulty read *emolumento* for *moliri* "to toil." —*audere* : what are semi-deponent verbs? Give a list of them.—*contrahere* : often used in this sense: Caesar: *De Bell. Gall.* 5, 22: *navibus circiter octo-ginta onerariis coactis contractisque*.

*sibi—essel*: "moreover it seemed a strange thing to him, what business at all either Caesar or the Roman people had in his part of Gaul which he had won by conquest."—*quid—negotii*: partitive genitive: H. 397, 3; A. & G. 216, a. 1. Explain the subjunctives in the dependent clauses from *si quid* to end of the chapter: H. 524; A. & G. 341, a.

### CHAPTER XXXV.

*mandatis*: "instruction"; *mandatum* is properly what one person instructs another to do for him gratuitously, and is technically what an agent does for another. Hence a message sent by messengers.

*quoniam—postularet*: "seeing that, though treated with such kindness by himself and the Roman people, since in his (Caesar's) consulship he had received the title of king and friend at the hands of the Senate, he was showing such gratitude to him and the Roman people that when invited to come to a conference he objected, and did not consider himself under obligation to discuss and investigate a matter of common interest, these are the demands which he made."—*in suo consulatu*: Caesar was consul 59 B.C.—*rex—amicus*: though the Romans professed friendship for Arioistus after the battle of Magetobria, fearing possibly an alliance between him and the Helvetii, they still were constantly professing regard for the Aedui and championed their cause against Arioistus.—*gratiam referret*: distinguish *gratiam habere*, "to feel thankful"; *gratiam reffere*, "to return a kindness"; *gratiam agere*, "to express thanks in words"; *gratiam facere*, "to do a favor."

*ne—transduceret*: "that he would not any more lead any body of men across the Rhine into Gaul."—*quam=aliquam*: note that *quis=aliquis* after *si, nisi, num, ne, quo, quanto*: H. 455, I.; A. & G. 105, d.

*voluntate ejus*: "with his consent"; *ejus* refers to Arioistus. Had *sua voluntate* been used, *sua* would have referred to Caesar.

*injuria*: "wrongfully." For the subjunctives *transduceret*, *redderet*, *permitteret*, *lascisseret*, *inferret*: H. 523, III.; A. & G. 339. What would the mood be in direct narration?

*si—futuram*: expressed in direct narration this would be *si id ita feceris, mihi populoque Romano perpetua gratia atque amicitia tecum erit*. Give rules for change of pronouns when changing from indirect to direct narrative.

*si—impetraret — non neglectum (esse) : in direct narrative this would be si non impetrabo—non negligam.*

*censuisset : censere, placere, were technical words applied to resolutions of the Senate.*

*Marco Messala Marco Pisone consulibus : B.C. 61.*

*uti defenderet : "that, whoever held Gaul as a province, should defend the Aedui and the other allies of the Roman people as far as he was able to do so in the interest of the state."—uti=ut.—quod=quantum.*

*commodo : an ablative of manner as in Caesar, De Bell. Gall. 5, 46 : scribit Labieno si rei publicae commodo facere posset cum legione ad fines Nerviorum veniat: So. 6, 33: II. 419, III. Note 2; A. & G. 248, R.—reipublicae : objective genitive : H. 396, III.; A. & G. 217.*

*facere=defendere : facere, like do in English and ποιέω in Greek, is often used as a substitute for other verbs.*

*sese : repeated because of the long clause, quod—defenderet, intervening between the subject and infinitive.*

*Aeduorum injurias : "wrongs done to the Aedui" : objective genitive. What would the subjective genitive be in English?*

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

*jus—imperarent : "the rule of war was that those who gained a victory should rule those whom they had conquered just as they wished." The tense of respondit affects that of viciissent. If respondit were present what would viciissent be?—villent : subjunctive for what two reasons?*

*item—consuesse : "(and) that the Roman people, in particular, had been accustomed to rule the conquered, not according to the dictation of another, but according to their (the Roman people's) own wish."—victis : H. 441; A. & G. 188.*

*si—impediri : "if he did not give any order to the Roman people as to how they should exercise their rights, he ought not to be hampered by the Roman people in exercising his rights."—praescriberet : note the force of the imperfect, implying from time to time.—suo—suo : the first refers to the Roman people, the second to Ariovistus.*

*Aeduos—factos : "(that) the Aedui had been made to pay the war tax by him, since they had tried their fortunes in war, had met him in battle and been beaten."—armis congressi, scil. secum.—stipendiarios : subject to pay the stipendum, a fixed sum (*vectigal certum*), an amount payable whether there was a crop or not.*

*magnam—saceret : note the emphatic position of magnam : H. 561, I.; A. & G. ; 344, I.—qui, causal=quippe qui : "since he" : H. 517; A. & G. 320, e.—Note that suo refers to Caesar : sibi to Ariovistus : H. 449; A. & G. 196.—deteriora : "less profitable" : *deterior*, "worse," "inferior to" something good, a descending, just as *melior* is an ascending comparative of *bonus* : *pior* worse than something bad (*malus*).—injuria : "without a just cause" : H. 419, III. N. 2; A. & G. 248, R.*

*si—penderent : "if they continued to adhere to the terms which they had agreed upon and if they continued to pay yearly the tax."—convenisset : not*

from *convenio*, but from the impersonal *convenit*.—Distinguish *pendeo* and *pendo* in meaning. The use of *pendo* points to the custom of money being paid originally by weight in uncoined metal : cp. Greek *τάλαντον*: English, *pound*.

*longe—abfuturum*: “that the title of brothers of the Roman people would be of little avail to them,” literally, “would be a long way off for them.” Some have here *his*; others *iis*, which is perhaps the better reading, as including all those mentioned before. In *his* or *iis* we have a dative : cp. Tibullus, I, 5, 2 : *at mihi nunc longe gloria abest*; Vergil’s Aen. 12, 52 : *longe illi dea mater erit*.

*quod—contendisse*: “as far as Caesar’s threat was concerned that he would not overlook the wrongs done to the Aedui (he, i.e. Ariovistus, would simply say) that no one had ever fought with him without bringing destruction upon himself.”—*quod* : H. 516, II., 2, N.; A. & G. 333, a.—*sibi* refers to Ariovistus : *se*, to Caesar. So again we have confusion in *secum* referring to Ariovistus ; *sua* to the person implied in *neminem*.

*quum—possent*: “let him come on whenever he wished ; he would find out what the Germans, hitherto invincible, well drilled in the use of arms, could do in valorous deeds, who, for the last fourteen years, had never been under a roof.” What mood would *congregaretur* be in direct narrative?—*intellecturum scil. dixit Caesarem esse*.—*inter annos quatuordecim* in what other way may this be expressed? In expressions of time *inter* expresses a *continuous* space, “all through the space of fourteen years,” while *intra* limits the space, i.e. fixes a beginning and an end. An excellent exercise for the student will be to translate this chapter into direct narrative ; see H. 522-531 ; A. & G. 336-342.

### CHAPTER XXXVII.

*haec eodem tempore—et* ; the two events are expressed co-ordinately, literally, “this message at the same time was reported to Caesar and envoys from the Aedui and Treviri came.” In English, we should make the former statement subordinate and say, “while this message was being reported to Caesar, envoys, &c.”

*Aedui questum* : scil. *veniebant* : H. 546 ; A. & G. 302.

*transportati essent*, scil. *ab Ariovisto* : H. 528, I.; A. & G. 340.

*popularentur* ; H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d.

*ne—datis* : “not even by the giving of hostages :” abl. abs.

*Treviri*, scil. *veniebant questum*.

*ne—minus facile resisti* : scil. *illi* : “(fearing) that if the new force of the Suevi **should** be added to the old forces of Ariovistus they would be irresistible.” Before *ne* scil. *metuens*.—*resisti* : impersonal ; scil. *illis*: “resistance could be made less easily.” H. 301, I.; A. & G. 146, c. There is here a *littera*.

*magnis itineribus* : See note on B. I., chapter x.

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

*tridui scil, spatii=trium dierum*: H. 396, V. N. 1; A. & G. 215, b.  
*triduum* is a shortened form of *tridivum*: cp. *biduum=bidivum*.

*id—existimabat*: “Caesar thought that he should take especial care that this thing should not happen.” What is the antecedent of *id*? Compare *magno opere*. Explain the case of *sibi*. Distinguish *caveo te, caveo tibi*: H. 385, II., 1; A. & G. 227, c.

*idque—facultatem*: “and this (town) was so strong naturally by the character of the ground it occupied that it afforded an excellent means for protracting the war.” The imperfect *muniebatur* denotes a permanent condition: cp. Cic. Verr. 2, 2: *urbem—Syracusas quae—loci natura terra ac mari claudebatur*.

*Alduasdubis*: properly the “river of the black rocks.” The Dubis at Vesontio (the *Doubs* at *Besançon*) forms a sort of peninsula which is occupied by a town, now called *La Ville*. It is said that many Roman remains are at *Besançon*.

*amplius pedum sexcentorum*: for the descriptive genitive: H. 396, V.; A. & G. 215, b. Note that *amplius, minus, mijus* have no influence on the construction: H. 417, I., Note 2; A. & G. 247, c.: cp. the use of *ελασσον, πλειον* in Greek: ἀπέχει πλειον σταδίους δέκα. As the actual distance is 1,500 Roman feet, D’Anville proposes to read MD. instead of DC. in MSS.

*intermittit*: “breaks off”: “is interrupted.”

*mons—allitudine*: “a hill of great height fills up the space between”: for the ablative of description: H. 419, II.; A. & G. 251.

*radices*: accusative after *contingant*.—*hunc. scil, montem.—arcem*: H. 373; 373, I.; A. & G. 239, a. Some remains of the wall and ancient amphitheatre are still to be seen at *Besançon*.

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

*dum—moratur, scil, Caesar*: H. 467, III., 4; A. & G. 276, e.

*ex—nostrorum, scil. militum*; “from enquiries made by our men”: subjective genitive.

*qui—praedicabant*: explain the ablatives in this clause: H. 419, II.; A. & G. 251. What difference in meaning between the genitive and ablative of characteristic? H. 419, III. 2.; A. & G. 257. a. The Germans are often spoken of by the Roman historians as men of large frame.

*aciem oculorum*: “their keen glance;” trace the different meanings of *acies* to the signification of the root of the word.

*timor*: “panic;” a cowardly fear of present, as *metus* is a “well grounded fear” of impending evil.

*mentes animosque*: “their minds and spirits.”

*tribunis militum*: see Introduction, p xv.—*praefectis*: these were not the *praefecti equitum*, but the *praefecti sociorum*, who held the same position among the auxiliary troops as the *tribuni militum* did among the regular Roman soldiers. These probably were gentlemanly idlers or relatives of Cæsars creditors, or others whose favour he desired to court.

*quorum—bceret*: “of these, one alleging one cause, another another, which, they said, made it indispensable for them to depart, asked that it might be left them to quit their posts with his consent.” For the construction of *alius alia causa illata*: II. 459, I., 563; A. & G. 203, c., 344, g.—*diceret*: for mood: see H. 528, I.; A. & G. 341, d. With *discedere*, scil. *ab ordinibus*.

*nonnulli*: distinguish *nonnulli*, *nulli non*; *nonnunquam*, *nunquam non*; *nonnusquam*, *nusquam non*.

*vultum fingere*: “to put on a cheerful look,” i.e., to control their expression of fear. Note the use of imperfects throughout this passage. Explain fully their force.

*abdicti*: “hiding themselves”: H. 465; A. & G. 111, b, N. 1.

*cum* join this with *commune*: “they kept mourning over the danger to which they as well as their friends were exposed.” Distinguish *miseror*, “to express pity” in words and governing the accusative: *misereor*, “to feel pity,” governing the ger.itive.

*vulgo—obsignabantur*: “all among the men throughout the whole camp wills were being sealed.”—*vulgo* does not refer to place like *passim*. Why is *totis castris* used without a preposition? H. 425, II., 2; A. & G. 258, f. *testamenta*: the will of a soldier just about to engage was said to be made in *procinctu*, when in camp, while he was girding himself or preparing for battle. In the presence of his fellow soldiers he named his heir (*nuncupavit*). The *obsignatio* was the sealing of the will with the seal of witnesses. The description of Caesar has in it a touch of the ludicrous.

*qui—dicebant*: “those men of the latter class who wished themselves to be regarded as less timid (than the rest of the army) declared that they did not dread the enemy, but feared the narrowness of the roads and the extent of the forests which lay between them and Arioivistus, or else that the corn could not be supplied with sufficient readiness.”—*qui* i.e. *praefecti militum et decuriones*.—*his=qui magnum in castris usum habebant*.—*rem frumentarium*: this is *antiptosis*, a figure by which the subject of the subordinate clause is the object. of the principal clause: cp. *nosti Marcellum quam tardus sit=nostri quam tardius Marcellus sit*, Cic.: so in English: “I know thee who thou art:” Luke 4, 34; “Conceal me what I am:” Shaks. Twelfth Night, 1, 2; “Didst thou not mark the King, what words he spake:” Shaks. Rich. II., 5, 4.

*ferri=inferri*: explain the phrases, *signa inferre*, *convertere*, *efferre*, *referre*, *conferre*, *a signis discedere*, *signis collatis configere*, *signis infestis ire aut incedere*.—*jussisset*: “he should give the order:” II. 525, 2; A. & G. 336.

*dicto audientes*: “obey his order:” H. 391, 1; A. & G. 234; a: cp. the Scriptural “Ye will not hearken unto me.”

## CHAPTER XL.

*omniāmque—centurionibus*: “and admitting the centurions of all ranks to the council.” Usually the council of war was composed of the *imperator*, *legati*, *tribuni militum* and the six *centurions* of the first cohort of each legion. There was a regular system of promotion in each legion. As the

cohorts ranked from one to ten, so the centurions had ranked from one to sixty. Caesar had six legions, so there would be at least 360 centurions, thirty-six tribunes, and these with the *legati* would swell the number to upwards of 400.

*quod—putarent* : “because they thought they had a right to enquire or consider either in what direction, or with what design they were being led.”—*ducerentur* : subjunctive of dependent question ; H. 529 ; A. & G. 334.—*putarent* : H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d.

*cur—judicaret* : “why would any one suppose that this one would so rashly fail in his loyalty.” Distinguish *quisquam*, *ullus*; *quicvis*, *quilibet* : H. 457, 458 ; A. & G. 202, c.

*sibi—repudiaturum* : “he (Caesar) at least was persuaded that after his (Caesar’s) demands were known and the fairness of his terms were understood, he (Ariovistus) would disregard neither his kindness nor that of the Roman people.”—*Sibi* : H. 384, II., 5 ; A. & G. 230. Distinguish the use of *sui*, *is*, *ille* in oblique narrative.

*quod—desperarent?* “but if he, urged on by rage and frenzy, *did* attack them, what in the world were they afraid of, or why should they totally distrust their own valor or the accuracy of his arrangements?” *furor*, mental irritation, rage ; *amentia*, unreasonableness ; *dementia*, downright madness.

*factum—videtur* : “a trial had been made of that enemy in the memory of our fathers, when by the defeat of the Cimbri and Teutones it was the opinion that the army gained no less renown than the general himself.” We have here the original meaning of *periculum* : cp. *πείρα*. The Teutones were defeated in the fourth consulship of Marius, 102 B.C. at Aquae Sextiae (now *Aix*) and the Cimbri, in the following year, at Vercellae (now *Vercelli*). He probably attributes the defeat as much to the bravery of the soldiers as to the skill of the commander to gain over the tribunes.—*videbatur* : in oblique narrative the only moods used are the infinitive and the subjunctive. In *direct narrative* the indicative would be used here, and is retained even in the *indirect* to express a fact which could not be brought out by the subjunctive.

*factum etiam nuper* : anaphora.—*servili tumultu* : “at the time of the insurrection among the slaves.” This was the gladiatorial war, in which Spartacus resisted the Romans for three years, 73-71 B.C. As many of these gladiators and slaves were Germans, Caesar speaks of the Germans experiencing the power of the Roman arms.—*tumultus* is applied to an uprising in Gaul or Italy.

*quos—sublevarent* : “and though they were yet slaves, the skill and training which they had received from us considerably aided them.”—*quos* : the antecedent is implied in *servili=servorum* : H. 445, b ; A. & G. 199, b. Here *quos tamen=et quamvis eos* : concessive clause.—*aliquid* . acc. specification : H. 378 ; A. & G. 240, c.

*ex quo—constantia* : “from this it might be inferred what an advantage there is in steadfast courage.”—*posset* : potential subjunctive.—*haberet* : dependent question ; H. 529 ; A. & G. 334.—*boni* : part. gen. : H. 397, 3 ; A. & G. 216, a.

*superassent* : “they would conquer.”—*inermes* must not be taken

too literally. The gladiators were not absolutely without arms, though they were poorly equipped.

*Helvetii—qui—potuerint*: join these closely together; “the Helvetii, who were by no means a match for the soldiers of our army.” Note that *quibuscum* depends on *congressi* while *superarint* is left without an object, but the accusative *eos* is easily supplied.

*si quos—viciesse*: “if the defeat (of the Gauls by the Germans) and the rout of the Gauls alarmed any, these would be able to find out, if they made enquiry, that Arioivistus, after the Gauls had been worn out by the length of the war, since for many months he had confined himself to his camp and the marshes, and had given them no chance of coming to an engagement with him, had suddenly attacked them already giving up all hope of battle and scattered, and had conquered them rather by his stratagem and cunning than by his valour.”—*quos*: when is *quis* used for *aliquis*? H. 455, 1; A. & G. 105, d.—*castris—paludibus*: ablatives of place—*subito adortum*: in the battle of Magetobria: chap. XXXI.

*cui—posse*: “not even he (Arioivistus) himself expected that our enemies could be entrapped by the same stratagem for the exercise of which an opportunity had been given among a barbarous and rude people.”—*rationi*: H. 445, 9; A. & G. 200, b. Arioivistus, as Caesar says, would undoubtedly know that he could not employ the same tactics against the Romans as he had against the Gauls.

*qui—viderentur*: “those who ascribed their fear to a pretended anxiety about the supply of corn and the narrowness of the road acted arrogantly, since they appeared to him either to distrust him, or to dictate to him his duties as commander”

*haec—curae*: i.e., he had not neglected to supply corn.

*quod—perspectam*: “as to the report that the soldiers would not obey his command nor advance to meet the foe, by this he was not at all influenced; for he knew that either in consequence of some mismanagement fortune had failed those commanders whose words of command an army would not obey, or else, that the charge of peculation had been clearly brought home to them by some flagrant instance.”—*quod*: II. 516, II. 2, N.; A. & G. 333, a.—*laturi*: H. 536, 2; A. & G. 272, b.—*dicantur*, subj. *milites*: H. 534, I., N. 1, (2); A. & G. 330, 1—*nihil=ne hilum*, “not a mark”; or *ne filum*: “not a thread,” i.e., “not at all”: H. 378, 2; A. & G. 240, a: cp. the Greek use of *οὐδέτερ* for *οὐ*.

*itaque—repraesentaturum*: “therefore he would do at once what he had intended to put off to a more distant day.” *Repraesentare* is a legal term to ante-date: cp. *solutionem repraesentare*, “to pay a debt before it is due.”

*decima legione*: the legions were called *first, second, etc.*, according to the order in which they were raised.

*praetoriam cohortem*: this body guard, *cohors praetoria*, originally was instituted by Scipio Africanus and consisted of 1,000. They were generally soldiers who had served with distinction, and they received special privileges in the way of extra pay and exemption from certain duties. Note that the commander was called *praetor*, i.e., *praetor=qui pravit exercitui*: “the one who leads the army.”

## CHAPTER XLI.

*innata est, scil. mentibus omnium.*

*ei gratias egit*: “returned thanks to him;” distinguish *gratias agere*, *gratias habere*, *gratias reddere*: see note on *gratiā referret*, chapter XXXV.

*quod—fecisset*: “because he had formed a very high opinion of it;” for the subjunctive: H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d.

*reliquae—satisfacerent*: “the other legions as well as the tribunes of the soldiers and the centurions of the highest ranks agreed to make ample apology to Caesar.”—*primorum ordinum centuriones* were the centurions of the first cohort of each of the other five legions.

*se—existimavisse*: scil. *dixerunt*: “they said that they never had any hesitation or fear, nor did they think that they, but their general should decide in regard to the general administration of the war.”—*summa* is often used with a genitive: cp. *summa rerum*.—*suum* and *imperatoris* are predicates after *esse*.

*itinere—exquisito=repperit iter esse tale exquisitum*: “he found out that the journey after being reconnoitred was of such a character.”—*ex aliis*, scil. *Gallis*, or *ex aliis=ex ceteris omnibus*, i.e., “more confidence in him than in all the others.”

*millium, scil. passuum*: note *quinquaginta millium* is a descriptive genitive: H. 396, V.; A. & G. 215, 6. Could it be the ablative? H. 417, (1), N. 2; A. & G. 247, c. It is generally supposed that the circuitous road added fifty miles to the regular route. This distance is thought to be too much, hence there may be an error in the numbers. The Greek paraphrast gives 1250 stadia, or about 156 Roman miles, a still greater distance.

*locis apertis*: “through an open country;” literally, “in an open country;” local abl.: i.e. free from the obstructions of woods and mountains. Caesar was marching N.E. from Vesontio.

*duceret=ducere posset*: “he was able to lead.”

*septimo—est*: “after an unbroken march, on the seventh day he was informed by spies.” The ablative absolute would be the more usual construction.

## CHAPTER XLII.

*quod—accessisset*: “as to his (Caesar’s) former demand regarding a conference, this might now take place so far as he (Ariovistus) was concerned, since he (Caesar) had come nearer (to him i.e., Ariovistus).” Note the force of *per*, in *per se licet*. Translate, *so far as I am concerned, you may go*.

*arbitrabatur, scil. Caesar.*

*quum—polliceretur*: “since he (now) offered, without being requested, what he formerly refused, to grant when he (Caesar) asked him.”—*petenti, scil., Caesari*.—*denegasset*: subjunctive of oblique narration: H. 524; A. & G. 336.—*polliceri*: properly “to bid at a sale,” hence “to make a proposal.”

*magnumque—desisteret* : “and he (Caesar) began to entertain high hopes that, for his (Caesar’s) so great kindnesses and those of the Roman people to him (Ariovistus), the result would be that he (Ariovistus) would desist from his stubbornness.”—*in spem veniebat=sperabat* : and hence the future inf. *fore*.—*desisteret*: H. 535, I., 3; A. & G. 330, 3.—*pertinacia* : H. 414; A. & G. 243.

*colloquio* : dative of purpose.

*ultra citroque* : “hither and thither,” “to and fro,” lit., “to the further side and to this side,” with reference to the position of Caesar who is the narrator : cp. French *par ci par là, ça et là*. We have also the various forms of the expression, *ultra ac citro, ultra et citro, ultra citro*.

*vereri, scil., dixit*: explain the use of *ne*, and *ut* after verbs of fearing : H. 498, III.; A. & G. 331, f.

*uterque—veniret* in indirect narration would be *uterque veniat* in direct : H. 523, III.; A. & G. 339. Distinguish *uterque*, and *quisque* : H. 458, 459, 4; A. & G. 202, d.

*interposito—causa* : “by allowing any excuse to intervene.” For the explanation of the abl. abs. : H. 431; A. & G. 255.

*Gallorum* : refers to the Gallic cavalry in the army of Caesar. These were taken mostly from the Aedui and their allies. Caesar did not trust much to their loyalty.

*omnibus—detractis* : “after all the horses had been taken away from the Gallic cavalry.”—Notice *equis detractis* is ablative absolute ; *Gallis equitibus*, dative : H. 385, II., 2; A. & G. 239.

*eo=in eos, scil. equos.*

*legionarios milites* : the regular troops of the legion, as distinguished from the *velites*, “the light-armed,” who acted merely as skirmishers.

*imponere* : when do verbs of *determining* and *deciding* take the infinitive, and when, *ut* or *ne* with the subjunctive? see H. 498, I. note

*ut—haberet* : “that he might have guards as devoted as possible if there was any need of their active services.”—*quid* is nominative : for the construction see H. 414, IV., note 3; A. & G. 243, e, R.

*non irridicule* : “a humorous remark :” literally, “a remark not without some humour.”

*quidam* : distinguish in meaning : *aliquis, quis, quispiam, quidam* : H. 455, 456; A. & G. 202, a, b.

*in—loco—habere* : “to regard as :” cp. Gk. expression : *ἐν ἀπίθμῳ ποιεῖσθαι*.

*ad equum rescribere* : “he enrolled them among the cavalry.” Soldiers when enlisted had their names written (*scribere*) in tablets : *rescribere* means to make an entry which shall have the effect of changing what is written or done : here to enter the soldier in the roll of the knights in place of their present entry as foot soldiers.

## CHAPTER XLIII.

*aequo fere spatio*: what is the usual position of *fere*? What case is *spatio*? H. 379, 2; A. & G. 257, 6.

*ut erat dictum*: "as had been agreed upon."

*equis*: ablative of means: "on horseback."—*passibus*: see above on *spatio*.

*se*: plural.—*denos*: note the force of the distributive: H. 174, 2; A. & G. 95, a—d. Translate: *two huts, two camps; he gave the soldiers two spears, he gave the soldiers two spears apiece; he gave the man a pair of goblets, he gave the man two goblets.*

*ventum est*: impersonal: "they had came thither :" H. 301, 1; A. & G. 146, c.

*quod—esset*: H. 528, 1; A. & G. 341, d. What the usual *munera* were we learn from Livy, 30, 15: a golden crown, a golden bowl, a curule chair, an ivory sceptre, an embroidered gown, a tunic ornamented with figures of palm branches.

*quam rem*: "this honour."

*paucis contigisse*: "had been the good luck of few :" distinguish in meaning, *contigit, accidit, evenit*.

*et—officiis*: "and (only) in return for distinguished services on the part of individuals."

*illum—consecutum, scil. docebat*: "he (Caesar) informed him (Ariovistus) though he (Ariovistus) had no right to obtain them, and had no just ground for demanding them, by the kindness and liberality of himself (Caesar) and of the Senate, he (Ariovistus) had received those honours." The last clause would naturally imply that Ariovistus had sought for the honours obtained—probably an unjust insinuation on the part of Caesar.

*docebat—intercederent*: "he then proceeded to inform him how old and well grounded were the reasons for the alliance that existed between them and the Aedui."—*Ipsis=Romanis*: II. 386; A. & G. 228.—*intercederent*: for subjunctive of dependent question: H. 529; A. & G. 334. The Aedui were the first of the Gallic tribes that embraced the friendship of the Romans: cp. Tacit. Ann. II, 25: *Primi Aedui senatorum in urbe jus adepti sunt. Datum id foederi antiquo, et quia soli Gallorum fraternitatis nomen cum Populo Romano usurpant.*

*honorifica*: compare this adjective: H. 164; A. & G. 89, c.

*in eos—essent*: "had been passed in their behalf": for subjunctive, see reference under *intercederent*.

*ut—tenuissent*: "how during all time (past time) the Aedui had held the sovereignty of Gaul."—*ut=quomodo*, hence the subjunctive *tenuissent*: H. 529; A. & G. 334. Explain the case of *tempore*: H. 429; A. & G. 256, b.

*prius—quam=priusquam*: H. 524, 520, II.; A. & G. 327, 341, a.

*ut—esse*: "that instead of wishing their allies and friends to lose anything of their standing, they (the Roman people) wished them to be still further increased in influence, dignity, and honor."—*ut—velit*: for the noun clause introduced by *ut*: H. 501, I., 2; A. & G. 331.—*sui nihil*: H. 441, 397, I.; A. & G. 216, a.; 188.

*quod—posset*: “ who could bear to have that, indeed, which they brought with them when they obtained the friendship of the Romans, taken away from them ? ” The order of the words is : *quis posset pati id quod attulissent*. *Eis*, for the dative : H. 385, II., 2 ; A. & G. 229. What mood would *posset* be in direct narrative ? H. 486, II. ; 523, II., 1, N. ; A. & G. 268, 338, R.

*postulavit—dederat* : “ he then made the same demands which he had instructed the ambassadors to make ” : for *mandatis*, see note Chapter XXXV.

*inferret—redderet—pateretur* : for the subjunctives, see H. 523, III. ; A. & G. 339.

*domum* : H. 380, II., 2 ; A. & G. 258, b. What other words are construed like the names of towns ?

*at—pateretur* : “ at any rate he should not suffer any hereafter to cross the Rhine.”—*quos* : H. 455, 1 ; A. & G. 105, d.

#### CHAPTER XLIV.

*praedicavit* : distinguish in meaning *pruedico*, *praedico*.

*transisse*, scil., *dixit* : the direct form of this speech is in part given in H. 531.

*rogatum—arcessitum* : “ but because he had been requested and sent for by the Gauls,” i.e., by the Arverni and Sequani to aid them against the Aedui : see Chapter XXXI. : H. 549, I.; A. & G. 292.

*sine—praemiis* : a *hendiadys*=*sine spe magnorum praemiorum*. H. 636, III., 2 ; A. & G. p. 298 : or, as some translate : “ not without high hopes and inducements.”

*obsides*, like *sedes* governed by *habere*.

*stipendium—consuerint* : “ (he said) that he exacted by the right of war tribute which the conquerors were wont to impose on the conquered.”

*sese* : note the reflexive pronoun all through this passage referring to Arioivistus.

*omnes civitates* : a piece of boastful exaggeration, as only the Aedui and their allies had fought against Arioivistus.

*ad se oppugnandum venisse* : in what different ways may this be expressed ?

*ac contra* : “ and further.” In Cicero *ac* was not used before a vowel, a guttural (*c*, *g*, *q*), or *h*. In these cases *atque* was used. Caesar, if the best MSS. are to be trusted, never uses *ac* before a vowel, or *q*, once before *g*, and thrice in this passage and in B. G. 3, 75, 78, before *c*.

*deciuntur* : “ to fight it out to the death ” : for the force of *de* : cp. *deperiuntur*, *deproelior* : so *κατὰ* in Greek *καταπολεμέω*.

*peperirent* : “ had paid and are now paying ” : notice the force of perfect which here includes the present. Distinguish *pendere*, *pembēre*; *albēre*, *albāre*; *sēlēre*, *sēdāre*; *dicāre*, *dicēre*.

*suit* : “ their own,” i.e., the Gauls. There is a very different story told in Chapters XXXI., XXXVII.

*sibi ornamento* : for the two datives : H. 390, I.; A. & G. 233.

*idque—petisse* : "and that he aimed at the whole thing with this object": note the neuter *id* referring to the thought of the preceding clause = *ut amicus esset*, not to *amicitiam* alone.

*per* : explain the use of *per* with acc. of agent : H. 415, I. N. 1; A. & G. 246, b.

*quod transducat* : "in regard to his bringing over :" H. 516, II., 2, N.; A. & G. 333, a.

*eius—defenderit* : "it was a proof of this statement that he had not come without being asked, and that he had not carried on an aggressive, but a defensive war." — *testimonio* : for the dative : H. 390, II., Note 2 ; A. & G. 233. Note that *defendere* in its primitive meaning is equivalent to *propulsare* "to ward off :" cp. Caesar, *De Bello Civili*, I, 7 : *conclamant legionis, XIII., quae aderat, milites.....sese paratos esse imperatoris sui tribunorumque plebis injurias defendere.*

*populū Rōmānum* : *populus Romanus* [venisset] would have been more usual : H. 524, 1, 2); A. & G. 336, a, R.

*quid—veniret?* "what did he (Caesar) mean that he should come into his (Ariovistus') possessions?" There is a confusion of pronouns here since *sibi* refers to Caesar ; *suo* to Ariovistus. Often *sibi*, *tibi* are used with *velle* to mark more emphatically the subject of the verb : ethical dative : H. 389 ; A. & G. 236.—*cur=quare*.

*hanc—illum* : i.e. this part of Gaul towards the Rhine, where they were standing; that part over there, away to the south.

*ut—interpellaremus* : "as it would not be right to give way to him, if he were making an attack against our territories, so likewise were we acting unjustly, in case that we molest him in the enjoyment of his rights." Supply *esse* after *se*. The regular construction after *interpollo* is *quin, quominus, ne*, or the infinitive as here.

*quod—esse* : "as to his (Caesar's) harping on the fact that the Aedui had been called brothers by a decree of the Senate, (he, Ariovistus, would inform him) that he was not so illiterate or so unskilled in political matters as not to know either that in the late war against the Allobroges the Aedui had brought aid to the Romans, or that they (the Aedui), in these recent feuds which the Aedui had carried on with him and with the Sequanians, had enjoyed the aid of the Roman people." — *quod—diceret* : H. 524, ; A. & G. 336.—*bēl'o* : B.C. 62 : it followed immediately after the revelation of Catiline's conspiracy. See Introduction pp. xii., xiii.

*debere—habere* : "that he had a right to suspect that Caesar, having pretended friendship (for the Aedui), in that he now keeps an army in Gaul, keeps it there for the purpose of crushing him (Ariovistus)." Explain fully the number of *sui opprimendi* : H. 542, I., Note 1 ; A. & G. 298, a.

*qui=et ille* : the connective relative.

*nobilibus—gratum* : what adjectives govern the dative? This is probably no idle boast on the part of Ariovistus. Caesar had many violent political enemies in Rome. Ariovistus was evidently well acquainted with the party politics at the Capital.

*compertum habuisse*: nearly the same as *comperisse*: H. 388, I. N.; A. & G. 292, c. I.

*quorum—posset*: "all of whose favour and friendship he (Ariovistus) could purchase by his (Caesar's) death."—*morte* abl. of means: H. 420; A. & G. 248.

*sine—confecturum*: "he could carry out without any trouble and danger to him," i.e., Caesar. Explain the genitive *ejus*: H. 398, II.; A. & G. 214.

### CHAPTER XLV.

*multa—posset*: "many arguments were urged by Caesar for the purpose of showing why he could not desist from what he had undertaken."—*quare—posset*: for the subjunctive: H. 529; A. & G. 334.—*negotio*: the ablative of separation: H. 414; A. & G. 243. Derive *negotium*.—*posset*: H. 529, I.; A. & G. 334.

*pati ut=pati uti*: for noun clause introduced by *ut*; H. 498, I.; A. & G. 331, c.

*neque se judicare*: "nor could he admit." For the genitive *Ariovisti*: H. 402; A. & G. 214, c.

*Arvernos et Rutenos*: this war occurred 121 B.C.: see Proper Names under Q. Fabius Maximus.

*redegisset*, scil. *eos* from preceding *quibus*: "whom the Roman people had pardoned, and had neither reduced to the form of a province nor imposed taxes on them." The word *provincia* had not the meaning "a conquered territory," but "an administration": it is a corruption of *providentia*, being often corrupted into *prorintia* in MSS.: cp. *urbana provincia*: "the administration of a city."

*antiquissimum quodque tempus*: literally, "each earliest period" of possession: i.e., priority of time: cp. (Cicero: *antiquissimae cuique (epistolae) respondabo*: "I shall answer each of your former letters" in the order in which I have received them: H. 458, I.; A. & G. 93, c.)

*quam—volnisset*, scil. *senatus*; "since it (the senate) wishes that it, after being conquered in war, should enjoy its own laws."—*quam=quippe eam*, i.e., *Galliam*.—*suis*: as referring to the subject of *uti*.

### CHAPTER XLVI.

*dum—geruntur*: *dum* often takes the present indic. when the verb in the principal clause is in a marked past tense: H. 467, 4; A. & G. 276, e.

*propius tumulum*: *prope*, *propius*, *proxime* may take (1) accusative; (2) dative; (3) joined with *ad*, the accusative: H. 437, I.; A. & G. 234, e.

*quod—omnino*: "any (weapon) at all."

*legionis*: "to his legion:" for the subjective genitive: H. 396, III.; A. & G. 217.

*committendum*: construe *ita esse committendum*: "he did not think that he should act in such a way that any occasion ought to be given for the statement, that in case the enemy were repulsed, they had been ensnared, while the conference was being held, at the time when a pledge had

been given."—*per fidem*: this is probably the meaning of *per* here: cp. *per inducias*. "at the time of a truce." Others take the meaning to be: *contra fidem*, "in violation of his pledge," a force that *per* has in *perfidus*, *perjurus*, *perjuro*. The Greek paraphrast translates *per fidem* by δόλῳ.

*in vulgus militum*: for partitive genitive: H. 397; A. & G. 216. Decline *vulgus*. What other nouns of second declension are neuter?

*qua—diremisset*: "with what arrogance in the conference Ariovistus had forbidden the Romans the whole of Gaul, and (how) his (Ariovistus's) cavalry had made an attack against our men and how this circumstance had broken off the negotiations."—*qua arrogantia usus*: what verbs govern the ablative? H. 421 I.; A. & G. 249.—*Gallia Romanis interdixisset*: *interdico* may take (1) abl. of thing, dat. of person, as here; or, (2) acc. of thing, dat. of person. For *Gallia*, H. 414; A. & G. 243: *Romanis*; H. 386; A. & G. 228.—*interdixissent*: dep. question: H. 529, I.; A. & G. 334. So *fecissent* is governed *ut=quo modo*, understood as *diremisset* is governed by *ut* expressed.

## CHAPTER XLVII.

*biduo*: for the ablative: H. 423, 430; A. & G. 250.

*quae—coetae—essent*: explain fully the passive voice. Translate: *he begins to discuss these things: these things begin to be discussed*.

*uti constitueret*, scil. *egit cum Caesare*: H. 498, I.; A. & G. 331, b.

*suis=Caesaris*.—*se=Ariovistum*.

*causa—est*: "the reason did not seem sufficient."

*eo magis*: "and the more so for the following reasons." Compare *magis*.

*pridie ejus diei*: explain fully this phrase: see note on *postridie*, B. I. Chapter XXIII.

*quin*: what is the construction of *quin*? H. 504; A. & G. 319, d.

*legatum—existimabat*: "as to his (Caesar's) sending a commissioner from his own (Caesar's) men, and exposing him to these barbarians, this he thought would be a very dangerous course."

*commodissimum visum est* join this with *ad eum mittere*.

*summa virtute*: for ablative of characteristic: H. 419, II.; A. & G. 251.

*C. Valerium Procillum*: It was usual for foreigners who received the right of citizenship (*ius civitatis*) to prefix the *praenomen* and *nomen* of their patron (*patronus*). Thus *Caburus* took the name of *C. Valerius Caburus* from *C. Valerius Flaccus*, who was governor of Gaul 83 B.C. These names descended to the children, as in this case to the son, *C. Valerius Procillus*.

*qua—utebatur*: "which Ariovistus now fluently spoke from his long practice." *Multa* refers to *lingua*, but *multum* would do as well.

*et—esset*: "and because in his case there was no temptation for the Germans to do wrong." For *esset*: H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d, R.

*M. Mettium*, scil. *commodissimum visum est ad eum mittere*.

*apud se*: "at his quarters"

*quid—venirent?* Express this in *direct narration*. For case of *quid*: H. 454, 2; A. & G. 240, a.—*Venirent*: H. 523, II. 1; A. & G. 338, 334.

*an*: explain the omission of *utrum*: H. 353, 2, N. 4; A. & G. 211, b.

## CHAPTER XLVIII.

*millibus*: the ablative expresses here *degree of difference*. The first camp of Arioistus is supposed to have been located at the foot of the Vosges between the modern *Soultz* and *Tedlkirch* at the place where the present modern roads cross. His second camp was stationed directly south of this to a hill near *Reininger*. Between these two positions was the plain occupied by the two camps of Caesar, a little to the east of *Aspach*.

*postridie ejus diei*: H. 398, 5; A. & G. 214, b. See note on *postridie*, B. I., Chapter XXIII.

*castra fecit*: so also *castra locare*, *castra ponere*, “to pitch a camp.”

*frumento*: abl. of separation: II. 414, A. & G. 243. The plan of Arioistus was to cut off Caesar’s supplies so as to force him to fight.

*qui—supportaretur*: subjunctive by attraction: H. 529, II., 529, II., N. 1, 1; A. & G. 342.

*ut—deesset*: “so that, had Arioistus wished to engage in battle, he might not lack an opportunity.”

*his omnibus diebus*: “on every single one of these days:” H. 379. I. A. & G. 256, b.

*castris*: “within his camp:” H. 425, II., 1, 1); A. & G. 258, f

*numero*: H. 424; A. & G. 253.

*quos—delegerant*: “whom they had selected from the whole force each (horseman selecting) one (infantry soldier) for the sake of his own protection.”

*singuli*: for the distributive: H. 174, 2, 1); 172, 3; A. & G. 95, 95, a. With this statement cp. Tacit. Germ. c. 6.

*versabantur*: “they were associated.” Note that *his*, *hos*, *hi* refer to the foot soldiers.

*hi—concurrerant*: “these, if any difficulty more serious (than usual) arose, used to rush to their aid.” Note the force of the comparative: H. 444; A. & G. 93, a.

*si—qui=si quis*: when is *quis* used for *aliquis*? see B. I., Chap. XXXV.

*equo*: H. 414, I.; A. & G. 243, b.

*si—aduequarent*: “and if they had to advance to any place farther than usual or retreat with greater speed than ordinary, such was their agility from constant practice that supporting themselves by the manes of their horses they could keep up with the full gallop.”—*quo=et eo*.—*sublevati*: reflexive force of perfect participle: H. 465; A. & G. III, N. I.

## CHAPTER XLIX.

*eum=Ariovistum*: so also *se* as referring to the subject of *tenere*.

*castris*: abl. of place : H. 391, I.; A. & G. 234, a.

*ultra—locum*: Caesar's first camp was on the plain between the two positions taken by Ariovistus. His second camp was a short distance west of that occupied by the German.

*acie—instructa*: “after drawing up his line in triple order.” What the *triplex acies* was, see Introduction, page xiv.

*castra munire*: the Romans invariably fortified the camp with a rampart (*vallum*), on the outside of which stakes or palisades (*valli*) were firmly driven in, and with a ditch (*fossa*). They did so even if they rested for a single night. Hence *castra munire* has nearly the same meaning as *castra locare*, *castra ponere*.

*hominum—expedita=sedecim millia hominum expeditorum*.

*quae copiae=ut eae copiae*: H. 497, I.; A. & G. 317.

*nihilo secius*: “none the less”: H. 417, 2; A. & G. 250.—*secius*: also *sequius*, derived from *sequor*: originally meaning “after,” hence “less.”

*castra majora*: the camp first pitched; the second was *castra minora*.

## CHAPTER L.

*instituto suo*: “according to his usual practice”: H. 416, 416, N. 2; A. & G. 253.

*potestatem fecit*: “gave an opportunity.”

*eos=Germanos.—prodire*, scil. *ad pugnam*.

*quae=ut ea*: as in the previous chapter *quae copiae*.

*proelio non decertaret*: “did not decide the question in a general engagement.”—*proelio*: abl. of means. Note force of *de* in *decertare*: cp. *deproelior*, *depugnare*; see notes on *decertare*, B. I., Chapter XLIV.—see Chapter XLIX.

*sortibus et vaticinationibus*: “from lots and responses.” According to Tacitus (Germ. 10), the Germans lopped off a twig (*virga*) from a fruit-bearing tree and cut it up into small pieces (*surculi*). These were distinguished by certain marks and thrown on a white cloth. The person drawing the lot looked upward, uttered a prayer, and took each bit of wood three times and found a meaning according to the mark previously impressed. The *vaticinatio* was the prophetic response. According to Tacitus (Germ. 8), the Germans believed women to have something of a divine nature and an insight into futurity. Plutarch (Caesar 19), says: “The spirit of the Germans was still more blunted by the predictions of their wise women, who, observing the eddies in the rivers and drawing signs from the whirling and noise of the waters, foreboded the future and declared that the army ought not to fight before it was new moon.”

*ex usu esset*: “it was expedient.” For subjunctive: H. 353, N. 3; A. & G. 211. What would *utrum—necne* be in a direct question?

*fus*: “the will of heaven.”

*ante novam lunam*: according to Tacitus (Germ. 11) the new and the full moon were lucky days. The Spartans similarly believed it unlucky to engage in battle at the waning of the moon, and so refused to aid the Athenians at Marathon (Herod. 6, 106).

## CHAPTER LI.

*postridie ejus diei*: see note B. I., Chapter XXIII.

*praesidio—castris*: the first is the dat. *for which*, the second the dat. *to which*: H. 390, II.; A. & G. 233.

*alarios*: the allied troops (*auxilia*) formed the wings (*alae*) of the legion, and hence they were called *alarii*.

*quo—uteretur*: “that he might use the auxiliaries for show, since he was weaker in the number of common soldiers, considering the forces of the enemy.”—*alariis*: what verbs govern the ablative?

*castris*: H. 425, II., 1. 1; A. & G. 258, f.

*generatim*: “by tribes”: what is the force of the ending?

*paribus intervallis*: H. 419, III.; A. & G. 248, R.

*rhedis*: the *rhedas* was a four wheeled wagon with a strong leathern covering. In these the families of the Germans were carried, while the *carri* seem to have conveyed their baggage and provisions. For *carri*, see note on *carri*: B. I., Chapter II.

*eo*: “on these:”=in *eas*, i.e. in *rhedas*

*passis manibus*: “with outstretched hands:” from *pawlo*. Another reading is *passis crinibus*: “with dishevelled hair.” There is authority for both: cp. Caesar *de Bell. Gall.* 7, 48.

## CHAPTER LII.

*Caesar—praefecit*. This probably means that Caesar appointed over each of the six legions a *legatus*, and a *quaestor* over the whole. The *legatus* had an eye on the common soldiers and subordinate officers, while the *quaestor* watched the *legati*. The duties of the *quaestor* usually were to pay out moneys to the troops and keep regular account of the same, and to provide supplies. He was likely also available for command in case of emergency.

*a dextro cornu*: “on the right wing”: literally, “from the side of the right wing.” This was opposed to the left of the enemy occupied by the Harudes.

*ita* limits *acriter* just as *ita* afterwards limits *repente* and *celeriter*.

*spatium—conjiciendi*: “time for hurling their darts against the enemy.” *spatium* often means “time” as well as “space.”

*rejectis pilis*: “throwing aside their darts”: abl. abs.: H. 431; A. & G. 255.

*phalange facta*: the German *phalanx* resembled the Roman *testudo*, the men being in close array with their shields locked above their heads. As the Germans here fought by tribes, there would be as many phalanxes as tribes.

*complures nostri milites* : “many of our men” : decline fully *complures*. Would it be correct to say *complures nostrorum militum*?

*qui-insilirent* : H. 503, I.; A. & G. 320, a.

*a sinistro cornu*. “on the left wing” of the Germans : see *a dextro cornu* above.

*P. Crassus adolescens* : “the young P. Crassus.” P. Crassus is here called by the epithet *adolescens* to distinguish him from his father, the *triumvir*. Both father and son lost their lives at the unfortunate field of Carrhae, in Mesopotamia, B C. 53.

*quod-versabantur*. “because he was more disengaged than those who were occupied at the front.” It is probable that Crassus saw where help was most needed better than those actually engaged in the battle.

*nostris subsidio* : for two datives · H. 390, II.; A. & G. 233.

### CHAPTER LIII.

*ita—verterunt* : “by this means the battle was renewed and then the enemy were entirely put to flight.” For the simple *terga verterunt* we often have *in fugam terga verterunt*.

*prius—quam* : by tmesis for *priusquam*. Some MSS. read *perveniret*. Why is the indicative correct here? H. 520; A. & G. 327.

*viribus* : H. 425, II., I, I), N.; A. & G. 254, b. Decline this word. What verbs are semi-deponent?

*tranare contenderunt*; “managed to swim over.”

*ea* : “with it :” the abl. of accompaniment.

*salutem reppererunt* : “reached a place of safety.”

*reliquos omnes* : Plutarch states that 80,000 men were slaughtered in this battle. Arioivistus soon afterwards died, either through chagrin at his defeat, or of wounds received in the battle. The defeat and death of Arioivistus was a terrible blow to Germany : cp. Caesar ; *de Bell. Gall.* 5, 29 : *magnō esse Germanis dolori Arioivistī mortem*. By the campaign of 58 B.C. the question was decided whether Rome or Germany should obtain possession of Gaul. Not till after the overthrow of the Western Empire did Gaul come under German rule.

*uxores* : it was not usual for the Germans to have more than one wife. He probably married his Noric wife for political reasons : cp. Tacit. *Germ.* 18 : *nam prope soli barbarorum singulis uxoribus contenti sunt, exceptis admodum paucis qui non libidine sed ob nobilitatem plurinis nuptiis ambiuntur.*

*duxerat, scil. in matrimonium.*

*duae filiae harum, altera—altera* : that is the *whole and part construction* : cp. the Greek idiom *οὐτοὶ μὲν ἀλλοὶ δὲ λέγει*.

*trinis catenis* : as *catenae* is generally used in the plural, we have the distributive for the ordinal numeral : cp. *terna castra* : H. 172, 3; A. & G. 95, b.

*in—incidit* : “casually met with.”

*repletum—restitutum*: it is not usual to have two participles in the same clause without a connective : the former is adjectival to the latter : “restored to him saved from the hands of the enemy.”

*neque—diminuerat* : “ neither by the sufferings of such a man had fortune at all lessened the general pleasure and rejoicing :” literally : “ taken away anything from.”

*ter* : a sacred number among many nations.—*consultum*, scil. *esse*.

*sortium* : see note B.I., Chapter L. near the end.

*ad eum i.e. ad Caesarem*.

#### CHAPTER LIV.

*proximi—Rhenum* : what three constructions may *proximi* have?

*occiderunt* : distinguish in derivation and meaning *occido*, *occido*.

*una aestate* : “within a single summer.” The defeat of the Helvetii took place at the end of June or in the beginning of July, that of Ario-vistus about Septr. 10th.

*in Sequanos* : “into the territory of the Sequani.” This implies that he was previously out of it.

*citeriore Gallum* : said with reference to the position of Rome.

*ad conventus agendos*. The Romans divided the conquered provinces into circuits to which they gave the name *conventus* or *conventus juridici*, though the administration of justice was only one, among the many duties of the governor. The circuit took its name from the chief town. Hence the word *conventus* had four meanings: (1) the assembly held; (2) territory from which the people assembled; (3) place where the assembly was held; (4) jurisdiction. At these circuits law suits were determined, petitions heard, taxes regulated, and everything transacted that tended to the general administration of the province.

## BOOK. II.

## CHAPTER I.

*esset* : for subjunctive : H. 521, II., 2; A. & G. 323, 325. The date is 57 B.C., in the consulship of P. Cornelius Lentulus and Q. Metellus Nepos.

*in hiberna* : *hibernis* generally means the winter quarters of an army engaged in a war. Here *in hibernis* may mean, at the place where he was spending the winter.

*ita ut* : "just as."

*quam* : agrees with the word in the predicate rather than with its regular antecedent : translate, however : "who, as we have said, form the third part of Gaul."

*conjurare* : "had formed a league." There is no necessity to take this word here in the sense of "to form a conspiracy"; cp. Greek *συνωμοσία*, "a league."

*inter se dare* : "were exchanging."

*quod vererentur*: the subjunctive shows that the reasons were given on the authority of the Belgae: H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d.

*Gallia*=*Gallia Celtica* : the central part of Gaul is meant.

*partim qui*: "some of whom"; *partim-partim* refer to *nonnullis Gallis*, who are classed in two divisions. The word *partim*, though accusative in form, is used by Caesar and Cicero as a word of distribution without any respect to its case.

*ut—ita* : "as—so."

*inveterascere* : "should become settled" : literally, "should grow old."

*molestè ferebant*=*χαλεπῶς ἔφερον* : "they were annoyed."

*partim—studabant* : "(while) others of whom in consequence of their instability and fickleness of disposition were aiming at a revolution."—*imperii* : H. 385; A. & G. 227.

*ab nonnullis etiam*, scil. *quod sollicitarentur*: "thirdly because they were being instigated by a few, since in Gaul constantly there were opportunities to gain dominion seized by the more powerful and those who had wealth to hire men." Note the different clauses in opposition to *causas* are introduced by *primum*, *deinde*, *etiam*.

*imperio nostro* : "under our sway"; abl. of time and cause : see note on *imperio*: B. I., Chapter XVIII.

## CHAPTER II.

*nuntiis literisque*: II. 416, I., 2; N. 1; A. & G. 245, b.

*duas legiones*: the XIII. and XIV. Caesar now had eight legions, numbering from VII. to XIV. inclusive. The regular soldiers with the auxiliaries in Gaul would now number about 60,000 men.

*inita aestate*: abl. absolute: H. 431; A. & G. 255. Join this to *qui deduceret*.

*interiorum Gallum*: "into central Gaul": H. 440, 2, N. 1; A. & G. 193.

*qui deduceret*, scil. *eas*: "to lead them." For *qui=ut is*: H. 497, 1; A. & G. 317.

*quum—inciperet*: the subjunctive is used because the abundance of fodder was the occasion of his coming: H. 521, II., 2; A. & G. 325, 323.

*exercitum*: probably now at Vesontio (*Besançon*).

*dat negotium*. historical present: "he directs." What sequence of tenses may follow a historical present? H. 498, I.; A. & G. 331, a.

*sinitimi Belgis*. what adjectives govern the dative? H. 391, I.; A. & G. 234, a.

*gerantur*: for the subjunctive: H. 529, II., 503, I; A. & G. 320, a, 342.

*se certiorem*: why not *eum certiorem*? H. 449, I.; A. & G. 196, 2.

*constanter*: "uniformly," "unanimously."

*tum—proficiuceretur*: "then, indeed, he thought that he ought not to delay about setting out against them": the negative *quen* introduces the dependent clause because of the negative character of the main statement. This idiom is still preserved in French: *je ne doutais pas que vous n'eussiez raison*: H. 500, II.; A. & G. 319, d. Note that *non dubitare* with infinitive denotes an act done without hesitation: cp. Caesar *de Bell. Gall.* 23: *transire flumen non dubitaverunt*, while *non dubitare quin* with subjunctive, denotes a resolution made without hesitation.

## CHAPTER III.

*eo=ad fines Belgarum*.

*de improviso*: of the English colloquial phrase, "of a sudden"; "unexpectedly."

*celerius omni opinione*: "more quickly than any one had expected;" literally, "than every expectation": H. 417; A. & G. 247.

*Remi*: for the boundaries of these people, see Proper names.

*proximi Galliae*: for the dative: H. 391.1; A. & G. 234, a. What other constructions may *proximi* have?

*ex Belgis=inter Belgas*.

*qui=dicerent*: *qui=ut ei*, hence the subjunctive: H. 497.1; A. & G. 317. In what other ways may this be expressed?

*se*: give chief rules for oblique narration: H. 523, 524; A. & G. 330, 337.

*neque=et non*: H. 554, I., 2; A. & G. 156 a.

*omnino*: note that *omnino* after negatives = "at all."

*oppidis*: for the ablative : H. 425, 2, N. 2; A. & G. 258 f.

*juvare, scil, eum*, i.e., *Caesarem*.

*cis Rhenum*: Caesar is writing from the standpoint of the Roman *Provincia* : cp. *Gallia Citerior, Gallia Cisalpina*.

*his* = *Belys*.—*eorum omnium* = *Belgarum et Germanorum*.

*ne—quidem*: the emphatic word comes between *ne* and *quidem* : H. 569, III., 2; A. & G. 151, e. Note that *Suessiones* is the object of *detergere*.

*jure-legibus*: for ablative: H. 421, I.; A. & G. 249. *Jus* is often used in the sense of political rights as here : cp. *ius civitatis, ius Romanum*: *lex* is properly an enactment made in the Roman *comitia*.

*utantur*: why subjunctive? H. 529, II., 524; A. & G. 342, 336: "though they enjoyed."

*potuerint*: governed by *ut* : H. 500, II., Note 1; A. & G. 319. Note *ut*, expressing a consequence never takes pluperfect subjunctive: "that they had been unable."

*quin—consentirent*: "from uniting": would *quominus* be permissible here? H. 505, II.; A. & G. 319, c.

#### CHAPTER IV.

*quum*: H. 521, II., 2, A. & G. 325.

*his*: scil., *legatis*, mentioned in the beginning of the preceding chapter.

*essent—possent*: for subjunctive of indirect question. H. 529, I., A. & G. 334.

*ortos a Germanis*. it is probable that Caesar's statement here applies to those Belgae only near the German frontier. The main body of the people were of Gallic or Celtic origin. This is proved from the ancient Geographical names.

*Rhenum*: governed by the preposition *trans* in *traductos*: H. 376, N.; A. & G. 239, b.

*ibi*: on the west bank of the river Rhine.

*memoria*: ablative of time within which: "within the memory of."

*omni—vexata*: abl. abs.: H. 431, A. & G. 255: "when all Gaul was harrassed."

*Teutones Cimbrosque*: the Teutones and Cimbri appeared first at Noreia, on the extreme N.E. of Italy, about 113 B.C. After devastating Northern Italy, defeating seven consular armies, both were defeated by Marius, the former at Aquae Sextiae (Ave) in Southern Gaul in 102 B.C., the latter at Campi Raudii near Vercellae in Northern Italy in 101 B.C.

*ingredi prohibuerint*: for subjunctive: H. 503, II., 1; A. & G. 320, b. What constructions may verbs of hindering take? H. 505, II.; A. & G. 319, c, d.

*fieri*: the subject of this verb is the following clause: *uti—sumerent*: H. 501, I., 2; A. & G. 319, 332, a.

*memoria* : for ablative : H. 416 ; A. & G. 245.

*omnia—habere* : “that they had complete information.” Properly *explorare* is, to find out a person by calling out his name.

*propinquitatibus affinitatibusque conjuncti* : *propinquitus*, properly called *cognatio*, is “kinship,” the relationship that springs from common parents : *affinitas* is that derived from intermarriage. The *affines* of the wife are the *cognati* of the husband, i.e. the husband’s father, brothers, etc., while the *affines* of the husband are the *cognati* of the wife i.e. the wife’s father, brothers, etc.

*quisque* : “each representative.”

*pollicitus sit* : subjunctive of dependent clause in oblique narrative : H. 529, II.; A. & G. 334

*cognoverint* : H. 524, A. & G. 336.

*virtute* : for the ablative : H. 424 : A. & G. 253.

*confidere* : “to muster”—*armata millia centum=millia centum armaturum hominum*.

*sibi* : the Bellovacī : *suos* refers to Remi subject of *dicebant* : H. 449 I.; A. & G. 196.

*cum--tum = non solum--sed etiam* : H. 554, I. 5, A. & G. 155, a.

*Nervios*. the names of peoples in the chapter show how persistently modern Geography preserves even in a corrupt form the memory of former days. The Bellovacī were settled near Beauvais ; Suessiones, near Soissons ; Ambiani, near Amiens ; Caleti, near Culais ; Atrebates, near Arras ; Morini, near Boulogne ; Velocasses had a capital Rotomagus, now Rouen ; Veromandi were settled at Vermandois on the upper Oise ; the Menapii on the lower Scheldt ; the Aduatuci, on the upper Meuse ; Condrasi, near Codroz ; Eburones and Caeroesi in the Ardennes region ; the Paemani, in *Marche la Famine*

*Germani* : the word is said to mean in Celtic, “hill-men,” “highlanders :” for other derivations see Proper Names.

## CHAPTER. V

*liberaliterque—prosecutus* : “having dismissed them with friendly words.”

*prosequi verbis* is a technical term, “to bid good bye” to a person going into exile.

*senatum* : Caesar applies a Roman term to the council of the Belgæ. So also Caesar : *de Bell. Gall.* II. 28, he uses the word *senatores*.

*diligenter ad diem* : “punctually to a day.”

*quanto—sit* : “how important it is to the interests of the state and their common safety that the forces of the enemy be kept apart that they may not be compelled to fight at one time with so great a number.” *reipublicae* : H. 406, III.; A. & G. 222—*intersit* : for subjunctive . H. 529, I.; A. & G. 334—*conflixerint* : H. 497, II. A. & G. 317.

*introducerint* : for mood and tense : H. 527, I.; A. & G. 337.

*neque jam = et jam non*.

*flumen exercitum* : H. 376 ; A. & G. 239, b.

*extremis*: reckoning from the *Marne* where Caesar entered the territory of the Remi.

*quae res*: "this position."

*ripis*: H. 420; A. & G. 248.

*et reddebat*: construe *et reddebat (ea loca) quae essent post eum (esse) tuta ab hostibus*. For mood of *essent*: H. 503, I.; A. & G. 320, a.

*efficiebat ut*: "made it possible that."

*pedum*: H. 396, V; A. & G. 215, b.

## CHAPTER VI.

*nomine*: H. 424; A. & G. 253.

*ex itinere magno*: "while on a forced march"; cp. *ex itinere*: B.I., Chapter xxv. The expression shows there was no interruption of the march when the attack was made.

*eo die*: the ablative is sometimes used for periods of duration so short as to be equivalent to a point of time.

*eadem atque* : "just the same as": H. 451, 5; A. & G. 296, R. 1.

*ubi—subruunt*: "when they have placed a continuous line of men all along the fortifications and begun to shower stones from every side upon the wall and (when once) the wall has been cleared of its defenders, then they form a *testudo*, push on to the wall and proceed to pull it down."—*circumjecta multitudine*: H. 431; A. & G. 255.—*totis moenibus*: abl. of place: H. 425, II., 2; A. & G. 258, f.—*coepit sunt*: why passive?—*murus*: distinguish in meaning *moria*, *murus*, *paries*, *maceria*.—*testudine*: Caesar gives the tactics of the Belgae a Roman name. In forming a *testudo*, the Roman soldiers held their shields over their heads close to one another so as to form an unbroken defence against the missiles from above. It obtained its name from the appearance the shield had to a tortoise shell (*testudo*). Note that *-que* sometimes as here connects actions described as happening at some distance of time from one another.

*multitudo—conjurarent*: the plural verb expresses numerous separate and individual actions. Had the singular been used there would have been the idea of unity: H. 517; A. & G. 326.

*nulli*: decline: H. 387; A. & G. 231. Note emphatic position.

*fecisset*: H. 521, II., 2, A. & G. 325.

*summa nobilitate*: ablative of description: H. 419, II.; A. & G. 251.

*oppido*: for dative: H. 386; A. & G. 228.

*sibi—sese*: Iccius.—

*submittatur*: what is the force of *sub* in composition here?

## CHAPTER VII.

*eo*, i.e., to Bibrax.

*de media nocte*: "soon after midnight": so *de tertia vigilia* is, "after the third watch was set:" see B.I.: chapter XII.

*iisdem—venerant*: "using as guides the same persons who had come as

messengers." For pronouns in apposition to nouns, compare note on *his ducibus qui iter cognoverant*: Caesar, B. I., Chapter XXI.

*Numidas, Cretas, Baleares*: those three nations supplied the light skirmishers to the Roman armies. For an account of them see Proper Names.

*subsilio—oppidanis*: for the two datives: H. 390, II.; A. & G. 233. Join *oppidanis* with *subsilio*, not with *mittit*.

*quorum—discessit*: "and at the arrival of these the Remi were inspired with eagerness to ward off the attack, as well as with the hope of a successful defence, while, for the same reason, the enemy gave up all hope of becoming masters of the town."—*adventu*: abl. of time and cause.—*et Remis—accessit*: literally, "there was both added to the Remi": H. 386; A. & G. 228.—*hostibus*: for case: H. 385, II., 2, A. & G. 229.

*potiundi oppidi*: the genitive implies that *potior* may govern the accusative as it does in old Latin: Ter. Adelph. 5, 4, 22: *miseriam omnem ego capio, hic potitur gaudia*: H. 544, 2, N. 6; A. & G. 296.

*morati, scil. hostes.*

*quos*: account for the gender of the relative: H. 445, 3 N. 1: 439, 2.

*copiis*: abl. of accompaniment: H. 419, III., 11; A. & G., 248, a.

*ab—posuerunt*: this construction is best explained by *hyperbaton* (inversion in order of words), the regular construction being: *posuerunt castra minus duobus passuum ab (castris) Caesaris*. The abl. *millibus* is ablative of difference: H. 417; A. & G. 247.—*minus, plus, amplius* have no influence on the construction: see note on B. I., Chapter XXXVIII.—*millibus* ablative of measure: H. 417, I., N. 2; A. & G. 247, c.

## CHAPTER VIII.

*propter—virtutis*: "on account of their fine reputation for valour."

*proelio supersedere*. "to delay the battle."—*supersedeo* means primarily, "to sit over" in the sense of a presiding judge. Cato R. R. 5, I.: *vilius litibus familiae supersedeat*: then "to sit over" a thing in the sense of passing it over; hence, "to delay."—*proelio*: ablative: H. 414, I.; A. & G. 243.

*equestribus proeliis—periclitabatur*: "he kept trying to find out by cavalry skirmishes what the enemy could do by their valour and what daring our men had."—*proeliis*: ablative of means. H. 420; A. & G. 248. *posset—auderent*. dependent question: H. 529, I.; A. & G. 334.—*periclitabatur=periculum faciebat*: for imperfect: H. 469, II.; A. & G. 115, b. The original meaning of *periculum* is "a trial," "a test."

*loco—idoneo*: "the ground in front of the camp being naturally well adapted and suitable for drawing up his troops." The present participle of the verb *esse* being wanting we often find an adjective agreeing in predicate relation with a noun in abl. absolute: H. 431, 2, (3), A. & G. 255, b, N.—*ad—instruendam*: H. 544, I.; A. & G. 296.

*quod—redibat*: "because that hill on which the camp was pitched, rising a little from the plain, extended in width towards the enemy far enough to form an army in battle array, and on both sides it had steep

banks and in front gently sloping upward it gradually resumed a level."—*ubi*=*in quo*.—*tantum*: acc. sing. neut. of adjective: acc. of extent of space.—*adversus*: predicate adjective after *patebut*—*loci*. H. 397, 3; A. & G. 216, a, 3.—*lateralis dejectus*: literally, "slopes of the side."

*transversam fossam*: "an intrenchment at right angles," to the direction of the hill.

*ad—fossas*: "at the end of the intrenchments:" H. 442, 2, N. 1; A. & G. 193.

—*tormenta*: (from root *TORC*, "to whirl") was the generic term under which were included *balistae*, *onagri*, *scorpiones*, *catapulta*.

*quod—poterant*: "because they were so strong in numbers."

*multitudine*: abl. of cause.

*legionibus*: the **xiii<sup>th</sup>** and **xiv<sup>th</sup>**, which he had raised the previous summer in *Gallia Cisalpina*.

*si quo opus esset*: "if any where there was need." Explain the tense of the subjunctive.

*subsidio*: dat. of purpose: "as a reserve force."

*suas—instruxerant*.—*suas copias ex castris eduxerant et instruxerant*: H. 549, 5; A. & G. 292, R.

## CHAPTER IX.

*palus*: distinguish in meaning *pälüs*, *pälüs*.

*hanc—erant*: "the enemy were waiting to see whether our soldiers would cross this (marsh); our men, on the other hand, were under arms waiting to attack them (the enemy) when stuck fast (in the marsh), if they (the enemy) should first begin to cross it."—*hanc*, scil. *paludem*.—*transirent*: H. 529, II.; A. & G. 334, f.—*si—fieret*: literally, "if a beginning of crossing (the marsh) should be made by them": for the subjunctive; H. 529, II.; A. & G. 342.

*proelio—contendebatur*: "a cavalry battle was fought between the two lines." For the pas.ive *contendebatur*: H. 301, I.; A. & G. 146, c.

*secundiore—nostris*: "the cavalry battle being more fortunate than usual to our men." For abl. abs.: H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255, a.

*eo consilio*: "with the object."

*castellum*: a redoubt which Titurius occupied with six legions on the south bank of the *Aisne*.

*expugnarent*: distinguish in meaning *oppugno*, *expugno*.

*si—potüssent*: the construction is: *partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt eo consilio ut, si minus potuissent pontem expugnare et intercindere*. The tense in *potuissent* implies the condition after the attempt had been made.

*nobis usui*: H. 390, 1; A. & G. 233.

*commeatu*: abl. of separation: H. 414, I; A. & G. 243.

## CHAPTER X.

*equitatum—pontem*: for the two accusatives: H. 376; A. & G. 239, d.  
*levis armaturae*: for genitive of description: H. 396, V.; A. & G. 215.

*eo loco*: the battle is said to have taken place between the mouth of the little stream *Miette*, which flows through the marsh mentioned in Chapter IX. into the Axona (*Aisne*), and the modern village of *Pontavert*.

*impeditos*: “hampered in their movements.”

*circumventos interfecerunt=circumvenerunt et interfecerunt*: H. 549.5; A. & G., 292, R.

*hostes*: the main body of the Belgae who remained drawn up in battle array, differing from the *hostes impeditos* mentioned before who were simply a detachment.

*oppido*: Bibrax : 544, 2 ; A. & G. 301.

*spem se feluisse*: literally, “that their hope had deceived them.”

*neque=et non*.

*iniquiorem*: “less favourable” for them than the original position where the legions were drawn up.

*constituerunt—esse—(ut) convenirent*: *constituo* takes either—(1) the infinitive or (2) *ut* or *ne* with subjunctive, generally when the subject of the main verb and dependent verb differ. Rarely do we find the construction varied in the same clause as here.

*domum*: what words are construed like the names of towns? H. 380 II., 21 ; A. & G. 258, b.

*introduxissent*: H. 524 ; A. & G. 336.

*convenirent*: in direct discourse this would be *conveniamus, convenite*. H. 523, III.; A. & G., 339.

*copius*: “supplies” here: what are the usual meanings of *copia* in singular and plural? H. 421, I.; A. & G. 249.

*finibus*: for the dative : H. 386 ; A. & G. 228.

*his—poterat*: “these could not be persuaded to delay any longer or to refrain from bringing aid to their countrymen.”—*his*: II. 384.5 ; A. & G. 230.

## CHAPTER XI.

*ea—constituta*: express this by other constructions.

*secunda vigilia*: from 9—12 P.M.

*castris egressi=ex castris egressi*: for abl. H. 413 ; A. & G. 243, c.

*nullo imperio*: “without any definite marching order,” or “command.” The abl. absolute is explained by *cum—tumultu* and by *quem—properaret*.

*primum—locum*: “the first place in the line of march,” i.e., to get at the head of the retreating column.

*fecerunt—videretur*: “they so managed matters that their setting out had all the appearance of a rout.” For subjunctive: H. 498, II., N. 2 ; A. & G. 332, e.—*fugae*: dative : H. 391, I.; A. & G. 234, a.

*per exploratores*: what is the difference between this expression and *ab exploratoribus*? H. 415, I., 1, N. 1; A. & G. 246, b.

*nondum perspexerat*: “he had as yet no intelligence.”

*exercitum=peditatum*: as the foot soldiers made up the bulk of the Roman army, *milites* is often used for *pedites*; *exeritus* for *peditatus*.

*castris=in castris*.

*qui moraretur=ut is moraretur*: “to stop”: H. 497, I.; A. & G. 317. *his=equitibus* implied in *equitatum*.

*novissimos, scil. hostes*: “the rear of the enemy.”

*magnam-conculerunt*: “slew a great number of them as they were fleeing.” Distinguish *conculo*, *conculo* in derivation and meaning

*quum-consisterent*: “since those on the rear of their column, to whom the Romans had come, were making a stand.”—*ventum est*: H. 301, 1; A. & G. 146, c.

*priores-ponerent*: “(while) those in advance (of the rear guard), because they thought they were out of danger, and were not kept together by any necessity or command of their officers, when the shout reached their ears, all broke up their ranks in confusion and rested their hope in flight.”—*priores, scil. hostes*: those at the head of the retreating column.—*viderentur-continerentur*: subjunctive by attraction: H. 529, II.; A. & G. 342.—*perturbatis ordinibus* is more closely connected with verb *ponerent* than the first abl. abs.: *ex auditu clamore*.—*ponerent*: H. 517; A. & G. 326.

*quantum-spatium*: “as long as the length of the day permitted,” i.e., as long as it was daylight.

## CHAPTER XII.

*postridie ejus diei*: H. 398, 5; A. & G. 214, g: see note B.I., Chapter XXIII.

*priusquam se-reciperent*: “before the enemy could recover themselves”: H. 520, II.; A. & G. 327.

*magno itinere confecto*: “by making a forced march.” What was the length of a regular day’s march? What, of a forced march? See note B.I., Chapter VII.

*Noviodunum*: the ending *-dun* is Celtic for “town”; cp. *Lugdunum*: *Melodunum*: so that *Noviodunum* means *Newtown*. The modern *Soissons* (a corruption of *Suessiones*) is on its site, nearly 30 miles west of *Berry-au-Bac*.

*ex itinere*: “on his march.”

*latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem*: note the chiasmus: H. 636, V. 4; A. & G. 344, f.

*paucis defendantibus=quamvis pauci (id) defenderent*: “though those who defended it were few:” the abl. absol. is concessive here.

*usui*: H. 390, II., N. 2; A. & G. 233, 300.

*vineas agere*: "to get ready the *vineae*." The *vineae* were wooden frames, eight feet high, seven wide and sixteen long, protected with raw or wet hides. Under this protection the men advanced to the wall of the enemy, undermined the wall or filled up the ditch.

*aggere jacto*: "a platform being constructed." The *aggeres* were platforms for the artillery or for moveable towers.

*magnitudine—celeritate*: H. 416, I, 2), N. 1; A. & G. 245, b.

*operum*: "siege works."

*Galli*: appositive: "they, as Gauls."

*et—impetrant*: "and at the request of the Remi, they (*Suessiones*) obtained their wish that their lives should be spared :" for subjunctive : H. 498, I.; A. & G. 331, a.

### CHAPTER XIII.

*primis=principibus*: H. 441; A. & G. 188.

*Bratuspantium*: an old town *Bratuspante* which once stood near *Breteuil* in Picardie, at the head of the Somme Valley.

*contulissent—ahesset*: bring out the changes of tense in translation : so also in *accessisset—poneret*.

*sese—venire*: "that they placed themselves under his protection and power."—*cujus* may be both objective and subjective genitive and hence implies a mutual pledge being given.

*neque=et non*.

*pueri*: "children": not necessarily "boys" merely.

*passim manibus*: "with outstretched hands," expressing humiliation.

*more*: abl. of manner: H. 419, III., Note 2; A. & G. 248. Remark.

### CHAPTER XIV.

*pro his=pro Belloracis*: "in defence of these."—*eum=Caesarem*.

*reverterat*: conjugate this verb. What verbs are semi-deponent?

*facit verba*: "intercedes."

*Belloracos*: what are the chief rules for oblique narration : H. 523-525; A. & G. 335-342. In *verba facit* is implied *dixit* on which the indirect narrative depends.

*omni tempore*: note that the acc. *omne tempus* is not ordinarily used to express duration of time.

\* *qui dicerent*: "who kept saying"; H. 524; A. & G. 336.

*omnes—perferre*: "endured every kind of ill-treatment and insult." Explain the use of the plural of abstract nouns : H. 130, 2; A. & G. 75 c.

*qui*: the antecedent of this is *eos* understood, the subject of *profugisse*.

*principes=auctores*: "advisers."

*in Britanniam profugisse*: Britain has often been a refuge for French agitators as in the recent case of Boulanger.

*ut—utatur*: “that he would exercise his well-known clemency and moderation towards them.” What verbs govern the ablative? H. 421; A. & G. 249.

*fecerit*: explain the fut. perf.: H. 527, I.; A. & G. 337.

*quorum—consuerint*: “by whose aid and help, whatever wars happened they (Aedui) were wont to hold out.”—*auxiliis—opibus*: abl. means. Change from *Belluvacos* to the end of the chapter into direct narrative.

### CHAPTER XV.

*honoris—causa*: “out of regard for Divitiacus and the Aedui.”—*Divitiaci*: objective genitive: H. 396, III.; A. & G. 217.—*causa*: H. 416; A. & G. 245.

*auktoritate*: H. 419, II.; A. & G., 251.—*multitudine*: H. 424; A. & G. 253.

*eo loco*: Bratuspantium.

*Nervii*: these were looked upon as the most savage people of the Belgae.

*natura*: “character.”

*nullum—mercatoribus*: “traders have no access to these.” For *mercatoribus* see note on Chapter I., B. I.

*nihil—pati=(eos) non pati quicquam vini*: “they do not at all permit the use of wine”: for the partitive genitive: H. 397, I.; A. & G. 216, a.

*inferri*: H. 535; H. & G. 330.—*reliquarum rerum* governed by *quicquam* implied in *nihil*. For a similar statement regarding the Belgae generally see Chapter I., B.I.

*iis rebus*: “by these enjoyments.”

*quod—existimarent*: what two reasons for the subjunctive?—*Eorum*: would *suos* be permitted here?

*increpitare atque incusare*: “they rebuked and even blamed.” Distinguish *et*, *atque* and *-que* as connectives. Supply  *eos* as subject of *increpitare*, *incusare*.—*qui=quippe qui*: “inasmuch as they”: H. 517; A. & G. 320 e.

### CHAPTER XVI.

*eorum=Nerviorum*.

*triduum*: scil., *spatum*, acc. of duration of time=*tres dies*.

*millia*: note that *plus*, *minus*, *amplius* have no influence on constructions of extent of time or space: H. 417, I., N. 2; A. & G. 247, c.

*in itinere*: “(already) on the march.”

*mulieres—conjecisse*: the construction is: *inveniebat (eos) conjecisse mulieres (homines) que qui*, etc.

### CHAPTER XVII.

*qui—deligant*: “to pick out.”—*qui=ut ei*: H. 497, I.: A. & G. 317.

*ex—Gallis*: join this with *complures*: H. 397.3, N. 3; A. & G. 216, c.

*deditiis* : the Ambiani, Suessiones, and Bellovacii.

*corum —perspecta* : “the usual marching order on the part of our army during these days being observed.”

*corum dierum* : depends on *itineris*.

*inter—intercedere* : “that between every two legions a great number of beasts of burden were placed.” Distinguish *impedimentum*, *impedimenta*, and *sarcina* in meaning. The *impedimenta* seem here to refer to the horses, waggons or any beast of burden used in transporting the heavy material of the army.

*neque—adoriri* : “and that there was no trouble, when the first legion reached the camp, and (when) the other legions were a long way off, in attacking this (legion) still encumbered with baggage.”—*negotii* : partitive genitive after *quidquam*.—*spatium* : H. 379 ; A. & G. 257

*futurum esse* : depending on *demonstrabant*, and having the clause *ut—auderent* for subject : “the result would be that the other legions would not be bold enough to withstand the attack :” H. 4 8, II., N. 2 ; A. & G. 332, e.—*reliquae*, scil., *legiones*.

*adjuvabat—posset* : “the following fact added weight to the advice of those who brought this intelligence, that the Nervii, long ago, since they could do nothing with cavalry (for up to this time they did not pay any heed to this branch of the service, but whatever power they have rests in their infantry), that the more easily they might obstruct the operations of the cavalry of their neighbours, if they came against them (Nervii) for the purpose of plunder, had caused, by lopping the trees when young and by intertwining the branches which grew out thick in a later direction and by interposing brambles and briars, these hedges like a wall to form a defence, which far from being able to enter they could not even see through.” Such is the literal translation. Break up the sentence into several separate sentences for a good English version.

*antiquitus*. explain the ending of the adverb.—*quo* : H. 407, III., 2 ; A. & G. 317, 6.—*venissent* : H. 529, II.; A. & G. 342.—*ciferant ut* : H. 497, II., N. 2 ; A. & G. 332, e.—*instar muri* : *instar* is an indeclinable substantive : H. 134 ; A. & G. 77, 1.—*non mollo = non mollo non* : cp. the Greek use of *οὐ μόνον* for *οὐ μόνον οὐ*,

*non—consilium* : “this plan should not be neglected by them :” for dative *sibi* : H. 388 ; A. & G. 232.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

*loci—quem locum* : see note on *itinera duo, quibus itineribus* : B.I., Chap VI. This place is said to be on the River Sabis (now *Sambre*) in France, near the Belgian frontier, about two miles S.W. of *Maubeuge*.

*declivis* : a hill sloping from the top to the bottom was called *declivis* ; from the bottom to the top, *acclivis*.

*huc—contrarius* : “facing and opposite to this.” There is little difference between *adversus* and *contrarius* : the former seems to mean that the two armies corresponded in form and extent.

*passus—ducentos*: some say that the hill began to rise about 200 paces from the margin of the river, others that it was 200 paces from the bottom to the top.—*passus*: acc. of extent. H. 379; A. & G. 257.

*infimus apertus=infima parte apertus* opposed to *ab superiore parte silvestris*: “so thickly wooded on the top, so that it was not easy to see into it.”

*secundum*: here a preposition: “down the river:” we have also *secundo flumine, adverso flumine* for “down the river,” “up the river:” *secundo* and *adverso* being adjs. in abl. absolute, agreeing with *flumine*.

*pedum—trium*: genitive of description: H. 396, V.; A. & G. 215, b.

## CHAPTER XIX.

*copii*: ablative of accompaniment: H. 419, III., I, I); A. & G. 248, a

*ratio—detulerent*: “the system and arrangement of the army was different from what the Belgae had reported to the Nervii.”—*habebat*: from the unity of idea contained in *ordo ratiisque*. H. 463, II., 3, A. & G. 205, b.—*ac*: H. 554, I., 2, N.; A. & G. 156, a

*sud consuetudine*: “according to his usual custom:” abl. of manner.

*expeditas*: “without baggage.”

*duae legiones*: the XIIIth and XIVth legions.

*totum—claudebant*: “brought up the whole rear.”

*praesidio impedimentis*: for two datives; H. 390, I.; A. & G. 233.

*identidem*: “repeatedly.”

*neque—auderent*: “and when our soldiers did not dare to follow those in retreat further than the level and open ground extended in front.” *neque=et non.*—*quem ad finem=ad eum finem ad quem—usque eo quo*: H. 445, 8; A. & G. 200, b.—*porrecta*. Literally, “stretching in front.”

*quae—venerant*: “which had been the first to come up:” H. 443; A. & G. 191.

*opere dimenso*: “the work allotted to each being measured out.” After picking out a place for the camp (Chapter XVIII., *locum idoneum castris diligere*), the six legions which first came up began to fortify the camp (*castra munire*), after the ground had been marked out for each by the surveyors (*castrorum metatores, or mensores*). Note that *dimenso* is passive: H. 231, 2; A. & G. 135, b. For the participles of deponent verb used passively see note B.I., Chapter XI.

*ubi—fecerunt*: “when the first part of the baggage train of our army was seen by those who were concealed in ambush in the forest, which had been agreed upon among them as the proper time for beginning the battle, on a sudden they darted forth with all their forces, and made an onset on our cavalry in the same order as they had drawn up their line of battle and ranks within the woods, and as they had encouraged each other to do.”—*prima*: H. 440, 2, N. 2; A. & G. 193.

*quod—convenerat*: in apposition to the clause *ubi—visa sunt*.—*tempus*: predicate after *convenerat*.—*omnibus copiis*: abl. of accompaniment: H. 419, II.; A. & G. 248, a.

*proturbatis*: “driven forward in confusion.” Another reading is *perturbatis*.

*paene—tempore*: “almost in one and the same moment”: H. 429, A. & G. 256.

*ad silvas*: “at the edge of the woods.”

*in manibus*: may mean what a person has under his hand; hence what is in his power, or as here what is close at hand; cp. Sall. Bell. Jug. I, 57: *cupere proelium in manibus facere*.

*adverso colle*: “up the hill”: cp. *secundum* in Chapter XVIII. They made straight for the Roman camp with the hill before them.

## CHAPTER XX.

*Caesari*: for dative: H. 388, 561, I.; A. & G. 232, 334, i.

*vexillum—dandum*: notice the *asyndeton* in this sentence. Why does Caesar here use it?—*vexillum* (diminutive of *velum*, “a sail”) was a crimson flag hung out from the *praetorium* as the signal of battle. Plutarch calls it *φοινικῶς χιτών*, “a crimson cloak.”

*quum—oporteret*: “when they had to rush to arms.” Explain the subjunctive here: H. 521, II., 2; A. & G., 325.

*signum*: “the signal of battle.” The various instruments in Caesar’s army were: (1) *tuba*: a trumpet, straight, with a funnel-shaped opening and used for giving signals to form in line, advance, and retreat; (2) *cornu*: horn, originally made of buffalo horn, gave the signal to the army to assemble and hear the address of the commander, or the sentence of death pronounced; (3) *bucina*: clarion was sounded to mark a change of watch. In Caesar time the *litus* was also used, though not mentioned by him. It was used for cavalry and had a harsh and high note.

*qui—arcessendi*: “those who had gone a little too far to seek materials for the mound had to be summoned.” The antecedent of *qui* is *ei milites* understood, subject of *arcessendi sunt*.

*militum cohortandi*: referring to the usual harangue (*militum cohortatio*) of the general before the action began.

*signum dandum*: it is better to take this = *signum committendi proelii dandum est*: “the first order to charge.” Others say it refers to the *tessera* or watch-word given to the men, so that by calling it they might avoid mistake or confusion in distinguishing friends and foes. It was usually some auspicious term or name. The watch-word of Caesar was usually *Venus Genitrix*; of Brutus, *Libertas*. With *tessera*: cp. Greek *σύρθημα*.

*successus*: “approach” of the Nervii from below.

*his—militum*: “two things, namely, the skill and experience of the soldiers were of assistance to him to meet these difficulties.”—*difficultatibus*: dative, depending on *subsilio*: H. 390, I.; A. & G. 233—*usus*: a more important word than *scientia* in Caesar’s eyes: H. 554, I, 2); A. & G. 156, a.

*non—poterant* : “they were able to give the command to themselves with no less advantage than to receive the command from others.” This shows the high degree of discipline to which Caesar had brought his legions.

*ab—vetuerat* : “Caesar had forbidden the different lieutenants to leave the fortifications and their respective legions, unless the camp was fortified.” For distributive numeral: H. 174, 2, 1; A. & G. 95, a.

*nisi—castris*. the full construction: *nisi decessissent munitis castris*: for abl. absol: H. 431; A. & G. 255.

*nihil(=ne hilum*: “not a mark,” or *=ne filum*, “not a thread,”) is here used for an emphatic *non*: H. 378, 2; A. & G. 240, a.

*videbantur, scil. administranda esse*. “but they did of their own accord what they thought ought to be done.”

## CHAPTER XXI.

*necessariis—imperatis*: “having given (only) the necessary orders”: H. 431; A. & G. 255.

*quam in partem—obtulit*: the full construction is: *in eam partem quam partem fors obtulit*: “in the direction which fortune first presented.” —*fors*: (from *fero*,) whatever fortune brings: H. 445, 9; A. & G. 200, b.

*retinerent—posset*: for the imperfect subjunctives: H. 502, 2; A. & G. 332, b.

*neu=et ne*: cp. Caes. *de Bell. Gall.*, 4, 17: *ut—his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur neu ponti nocerent*.

*animo*: H. 424, A. & G. 253.

*quod—posset*: this gives the reason for *signum dedit*.

*quam quo=quam ut eo*: “than the throw of a dart”: H. 502, 2; A. & G. 320, c

*pugnantibus occurrit*: ‘he finds them already engaged in fighting.’

*insignia*: these seem to be the *cristae*, feathers black and red, and other ornaments worn by the Roman soldiers to distinguish the legions and cohorts. These were moveable and were not worn on the march.

*scutis*: H. 414; A. & G. 243. The *scutum* was protected on the march with a leathern cover to shield it from the effects of the weather.

*quam—conspexit*: the full expression would be: *hac in parte et ad haec signa quisque constituit, quam primam in partem devenit, et quae prima signa conspexit*. On ordinary occasions it was a serious offence for a soldier to be absent from his regular post.

*in—suis=in quaerendo sua (signa)*: “in seeking out his own standard.”

## CHAPTER XXII.

*magis—postulabat*: “more in accordance with the position of the ground, the slope of the hill, and the urgency of the occasion than with the principles and arrangement approved of by military science.” —*magis ut—postulabat*: distinguish the use of the indic. and the subjunctive with *ut* following the comparative.

*quum—resisterent*: “since, as the different legions were scattered, different places held out against the enemy.”—*diversis—legionibus*: abl. absolute.—*aliae—parte*: H. 459, I.; A. & G. 203, c.

*resisterent—impediretur*: for causal *quum*: H. 517; A. & G. 326.

*sepibusque—interjectis*: H. 431, 444, I.; A. & G., 255, 93, b.

*prorideri*, scil. *potera*: the subject of which is the clause *quid—essem*.

*fortunar*: genitive depending on *eventus*; “the varying success of fortune also followed;” that is, some divisions were victorious and some defeated.

### CHAPTER XXIII.

*acie*: genitive= *acivi*: H. 120; A. & G. 74, a. Compare Aulus Gellius: *Cuius Caesar in libro de Analogia secundo, hujus die et hujus specie dicendum putat.*

*ea pars*: the *sinistra pars* occupied by the soldiers of the ixth and xth legions.—*his=Atrebatis*.

*ex loco superiore*: the prepositional abl. absolute; “since they occupied the higher ground.”

*conantes*, scil, *eos (Atrebates)*: “as they (the Atrebates) were trying.”

*ipsi=legionum nonae et decimae milites.*

*transire*: for infinitive after *non dubitaverunt* see note under Chapter II., B. II.

*diversae*: “separately”: H. 443; A. & G. 191.

*erant congressi*: scil. *milites*, from *legiones*.

*ex loco—proeliabantur*: “had gone down from the high ground and were fighting on the banks of the river.” Explain the force of the imperfect.

*nudatis*: “being stripped” of defenders.

*intervallo*: H. 379, 2: A. & G. 257, b.

*latere aperto*: “their flank being left uncovered”; abl. abs. In this case *latus=latus sinistrum*.

*summum—locum*: “the height occupied by the camp.”

### CHAPTER XXIV.

*levis armaturae*: see note on *levis armaturae*: Chapter X., B. II.

*adversis*: “face to face.”

*decumana porta*: the Roman camp had four gates: *porta praetoria*, in front, facing the enemy, and call'd from being near the *praetorium* or headquarters of the general; opposite to this was the *porta decumana* in the rear of the camp, and so called because the 10th cohorts of the legion (*decima cohors*) were stationed there; *porta principialis dextra*, in the centre on the right hand side of the camp, and *porta principialis sinistra*, on the left hand side.

*respexit—vidissent*: II. 521, II., 2; A. & G. 325, 323.

*quorum—singularis*: “whose reputation for valour is very high among the Gauls.”—*opinio* sometimes means, as here, the impression conveyed to others.

*auxilia—civitate=auxiliorum loco ab civibus*: “as auxiliaries by their countrymen.” This accounts for *ab*. So also at the end of this chapter *civitate=civibus*.

*castris*: for ablative: 421, I.; A. & G. 249. When does *potior* govern the genitive? H. 410, V., 3; A. & G. 249, a.

## CHAPTER XXV.

*Caesar—scuto—detracto—processit*: to this main sentence there is a long *prothesis* or introduction which may conveniently be divided into two parts, the first extending to *esse impedimento vidit*, and the second, to *submitti posset*.

*ab—cohortatione=ab decima legione quam cohortatus erat*.

*signis—collatis*: causative to *esse impedimento*: “since the standards (of the maniples) were crowded together.” Distinguish *aquila*, *signum*, *vexillum* in meaning.

*centurioribus occisis*: this and the four succeeding ablatives absolute are causal to *reliquos esse tardiores*: “all the centurions of the fourth cohort were slain, etc., therefore, all the rest of the men were getting cowed.”—*primipilo*: *primuspilus* was the first centurion of the first *manipulus* of the *triarii* and was the first in rank of the sixty centurions of the legion. He was entrusted with the eagle of the legion, ranked among the *equites* as regarded pay, and had a place in the council of war along with the consul and tribunes.

*et—excedere=et nonnullos ab novissimis locum deserere ac proelio excedere*: “while some in the rear were quitting their posts and withdrawing from the battle.” Others have *desertos*: “abandoned by those in the rear.” It is better to supply *loco* with *deserto*. For *proelio*: H. 414; A. & G. 243.

*hostes—instante*: “and that the enemy both in front did not cease coming up, and on both sides were pressing (our men) hard.” With *instante* supply *nostris militibus*.

*et rem—vidit*: “as he also saw that the danger was great.” With *angusto*, scil. *loco*. We still in American parlance speak of a man being in a “tight place.” The length of the sentence and the number of the dependent clauses led Caesar to repeat *vidit*.

*subsidiū*: “reserves”: the *xiiith* and *xivth* legions were too far off to be of any assistance.

*scuto—detracto*: “snatching a shield from a soldier in the rear.” In *uni militi* we have a Graecism for *ab uno milite*. This use of the dative for the abl. of agent with *ab* is generally confined to perf. part. pass.: H. 385, II., 2; A. & G. 229. With this meaning of *uni*: cp. the English *a*, *an*: A. S. *ðn*, Fr. *un*, all really same.

*signū—lascare*: “to advance and to open out their ranks.” Distinguish *signa inferre*, *referre*, *convertere*, *efferre*: *ad signa convenire*, *a signis*

*discedere, collatis signis confluere, signis infestis ire aut incidere.* The original meaning of *manipulus* was a handful (*mutus, plo*) of grass at the top of a pole referred to by Ovid, Fasti, III., 115. The pole was changed into a spear and the wisp of grass was replaced by gilded, silver, or bronze animals, of which the *cug'le* was retained as the emblem of the legion. Afterwards the animals were replaced by a round ball of metal.—*luxare*: to give full play to the sword and to lessen the deadly effect of the enemies' missiles.

*militibus*: dative: H. 386; A. & G. 228.

*pro se quisque*: "each man to the best of his ability."

*etiam—cuperet*: "even in the most critical moment desired to do his best."—*navare=gnavare*: "to do actively:" cp. *gnarus*.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

*juxta, scil., duodecimum legionem*: "next to the twelfth legion."

*ut—inferrent*: "that the (two) legions should gradually draw together, face about and charge the enemy." The seventh legion took up its position in rear of the twelfth, so that it faced in the opposite direction and thus the two would present a double front to the enemy. The expression *conversa* would thus refer to the seventh only, the two forming thus one continuous line. For *conversa signa—inferrent=concertata signa et—inferrent*: H. 549, 5; A. & G. 292, R.

*ferret—tinerent*: H. 517; A. & G. 326. With *tinerent, scil., hostes*. Explain the use of *ut* and *ne* after verbs of fearing: H. 498, III.; A. & G. 331, f.

*aversi*: "in the rear."

*legionum—duarum*: the XIIIth and XIVth.

*castris*: H. 421, I.; A. & G. 249. The IXth and Xth legions under Labienus had driven the Atrebates across the river and gained possession of the enemy's camp.

*gererentur—esset—versaretur*: for subjunctives: H. 529, I.; A. & G. 334.

*qui*, referring to *milites* implied in *legiones*.

*versaretur*: agreeing with the nearest nominative as the most important subject: H. 463, I.; A. & G. 205, d.

*nihil—secerunt*: "they came up as fast as they could;" literally, "they left nothing undone with respect to speed." For the partitive genitive *reliqui*: H. 397, I.; A. & G. 216, a, I.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

*etiam qui—proculnissent*: "even such as had lain down badly wounded;" literally, "spent with wounds." For subjunctive: H. 503, I.; A. & G. 320, a.

*scutis innixi*: "supporting themselves on their shields:" H. 425, II., 1, 1), N.; A. & G. 254, b.

*equites vero—praeferrent*: the construction is *tanta rerum commutatio est facta ut equites vero—praeferrent*: “such a change in the battle took place that indeed the cavalry, to wipe out by their valour their disgraceful flight, put themselves in front of the common soldiers in every part of the field.” For *militibus*: H. 386; A. & G., 228.

*at*: often used to introduce a new subject, or a transition from one part of a description to another.

*in—salutis*: “even in the utter despair of safety.”

*his dejectis*: “when these in turn were struck down”; abl. abs.

*qui superessent*: scil. *ei hostes qui superessent*: for subjunctive of indefinite antecedent: H. 503; A. & G. 320.

*ut ex tumulo*: “as from a hillock.”

*ut—locum*: “so that it ought to be concluded, that men of so great valour had not without sufficient reason dared to cross a very broad river, ascend very high banks, (and) enter upon a very disadvantageous position.” *nequidquam*, here=frustra. What is the usual distinction between *j'rustra* and *nequidquam*?

*que—redegerat*: “all of which things, though in themselves most difficult, their great courage had rendered easy of accomplishment.”—*redegerat=reddiderat*.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

*prope—redacto*: “when the nation and name of the Nervii had been almost exterminated.” There seems to be some exaggeration in this statement as the Nervii aided the Gauls in their uprising against the Romans B.C. 52: see Caesar, *de Bell. Gall.* 7, 75.

*pueris*: “children”

*quum—arbitrarentur*: since they saw that nothing would stop the conquerors nor defend the vanquished.” On causal *quum*: H. 517; A. & G. 326.

*omnium*: depending on *consensu*.

*millibus—sexcaginta*: in Chapter IV. the Nervii had promised 50,000.

*vix ad quingentos*: hyperbaton for *ad vix quingentos*: so a similar inversion of order, see Caesar *de Bell. Gall.* B. I., Chapter VI., *vix qui singuli*. Probably the exaggeration of the losses was for the purpose of exciting pity in Caesar.

*possent*: H. 524; A. & G. 336.

*finitimis imperavit*: translate, *milites civitati imperant*: *militibus imperavit*.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

*supra*: Chapter XVI., B. II.

*omnibus copiis*: ablative of accompaniment: H. 419, III., 1, 1), A. & G. 38, a.

*auxilio Nerviis*: for two datives: H. 390, I.; A. & G. 233.

*venirent=in itinere essent* : “ were on the march.”

*oppidum* : some say that this town, Aduatum, was on the plateau at the junction of the Meuse and the Sambre, now *Namur*, not far from the field of Waterloo. Others say it was situated on the hill Falhize, on the north bank of the Meuse, opposite the town of Huy, some miles below Namur.

*quod quum* : “ and though this (town) :” *quod=et id*, scil., *oppidum*.

*despectus* : “ wide prospect :” owing to the height of the hill on which it was built.

*in—pedum* : join *ducentorum pedum* with *aditus*. For case of *pedum* : H. 402, 417, I., N. 2.; A. & G. 247, c, 214, c.

*magni ponderis* : H. 396, V.; A. & G. 215, b.

*ex—pugnati* : according to some the name *Aduatuci* is purely Celtic, from *aduat*, “ runners.”

*citra flumen* : on the west side of the Rhine.

*custodiam—ac praesidio* : we have also *custodiam—ac praesidium*; *cus-todiae—ac praesidio*. Some also omit *una*.

*eorum* : the Cimbri and Teutones who fell at Aquae Sextiae 102 B.C. and at Campi Raudii 101 B.C.

*quum—defenderent* : “ when at one time they carried on an aggressive war (against their enemies), at another time warded it off when made upon themselves.” With *bellum inferrent*, scil. *hostibus*: with *illatum* scil. *sibi*. Observe that *inferre bellum*, not *invadere*, is the technical term “ to invade.”

### CHAPTER XXX.

*primo adventu* : “ as soon as they arrived ” : cp. *prima luce* : “ as soon as day dawned.”

*parvulis proeliis* : “ in skirmishes.”

*pedum duodecim*, scil. *in altitudinem* : for the genitive of description : H. 396, V.; A. & G. 215.—*oppido* : scil. *in*.

*rinceis constitui* : the *rinceae* were brought forward to cover the men who raised the mound (*agger*) on which the tower (*turris*) was to be placed and brought up to the wall. The men in the tower then drove the besieged from the wall : cp. Sallust. Bell. Jug. c. 76.—*turrim* : what nouns have (1) the accusative singular in *-im* : (2) in *-im* or *-em* ?

*irridere—increpitare* : historical infinitives.

*quod—instrueretur* : the *quod* introduces the reason of the Gauls, not of Caesar : H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d.—*ab* properly governs *muro* understood.—*tanto spatio* : ablative of degree of difference : H. 423; A. & G. 250.

*tantulae staturae* : “ of such trifling stature :” H. 396. V.; A. & G. 215, b.

*brevitas nostra=brevitas nostrorum militum*.

*confiderent* : what would the form be in direct discourse ? H. 523 II. 1; A. & G. 338.

## CHAPTER XXXI.

*moveri*, scil. *turrim*.

*specie* : “sight.”

*non*: join this with *sine ope divina*.

*qui—possent=quippe qui—possent* : “inasmuch as they—were able”: H. 517; A. & G., 320 e.

*quam—audirent* : “of which they had constantly heard from others.” *Audio*, as *ἀκούω* in Greek, has often a perfect meaning in the present. For the mood of *despoliaret*: H. 523, III.; A. & G. 339.

*traditis armis=si arma tradita essent* : H. 507, 3, N. 7: A. & G. 310.

*sibi—consuissent* : “that it would be better for them, if they should be brought to such a condition, to endure any lot whatever at the hands of the Roman people than to be tortured to death by those over whom they had been accustomed to hold absolute sway.” The subject of *praestare* is the part *quamvis—consuissent*.

## CHAPTER XXXII.

*consuetudine sua* : “in accordance with his habit”; of treating mercifully a defeated foe: H. 416; A. & G. 245.

*aries*: generally the Romans spared the inhabitants, if the city surrendered before the battering ram was applied.

*in Nerviis* : “in the case of the Nervii.”

*ne quam* : is *quam* from *quis* or *qui*?

*re—suos* : “when the answer was reported to their people they said they were ready to do whatever was ordered (by Caesar).”—*ad suos*. Explain *ad*. Why may not *suis* be read for *ad suos*? H. 384, II., 3 A. & G. 225, b.—*facere*, scil. *eos*, i.e., *Aduatucos*.

*muri*, i.e., of the town: *agger*, of the Romans.

*pace sunt usi* : “they enjoyed peace,” “they kept quiet.” What verbs govern the ablative? H. 421, I., II.; A. & G. 229.

## CHAPTER XXXIII.

*sub vesperum* : “at the approach of evening:” cp. *ἱπὸν νύκτα*. There is also a reading *sub vespere*, which has not quite the same meaning. In Caesar, *de Bell. Gall.* 5, 13 *sub bruma* means “in the depth of winter.” Sometimes *sub* with acc. means also “a little after:” Livy 21, 18: *sub hanc vocem—sueclamatum est*.

*illi*: afterwards distributed, *partim—partim*, subjects of *fecerunt*.

*ante inito consilio* : “having previously formed a plot.”

*quod—crediderant*: what does the indic. here express? H. 516; A. & G. 333.

*deditione facta* : express this in other ways.—*praesidia deducturos*, scil., *esse*: “would either withdraw their outposts,” from the line of circumvallation where the Roman sentries kept watch. Supply *aut* with *deducturos* (*esse*).—*denique* : “at least:” here = *saltem*.

*scutis—intensis* : “having made shields of bark or of osiers intertwined.”

The *ex* governs *viminibus* as well as *cortice*. Others take *viminibus intertextis* as abl. absolute.

*tertia vigilia*: for the Roman watches, see note on B.I. Chapter XII.

*ascensus*: because the Roman works were on a height above the level of the plain.

*omnibus copiis*: abl. of accompaniment : H. 418; A. & G. 248, a.

*repentino*: adverb for the more usual form *repente* which some have.

*ignibus*: "by fire signals."—*proximis*: nearest that part of the town from which the sally was made.

*concursum est*: cp. *itur, ventum est* : H. 301, 1; A. & G. 146, c

*ut—debut*: "as brave men were bound to fight, when their case was nearly desperate, on disadvantageous terms against men hurling their missiles from a rampart and towers."—*in extrema—sulutis*: the prepositional ablative absolute : see note under *quod arbitrabatur*, Chapter XXXIII, B.I.—*qui—jacerent*: H. 503, 1; A. & G. 320, a.

*sectio*: "booty," in this case the inhabitants as well as their goods. Properly speaking *sectio* was property sold on the public account whether it was property taken in war, or property forfeited to the *populus*, or property sold for the payment of a penalty. *Sector* was a purchaser of such property. Some say the word is derived (1) from *sequi*, "to follow," on account of the merchants (*mercatores*) following the army for the purpose of speculating in such property, or, (2) from *secure*, "to retail," because the purchaser (*sector*) retailed to the merchant what he bought in a lump.

*millium quinquaginta trium* predicate genitive of characteristic : H. 396, V., A. & G. 2:5

#### CHAPTER XXXIV.

*Venatos* The names of the tribes here mentioned still survive in corrupted forms: *Veneti*, in the modern *Vannes*; *Redones*, in *Rennes*; *Aulerici*, *Burovices*, in *Evreux*, *Sesuvios*, in *Sées*. So in Chapter XXXV., *Carmutes*, *Andes*, *Turones*, may be seen in the modern *Chartres*, *Angers*, and *Tours*.

#### CHAPTER XXXV

*quae incolerent*: for subjunctive of attraction : H. 529, II.; A. & G. 342.

*se*: referring to *nationibus*.

*qui—pollicerentur=ut ei pollicerentur*: H. 497; A. & G. 317

*legationes=legatos*: abstract for concrete : see note B. I., Chapter VII.

*Italiam*: Caesar means *Gallia Cisalpina*, or *Citerior*, which, though within the natural boundaries of Italy, formed no part of Italy in a political sense at this time. *Gallia Cisalpina* was a *provincia*.

*ex—Caesaris*: "in accordance with the letters of Caesar."

*dies—supplicatio*: we have also mention of *supplications* in Caesar, de Bell. Gall: 4, 38; 7, 90. In these cases the genitive *divum* is used. Of course *dies* is acc. of duration of time. A *supplicatio* was a religious thanksgiving and festival for a successful victory, proclaimed by a resolution of the senate and celebrated with or without a triumph.

*accidit nulli*: the longest celebration before this time was the *supplicatio*, fasting for ten days, in honour of Pompey's victory over *Mithradates*. Note emphatic position of *nulli*. See Chapter VI, B. II.

# PROPER NAMES.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

adj = adjective; f. = fem.; m. = masc.; N. = noun.; n. = neuter; pl. = plural;  
sing. = singular.

### A.

**A** = *Aulus, i*; N. m.; a Roman *praenomen*.

**Adūtūci, órum**: N. pl. m.: the *Aduatuci*, a people of *Gallia Belgica*. According to Caesar they were descended from the 'imbroi and Teutones, who had been left behind to guard the baggage and cattle when these two nations made a descent on Italy (B. II., C. xxix.). This is, however, contradicted when he says that the Belgae were the only Gallic tribe who kept the Cimbri and Teutones out of their territory. They lived about the confluence of the *Sabis* (*Sambre*) and the *Mosa* (*Meuse*).

**Aedūus, a, um**; Adj.: an *Aeduan*. The *Aedui* were a powerful nation of Gaul. Their confederacy embraced all the tract of country between the *Allier*, the middle *Loire*, and the *Saône*, and extended a little below this river to the south. Their capital was *Bibracte*. When Caesar came into Gaul he found the *Aedui* had been overcome by their rivals, the *Arverni* and the *Sequani*, who had called in the aid of Ariovistus, a German prince. Caesar espoused the cause of the *Aedui*, and restored them to their former place of power.

**Aemilius, i**; N. m.: *L. Aemilius*, a Roman officer in command of a *decuria* of Gallic cavalry (B. I., C. xxiii.).

**Aldūasbis, is**; N. m.; also called the *Dubis* (now *Doubs*), a river on which *Vesontio* (now *Besançon*), the chief town of the *Aedui*, was situated. The word *Dubis* meant the black river: (cp., Celtic *dhu*, "black," as in the modern names *Dulas*, *Doulas*, *Dorcas*, *Diggles*, *Dublin*). *Alduasbis* means, "the river of black rocks."

**Allōbrōges, um**; N. pl. m.: the *Allobroges*, a people of Gaul between the *Isara* (*Isere*) and the *Rhodanus* (*Rhone*) in the country occupied by *Dauphine*, *Savoy*, and *Piedmont*. Their chief city was *Vienna* (*Vienne*), about thirteen miles below *Lugdunum* (*Lyons*). The name means "highlanders," from *al*, "high;" *broga*, "land."

**Alpes, ium**; N. pl. f.: the *Alps* derive their name from the Celtic *alp*, meaning "lofty." Their length is about 600 English miles. The following are the divisions generally given to this chain: *Alpes Maritimae*, from Nice to Mt. *Viso*; *Alpes Cottiae* from Mt. *Viso* to Mt. *Cenis*; *Alpes Graiae*, from Mt. *Iseran* to Little St. Bernard; *Alpes Penniae*, from the Great St. Bernard to the sources of the Rhine and Rhone; *Alpes Rhaeticæ*, from the St. Gothard to Mt. *Brenner* in the Tyrol; *Alpes Noricæ*, from Mt. *Brenner* to the head of the river *Plavis*; *Alpes Carnicae vel Juliae*, extending to the confines of Illyricum.

**Ambarri, órum**; N. pl. m.: a people of *Gallia Celtica*, situated between the *Aedui* and the *Allobroges*, along either bank of the *Arar* (*Saône*.)

**Ambiāni, órum**; N. m. pl.: the *Ambiani*, a tribe of *Gallia Belgica*, to the north of the *Bellovaci*, and the river *Samara* (*Somme*). They had as their capital *Samarobriva*, on the *Samara*. This town was afterwards called *Ambiani* (now *Amiens*). They occupied that part of modern *Picardie*, now called *Department de la Somme*.

**Andes, ium**; N. m. pl.: the *Andes*, a Gallic tribe that occupied the modern *Anjou* or what is now called *Department de la Mayenne*. They occupied the north bank of the *Liger* (*Loire*), not far from its mouth. Tacitus and Pliny called them *Andecavi* or *Andegavi*. Caesar says that they were near the sea, but in this statement he is inaccurate as the *Nannetes* intervened (B. II., C. xxxv.; B. III., C. vii.; B. VII., C. iv.).

**Andōcumbōriūs**, *i*: N. m.: a colleague of Iccius in the embassy which the Remi sent to announce their submission to Caesar.

**Aquileia**, *ae*; N. f.: a celebrated city in Northern Italy, in the territory of Venetia, between the Alsa and Natiso, and about seven miles from the sea.

**Aquitānia**, *ae*; N. f.: a district of Gaul between the Garumna (*Garonne*) and the Pyrenees. According to Strabo, the Aquitani differed from the Gauls both in physical features and in language. They resembled the Iberians.

**Aquitāni**, *ōrum*; N. m. pl.: *the Aquitanians*, one of the three great divisions of Gaul inhabiting Aquitania, the district between the Garumna (*Garonne*) and the Pyrenees. They resembled the Iberi rather than the Gauls.

**Arar**, *āris*: N. m.: *the Arar* (now the *Sône*), a river of Gaul, rising in Mons Vosgesus (*non Vosges*) and after a southern course falling into the Rhodanus (*Rhône*). The city of Lugdunum (now *Lyons*) stands at the junction of the two rivers: (B. I., C. xii.)

**Ariōvistus**, *i*; N. m.: a king of the Germans who invaded Gaul, conquered the greater portion of the kingdom and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Caesar marched against him and defeated him in battle. He died of wounds or through chagrin at his defeat. His name is by some derived from the German *Heer*, an army; *Fürst*, a leader, but see Chap. xxxi., B. 1.

**Aruncūleius**, *i*; N. m.: *Lucius Auruculeius Cotta*, one of the legati in Caesar's army in Gaul. When Ambiorix, a king of the Eburones was seeking to withdraw him and his colleague Sabinius from winter quarters, Colta was opposed to leaving the encampment but finally yielded. The Roman army was drawn into an ambuscade, and both he and his colleague fell.

**Arverni**, *ōrum*; N. pl.: a powerful tribe of Gaul, whose territories lay between the sources of the *Allier* and *Dordogne*, branches of the *Loire* and *Garonne*. The district is now *Auvergne*. The name is from *ar* or *al*, "high;" and *verann* (*fearann*), "country" or "region."

**Atrēbātes**, *um*; N. m. pl.: *the Atrebates*, a native of *Gallia Belgica* of high renown for valour. Their territory lay S. E. from that of the Morini and S. W. from that of the Nervii, answering to the modern *Artois* in the *Department du Pas de Calais*. Their chief town was Nemetacum (now *Arras*, or as the Flemings calls it, *Atrecht*).

**Aulerci**, *ōrum*; N. m. pl.: *the Aulerci*, a general term applied to four different tribes in Gaul:

(1) *Aulerci Brannovices*, clients of the Aedui, whose territory lay between the latter and the Sequani, and corresponded to the modern *Brienois*.

(2) *Aulerci Cenomanni*: N. W. from the former, above the Andes and Turones; and west of the Carnutes, their country corresponded to the modern *Department de la Sarthe*. Their capital was Suindinum, afterwards Canomanni, now *Mauz*.

(3) *Aulerci Eburones*: often called simply *Eburones*, N. W. of the Carnutes along the west bank of the Sequana (*Seine*), above Lutetia (*Paris*). Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards Eburovices, now *Evreux*.

(4) *Aulerci Diablintes*, north-west of the Cenomanni, their chief town was Neodunum, afterward Diablintes (now *Jableins*).

**Axōna**, *ae*; N. m.: *Axona*, a river of Gaul, passing through the country of the Remi. It is now called *Aisne*. It flows S. W., joins the Isara (*Isère*), and both fall into the Sequana (*Seine*).

## B.

**Bācūlus**, *i*; N. m.: *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion of the first rank in the army of Caesar who on several occasions distinguished himself for his valour (B. II., C. xxv.; B. III., C. v.; B. VI., C. xxxviii.).

**Bälēares**, *tum*; N. m. pl.: A name given to the people of the islands of Majorca and Minorca off the coast of Spain. The name was also applied to the islands themselves. The word is probably from *βαλλειν* "to throw" or "shoot" and referred to the skill of the people in the use of the sling or the arrow.

**Belgae**, *ārum*; N. m. pl.: a people of Ancient Gaul, separated from the Celteae in the time of Caesar by the Rivers Matrona (*Marne*) and Sequana (*Seine*).

**Bellōvāci**, *ōrum*; N. masc. pl.: the *Bellovaci*, a powerful nation of the Belgae, to the north of the Parisii. Their capital was Caesaramágus, afterwards Bellovaci, now *Beauvaisis*.

**Bibracte**, is; N. n.: a large town of the Aedui in Gaul on the *Arroux*, one of the tributaries of the *Loire*. It was afterwards called Augustodunum, which name still remains in the modern *Autun*.

**Bibrax**, *actis*; N. n.: *Bibrax*, a town of the Remi, eight miles from the *Axona*, (now *Aisne*). Some say it corresponds to the modern *Bray*, others to *Braisne*, others to *Bièvre*.

**Bitūrīges**, *um*; N. m. pl.: a name given to two nations of Gaul:

(1) *Bituriges Cubi*, a people of Gallia Celtica, west of the Aedui, their chief city was Avaricum, afterwards Bituriges, (now *Bourges*), and their territory corresponded to a part of the modern *Berry* and *Bourbonnais*, in the *Department du Cher et de l'Indre*.

(2) *Bituriges Vivisci* were situated near the mouth of the Garumna (*Garonne*) and their capital was Burdigala (now *Bordeaux*).

**Boduognātūs**, *i*; N. m.: a leader of the Nervii in the attack made by Caesar.

**Boii**, *ōrum*; N. m. pl.: a people of Celtic Gaul, who dwelt on the waters of the *Suileac*. From Gaul they passed into Germany and settled in the present Bohemia, a corruption of *Bauirheim*, i.e., the residence of the Boii. They afterwards went to *Bavaria*, a corruption of *Baaria*. Their name means "the terrible ones," from Celtic *bo*, "fear."

**Bratuspantium**, *i*; N. n.: a town of the Bellovaci, near the village of *Gratepeuche*, between *Breteuil* and *Montidier*.

**Britannia**, *ae*; N. f.: the island of *Great Britain*.

## C.

**Cabūrus**, *i*; N. m.; Caius Valerius Caburus, a Gallic chieftain who obtained the right of Roman citizenship (*civitas*). He is afterwards mentioned as holding the supreme power among the Helvii (B. VII., C. LXV.).

**Caerōēsi**, *ōrum*; N. m. pl.: the *Caeroesi*, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Treveri and the river *Mosa* (*Meuse*), who along with the Condrusi, Eburones, and Paemani went under the general term of the Germans. According to some the name still exists in the little river *Chiers*, between *Mouson* and *Sedan*. (B. II., C. IV.)

**Caesar**, *āris*; N. m.: Caius Julius Caesar: see Introduction.

**Cāiūs**, *i*; N. m.; a Roman *praenomen*.

**Calēti**, *ōrum*, also *Calētes*, *iūm*; N. pl.: the *Caleti* or *Caletes*, a people of Gallia Belgica. They probably occupied the district not far from the neighbourhood of the modern *Rouen*.

**Carnūtēs**, *um*; N. pl.: the *Carnutes*, a nation of Gaul, between the *Sequana* (*Seine*) and the *Liger* (*Loire*) and west of the Parisii. They were clients of the Remi. Their territory was the chief seat of the Druids, who held here their courts of justice. Their chief town was Autricum (now *Chartres*): B. II., C. XXXV.; B. V., C. XXV., XXXI., LIV., etc.

**Cassiānūs**, *a, um*; adj.: of or belonging to Cassius.

**Cassius**, *L.*; N. m.: Lucius Cassius was consul 107 B.C. In that year a coalition was formed of the Cimbri and Teutones. After devastating Gaul, they united with the Helvetii and resolved to attack the Roman *Provincia* at several points. The Helvetian tribe *Tigurini* under Divico attacked the territory of the Allobroges by the bridge of Geneva and the fords of the Rhone. The rest of the Helvetii moved south. The Romans divided their forces. Cassius, the consul, hastened to Geneva, while his *legatus*, Scaurus, moved against the combined horde of Cimbri and Teutones. Both commanders were unfortunate. Cassius and his army were cut to pieces on the borders of Lake Lemannus (*Jeneva*), while Scaurus was defeated and taken prisoner.

**Casticus**, *i*; N. m.: a chief of the Sequani, on whom Orgetorix prevailed to seize the supreme power in his native State.

Catamantoloedis, *is*; N. m.: the father of Casticus.

Caturiges, *um*; N. m. pl.: a Gallie nation dwelling among the Cottian Alps. Their capital was Caturiges, traces of which are still to be found at *Courres*, between *Gap* and *Embrun* in the department of *des Hautes-Alpes*.

Celtae, *oram*; N. m. pl.: one of the tribes that inhabited Ancient Gaul. The word is derived either from *celit* or *cel-tach*, "an inhabitant of the forest," or from the root *cel*, "high;" (cp. *celsus*, *columna*) hence *Celtae* means "highlanders."

Centrōnes, *um*; N. pl. m.: a people of Gaul who dwelt among the Alpes Graies. They were defeated by Caesar in several battles. Their chief town was *Ferum Claudi Centronum* (now *Centron*).

Cimbēriūs, *i*; N. m.: *Cimbrius*, a brother of Nasua, who along with the latter was joint commander of the Suevi when they were endeavoring to cross the Rhine and form a junction with Ariovistus. When the German princes were overthrown they retreated (B. I., C. xxxvii.).

Cimbri, *orum*; N. pl. m.: a people of Central Europe who invaded the Roman empire in the time of Marius. They were a branch of the Celtic tribe. They are supposed to have had their origin in the Cimbric Chersonese (*Jutland*).

Considius, *i*; N. m.: *Publius Considius* was an officer in Caesar's army. He was employed in the war against the Helvetii.

Condrūsi, *oram*; N. m. pl.: the *Condruſi*, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the right bank of the Mosa (*Meuse*), in the district of the modern *Namur* and *Liege*.

Cotta, *ae*; N. m.: *Lucius Arunculeius Cotta*: see *Arunculeius*.

Cnēius, *i*; N. m.: *Cneius*, a Roman *praenomen*.

Crassus, *i*; N. m.: *M. Licinius Crassus*, surnamed *Dives*, was a member of the first triumvirate. He was noted for his enormous wealth. At *Carthago* he fell in battle against the Parthians.

Crētes, *um*; N. m. pl.: the *Cretans*: the inhabitants of Crete (now *Candia*), an island in the Eastern part of the Mediterranean Sea, celebrated for their skill in archery.

Curiosolitae, *arum*, N. m. pl.: the *Curiolitae*, an Armorican nation in Gaul, north of the Veneti and northwest of the Redones. They occupied the district of the modern *St. Malo*, between *Dinant* and *Lamballe*, in Brittany (B. II., C. xxxiv.).

## D.

Divico, *onis*; N. m.; an influential noble among the Helvetii. He was the leader of the embassy sent to Caesar by the Helvetii after their defeat.

Divitiācus, *i*; N. m.: a leading nobleman of the Aedui, who possessed great influence with Caesar in consequence of his fidelity and attachment to the Romans.

Dubis, *is*; N. m.; the *Dubis* (now the *Doubs*), was a river of Gaul, rising in the chain of Jura, and falling after a course of sixty leagues into the Arar (now *Saône*), near Cabillonum (now *Chalons*): B. I., C. xxxviii.

Dumnōrix, *ix*; N. m.: a powerful and ambitious chieftain of the Aedui, and brother of Divitiacus. He was disaffected towards Caesar and the Romans, and when the former was on the point of setting out to Britain, and had ordered Dumnorix to accompany him, the Aeduan on a sudden marched away with his cavalry. He was overtaken and slain.

## E.

Ebürōnes, *um*; N. pl. m.: the *Eburones*, a nation of Gallia Belgica to the S. W. of the Ubii. Caesar mentions them as Germans. Their territory lay on both sides of the Mosa (*Meuse*), from the modern *Liege* to *Aiz-la Chapelle*. Their chief town was *Aduatuca* (B. II., C. iv.).

## F.

Flaccus, *i*; N. m.: *Flaccus*, a Roman *praenomen*.

## G.

**Gabinīus, i;** N. m.: *Aulus Gabinius* was tribune of the Commons 69 B. C., and proposed the *lex Gabinia* giving Pompey complete charge of the Roman fleet in the war against the pirates.

**Galba, ae;** N. m.: *Galba*, King of the Suessiones, appointed commander of the Belgic forces. After the victory of Caesar, his sons were delivered up to the Roman general as hostages. (B. II., C. iv., xiii.). His name is derived from the German *gēlb*, "yellow," or from *kalb*, "a calf."

**Galli, örūm;** N. m. pl.: the inhabitants of *Gallia*; the Gauls.

**Gallia, ae;** N. f.: *Gaul*, corresponding to France and the northern Italian provinces of Piedmont, Venetia, and Lombardy. Gaul was divided in *Gallia Transalpina*, or *Uttierior*, or Gaul beyond the Alps, comprising nearly all France; and *Gallia Cisalpina*, or *Citerior*, or Gaul, this side of the Alps, i.e., Northern Italy.

**Gārumna, ae;** N. f.: now the *Garonne*, a river of Gaul. It runs from the Pyrenees (*montes Pyrennaei*) and empties into the Bay of Biscay (*Oceanus Cantabricus*). According to Caesar, the Garumna separated Aquitania from Gallia Celtica.

**Gēnāva, ae;** N. f.: a city of the Allobroges, at the Western extremity of Lake Lemmanus (*Geneva*) on the south bank of the river Rhodanus (*Rhone*).

**Germāni, örūm;** N. pl. m.: *Germans*.

**Germānia, ae;** N. f.: a district of Central Europe inhabited by the Germans. The word is probably from either (1) *wer*, "war" (the Romans softening the *w* to *g*) and *mann*, "a man," so the *Germanni* means "warriors," or (2) from the Celtic *gerr*, "war," and *mann*, "a man." Other derivations are given.

**Graecus, a, um;** adj.: *Grecian*, a name given to an inhabitant of Greece, a country of Southern Europe.

**Graiōcēli, örūm;** N. pl. m.: a tribe of Gaul dwelling near the Alps.

## H.

**Harūdes, um;** N. pl. m.; a German tribe, in the vicinity of the Marcomanni, between the Rhine and the head waters of the river Danube. This district was in the vicinity of the present cities of *Rothweil* and *Fursternberg*.

**Helvētius, a, um;** adj.: *Helvetian*.

**Helvētii, örūm;** N. pl. m.: a nation of Gaul conquered by Caesar. It is generally supposed that Helvetia corresponded to modern *Switzerland*, but the boundaries of the ancient province were of less extent than the modern Switzerland, being bounded on the north by the Rhenus and Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*); on the south by the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) and Lake Lemannus (*Geneva*), and on the west by Mt. Jura.

**Hispānia, ae;** N. f.: *Spain*. The name is derived from a corrupt form of *ēσπερια*, "the western land;" cp. *ēσπερος*, "the evening star;" *vesper*, "evening."

## I.

**Iccius, i;** N. m.: *Iccius*, a nobleman of the Remi, sent along with Andoecumborius on an embassy to acknowledge the submission of their nation to Caesar.

**Illyricum, i;** N. n.: *Illyrium*, the modern district occupied by *Dalmatia*, *Bosnia*, *Herzegovina*.

**Itālia, ae;** N. f.: *Italy*; a country of Southern Europe.

## J.

**Jūra, ae;** N. f.: a range of mountains extending from the Rhodanus (*Rhone*) to the Rhenus (*Rhine*) and separating the territory of the Helvetii from that of the Sequani. The word is from the Celtic, *Jou-raj*, "the domain of God" or "Jupiter."

## L.

**Lābiēnus, i;** N. m.: *Titus Labienus* was one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic wars. In the beginning of the civil wars he left Caesar for Pompey. He escaped at Pharsalia, but fell at Munda.

**Lātōbriges, um**; or **Latobrigi, órum**; N. m. pl.; a people of Belgic Gaul. They extended along the banks of the Rhine, about ninety miles west of Lake Brigantius (*Constance*).

**Lemannus, i**; N. m.: now Lake of *Geneva*, separating the territory of the Helvetii from that of Gaul. It is about 45 miles long by 11 wide.

**Lēuci, órum**; the *Leuci*, a people of Gallia Belgica.

**Lingōnes, um**; N. m. pl.; a people of Gaul, whose territories inhibited Mons *Vasgesus* (*Vosges*), and consequently, the source of the Mosa (*Meuse*) and Matrona (*Marne*). They had a town named also *Lingones* (now *Lutres*) and their territory corresponded to the modern department of *de la Haute-Marne*.

**Liscus, i**; N. m.: *Liseus* was chief magistrate or *Vergobret* of the Aedui, who gave to Caesar information of the conduct and designs of Dumnonix.

**Lucius**: Lucius, a Roman *praenomen*.

## M.

**Māgētōbrīa, ae**; N. f.: a town, near which Ariovistus defeated the combined forces of the Gauls. Some say it corresponds to the modern *Moësite de Broie*, near the village of *Pontailleur*: others to *Bingium*, now *Bingen*.

**Marcomāni, órum**: the *Marcomani*, a German people. The word is from German *mark*; English *march*: hence the name means *march*, or, *border men*.

**Marcus**: a Roman *praenomen*.

**Mārius, i**; N. m.: *Caius Marius*, a celebrated Roman general, opponent of Sulla. (See *Roman History*.)

**Matrōna, ae**; N. f.; a river of Gaul, now the *Marne*, which formed part of the old boundary between *Gallia Belgica* and *Gallia Celta*.

**Mēnāpii, órum**; N. pl. m.: the *Menapii*, a nation of Gallia Belgica, occupying both sides of the lower Rhine. Their fortress was called *Castellum Menapiorum* (now *Kessel*) on the Mosa (*Meuse*): B. II., c. IV.

**Messāla, ae**; N. m.: *Marcus Valerius Messala* was consul along with *Marcus Piso* B.C. 61.

**Mettius, i**; N. m.; *Mettius*, a Roman officer in Caesar's army.

**Mōrīni, órum**; N. m. pl.: the *Morini*, a tribe of Gallia Belgica, whose territory lay in the district of Calais and Dunkirk, a part of their territory bordering on the sea. The name means "sea people": being derived from the Celtic *mōr*, "the sea": ep. Lat. *mare*.

## N.

**Namēius, i**; N. m.: a Chieftain of the Helvetii, sent along with Verudoctius at the head of an embassy to Caesar.

**Nasūa, ae**; N. m.: Nasua, a chief of the Suevi.

**Nemētes, um**; N. pl. m.: the *Nemetes*, a German tribe, along the west bank of the river Rhine occupying part of the *Grand Duchy of Baden*. Their chief town was *Noviomagus* (now *Spires*).

**Nervii, órum**; N. pl. m.: the *Nervii*, a powerful nation of Gallia Belgica, whose territory was N.E. of that of the Atrebates. The river Sealdis (*Scheldt*) passed through part of their territories. Their chief town was *Bagaeum* (now *Bavay*), which was afterwards supplanted by *Cameracum*, (now *Cambray*), and *Turnaeum*, (now *Tournay*).

**Noreia, ae**; N. f.: the capital of Noricum.

**Norica**: see *Noricum*.

**Nōricum, i**; N. n.: a province of the Roman empire, bounded on the north by the Danube, on the west by Vindelicia and Rhaetia, on the east by Pannonia, and on the south by Illyricum and Gallia Cisalpina. The chief town was *Noreia*, the capital of Norica or the *Nericci*. It was in days of Caesar besieged by the Boii.

**Nōricus, a, um**; adjective: *of or belonging to Noricum*.

**Nōviōdtūnum**, *i*; N. n.: *Noviodunum*. There were three towns of this name in Gaul: (1) Noviodunum Suessionum, a town of the Suessiones, now *Saintes*: (2) Noviodunum Aeduorum, belonging to the Aedui, on the banks of Liger (*Loire*), now *Nevers*: (3) Noviodunum Biturigum, a city of the Bituriges, now *Neury-sur-Barançon*.

**Nūmīdāe**, *ārum*; N. pl. m.: *the Numidians*, a people of Northern Africa, employed in the Roman armies as light skirmishers.

### O.

**Ocēānus**, *i*; N. m.: the Atlantic Ocean.

**Ocēlūm**, *i*; N. m.: a city among the Cottian Alps; now *Usselau* in *Piedmont*.

**Orgētōrix**, *īgis*; N. m.: a nobleman among the Helvetii, ranking first, according to Caesar, in birth and riches. Full of ambition, he formed a conspiracy among the nobles and prevailed on his people to seek a country other than their native land. He was chosen to carry out the plans of the conspirators. His conduct fell under suspicion and he was put on trial. By the aid of his retainers he managed to rescue himself, but shortly afterwards died, as was suspected, by his own hand.

**Osiāmīi**, *ōrum*; N. pl. m.: *the Osismīi*, a people of *Gallia Celtica*, in the N.W. of Gaul. They occupied the part of modern *Brittany*, around cape Finisterre. In their country was Brivates Portus (now *Brest*).

### P.

**P=Publius**: a Roman praenomen.

**Paemāni**, *ōrum*; N. pl. m.: *the Paemani*, a people of Gallia Belgica, their territory lay on the eastern side of the Mosa (*Meuse*), not far from the modern *Liege*: (B. II., c. IV.).

**Pediūs**, *i*; N. m.: *Quintus Pedius*, a nephew or great-nephew of Caesar. He is spoken of as one of the *legati* of Caesar: (B. III., c. II.).

**Piso**, *ōnis*; N. m.: *Lucius Piso*, consul 61 B.C., with M. Messala.

**Piso**, *ōnis*; N. m.: *Lucius Piso* was consul 112 B.C. Five years after he served as lieutenant under the consul Cassius, but was slain, together with him, by the Tugurini. He was ancestor of L. Piso, Caesar's father-in-law.

**Piso**, *ōnis*; N. m.: *Marcus Piso*, consul with Messala.

**Pyrennaei**, *scil. montes*: the *Pyrenees*, a range of mountains separating Gaul from Spain. The derivation of the word is from the Celtic *pyren* or *pyrn*, "a high mountain." From this root may be derived *Brenner* in the Tyrol; *Pyern*, in Austria; *Fernor*, in the Tyrol.

### Q.

**Q=Quintus**: a Roman praenomen.

### R.

**Raurāci**, *ōrum*; N. m.: a Gallic tribe above the Helvetii and between the Sequani and the Rhine. Their chief town was Rauracum, afterwards called *Augusta Rauracorum*, and now *Augst*, a small village near *Basle*.

**Rēdōnes**, *um*; N. pl. m.: *the Redones*, a tribe of *Gallia Lugdunensis*, occupying the district near the modern *Rennes*.

**Rēmi**, *ōrum*; N. pl. m.: *the Remi*, a powerful Gallic nation whose capital was Dürō-cortōnum, the modern *Rheims*.

**Rhēnus**, *i*; N. m.: the *Rhine*, rising in the Leopontine Alps, a little above Mt. St. Gothard, in the country of the *Grisons*. It passes through Lake Brigantinus (*Constance*), afterwards through Lake Acronius (*Tell*), nearly west to Basilia (*Basle*). At this point it flows northerly, receiving various tributary streams, till it enters the North Sea. The derivation is from the Aryan root *seu*, "to flow."

**Rhōdānus**, *i*; N. m.: the *Rhone*, a river rising in the Leopontine Alps, not more than two leagues from the sources of the Rhine. It passes through Lake Lemanus (*Geneva*), and flows in a swift current to the Sinus Gallicus (*Gulf of Lyons*). The word is derived also from the Aryan root *sru*, "to flow."

Rōma, *ae*; N. f.: *Rome*: (derived from *sru*, "to flow," properly *Srouma*, "the stream town.")

Rōmānus, *a, um*: *Roman*.

Rutēni, *ōrum*; N. pl.: the *Ruteni*, a people of *Gallia Aquitania*.

## S.

Sabīnus, *i*; N. m.: *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, one of the *legati* of Caesar.

Sabis, *is*; N. m.: the *Sabis* (now *Sambre*), a river of Gallia Belgica, rising among the *Nervii*, and joining the *Mosa* (*Meuse*) in the territory of the *Aduatuci*.

Santōni, *ōrum*; or *Santōnes*, *um*; N. m. pl., a people of Gallia Celtica, whose territories lay between the *Pictones* on the north and the *Garumna* on the south. Their chief town was *Mediolanum*, called *Santones*, now *Saintes*.

Sedūsii, *ōrum*; N. pl. m.: the *Sedusii*: a German tribe, forming part of the army of *Ariovistus*.

Segūsāni, *ōrum*; N. m. pl.; a people of Gallia Celtica to the south of the *Aedu* and in whose territory lay the city of *Lugdunum* (*Lyons*). The chief town of their tribe was *Forum Segusianorum* (now *Feurs*).

Sēnōnēs, *um*; N. pl.: the *Senones*, a people of Gallia Lugdunensis, whose capital was *Agendicum* (now *Lens*).

Sēquāna, *ar*; N. f.; a river of Gaul, rising in the extreme northern part of the territory of the *Aedui* and falling into the *Oceanus Britannicus* (*English Channel*).

Sēquānus, *a, um*; adj.: a *Sequanian*. The *Sequani* were a people of Gallia Celtica. They called in the aid of *Ariovistus* to aid them against the *Aedui*. After the defeat of their German allies, they severely felt the power of the *Aedui*. Caesar, however, restored them to their former power. Their chief town was *Vesontio* (now *Besançon*).

Sesūvii, *ōrum*; N. pl. m.: the *Sesuvii*, a people of Gallia Celtica, who occupied the modern diocese of *Slež*.

Süessiōnes, *um*; N. pl. m.; the *Suessiones*, a Gallic people who occupied the district around the modern town of *Soissons*.

Suēvus, *a, um*; adj.: of, or belonging to the *Suevi*, a powerful tribe in North-Eastern Germany.

Sulla, *ae*; N. m.: *Lucius Cornelius Sulla*, a celebrated Roman. He served as quæstor to *Marius* in Africa and afterwards was the great political opponent of his old commander. After gaining the highest offices of the State, he gave up the dictatorship, and died B.C. 79.

## T.

Teutōnes, *um*; also *Teutōni* *ōrum*; N. m. pl.: a name given to a branch of the great Germanic family. Along with the *Cimbri* they devastated Northern Italy and Gaul from 113 to 102 B.C.

Tigūrinus, *a, um*; adj.: a canton of the *Helvetii*, near Lake *Zürich*.

Titūrius: see *Sabinus*.

Tōlōsāties, *um*; N. pl.: a people of Aquitania. Their chief town was *Tolosa* (now *Toulouse*).

Tibrocci, *ōrum*; N. pl. m.: the *Tibrocci*, a people of Germanic origin. Their capital was *Brocomagus* (now *Brunt*).

Trēvēri, *ōrum*; N. pl. m.: the *Treveri*, a nation of Gallia Belgica, N.E. of the Rhine, between the *Mosa* (*Meuse*) and the *Rhenus* (*Rhine*). Their chief city was *Augusta Trevorum* (now *Treves*).

Tulingi, *ōrum*; N. pl.: a German tribe, whose territories lay to the north of the *Helvetii*. The modern *Stuhlingen* marks the site of the ancient capital.

Turōnes, *um*; N. pl. m.: the *Turonis*, a powerful nation of Gallia Celtica, which lay along the banks of the *Liger* (*Loire*). Their capital was *Caesarodunum*, afterwards *Turones*, (now *Tours*.)

## U.

**Unelli**, *ōrum*; N. pl. m.: *the Unelli*, a people lying to the N.W. of what is now called *Normandy*. Their chief town was *Coriallum* (now *Gouril*).

## V.

**Välérius**, *i*; N. m.: *Valerius*: a Roman *praenomen*.

**Vangiōnes**, *um*; N. pl. m., *the Vangiones*, a German people on the Rhine in the neighbourhood of the modern *Worms*.

**Velōcasses**, *ium*; N. pl. m.: *the Velocasses*, also called *Bellocasii*, a people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was *Rotomagus* (now *Rouen*) on the north bank of the *Sequana* (*Seine*).

**Vēnēti**, *ōrum*; N. pl. m.: *the Veneti*, a people of Gallia Cisalpina, in the district of modern *Venetia*.

**Veromandūi**, *ōrum*; N. pl. m.; *the Veromandui*, a people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was *Augusta Veromanduorum* (now *St. Quentin*), in the old division of France called *Veromandois*.

**Vērūdoctiūs**, *i*; N. m.: a chief of the *Helvetii*, sent along with *Nameius* was at the head of an embassy to Caesar. Their object was to request permission to march through the Roman province.

**Voctio**, *ōnis*; N. m.: *Voctio*, a king of Noricum: whose sister was a wife of *Ariovistus*.

**Vōcontii**, *ōrum*; N. m. pl.: a tribe of Southern Gaul, lying to the east of the Rhone. Their chief town was *Dea* (now *Die*).

## ABBREVIATIONS.

a. or act.	active.	irr. or irreg.	irregular.
abl.	ablati <sup>v</sup> e.	m.	masculine.
acc.	accusati <sup>v</sup> e.	n. or neut.	neuter.
acc. to	according to.	nom.	nominative.
adj.	adjective.	num.	numeral.
adv.	adverb.	obsol.	obsolete.
c=cum	with.	ord.	ordinal.
cf.=confer.	compare.	P. or part.	participle.
comm. gen.	common gender.	Pa.	participial adj.
comp.	comparative degree.	pass.	passive.
conj.	conjunction.	perf.	perfect.
contr.	contracted.	pers.	person, personal.
dat.	dative.	pluperf.	pluperfect.
def. defect.	defective.	plur.	plural.
dem. demonstr.	demonstrative.	pos.	positive degree.
dep.	deponent.	poss.	possessive.
desid.	desiderative.	prep.	preposition.
dissyll.	dissyllable.	pres.	present.
esp.	especially.	prob.	probably.
etym.	etymology	pron.	pronoun.
f.	feminine.	¶ [§]	paragraph in Public Schools Latin Primer.
folld.	followed.	rel.	relative.
fr.	from.	Sans.	Sanskrit.
freq.	frequentative.	semi-dep.	semi-deponent.
fut.	future.	sing.	singular.
gen.	genitive.	subj.	subjunctive.
gov.	governing.	sup.	superlative; supine.
Gr.	Greek.	trissyl.	trisyllable.
imperf.	imperfect.	t. t.	technical term.
inch.	inchoative.	uncontr.	uncontracted.
ind. or indic.	indicative.	v. a.	verb active.
indecl.	indeclinable.	v. dep.	verb deponent.
indef.	indefinite.	v. n.	verb neuter.
inf. or infin.	infinitive.	voc.	vocative.
intens.	intensive.	=	equal to.
interj.	interjection.		
interrog.	interrogative.		

N.B.—The figures before v.a., v. dep., and v.n. denote the conjugation of the verb.

Where the etymology is not given, the word is of very uncertain or unknown origin.

Such forms and meanings of words, as do not belong to the text are not inserted in the Vocabulary.

# VOCABULARY.

## A

**ā**; see ab.

**ab** (ā), prep. gov. abl. [akin to Gk. ἀπό: Eng. "off"] *From; in the direction of; on; by.*

**ab-do**, didi, ditum, dēre, 3. v. a. [ab, "away;" do, "to put"] *To hide, conceal.*

**ab-dūco**, duxi, ductum, dūcēre, 3. v.a. āb, ["away," dūco, "to lead"] *To lead away.*

**abs-ens**, entis. Pa. [abs-um, "to be absent"] *Absent.*

**abs-tinēo**, tñūi, tentum, tinēre, 2. v. n. [for abs-ténēo; fr. abs (=ab), "from;" ténēo, "to hold"] *To refrain, abstain.*

**ab-sum**, fūi, esse, v.n. [āb, "away;" sum, "to be"] *To be away; to be absent or distant—With Dat. of person: To be wanting to a person; i.e. to be of no aid, or service to one.*

**ac**; see atque.

**ac-cēdo**, cessi, cessum, cēdere, 3. v.n. [for ad-cēdo; fr. ad, "to;" cēdo, "to go"] *To go to or up to; to draw near, approach; to be added.*

**acceptus**, a, um, P. perf. pass. of accep-tio: With Dat. *Agreeable, or acceptable, to.*

**ac-cīdo**, cīdi, no sup., cīdēre, 3. v. n. [for ad-cādo; fr. ād, "upon;" cādo, "to fall"] *To fall out, happen, come to pass.*

**ac-cīp̄io**, cēpi, ceptum, cip̄ere, 3 v. a. [for ad-cāp̄io; fr. ād, "to;" cāp̄io, "to take"] *To receive.*

**ac-clivis**, e, adj. [for ad-cliv-is; fr. ād, "up, upward;" cliv-us, "a hill"] *Up-hill, inclining or sloping upwards; ascending.*

**accliv-itas**, Itatis, f. [accliv-is, "up-hill, ascending"] *An acclivity, ascent, rise.*

**ac-commōdo**, commōdāvi, commō-datum, commōdāre, 1. v. a. [for ad-com-mādo; fr. ād, "to;" commōdo, "to adjust"] *To fit on.*

**ac-curro**, curri and cūcurri, cursum, currēre, 3.v.n. [for ad-curro; fr. ād, "to;" curro, "to run"] With ad: *To run to or up to; to hasten up to.*

**ac-cūs-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for ad-caus-o; fr. ād, "to;" caus-a, "a judicial process"] *To bring to trial, chide, blame.*

**ācer**, ācris, ācre, adj. [root AC, "sharp;" cp. acuo, acus; ἀκωκή; English, edge] *Sharp, fierce.*

**āc-ervus**, ervi, m. [usually referred to root AC, "to make pointed, to point"] *A heap.*

**āc-ies**, iēi, f. [AC, root of ācū-o, "to sharpen;" see acer] *Of the eyes: Keen glance or look; keenness. Order, or line, of battle. An army in order of battle.*

**ācr-iter**, adv. [ācer, acr-is, "sharp"] *Sharply, vigorously.*

**ād**, prep. gov. acc.: *To, towards; up to; at, by, near to; for the sake of appearances. With Gerund and Gerundives: For the purpose of.*

**ād-aēquo**, aequāvi, aequātum, aequāre, 1. v. a. [ād, "to;" aequo, "to make equal"] *To bring to an equality;—cursum ad-aēquare, to keep pace with them.*

**ād-āmo**, āmāvi, āmātum, āmāre, 1. v. a. [ād, to denote "commencement; āmo, "to love"] *To begin to love, to conceive an affection for.*

**ad-dūco**, duxi, ductum, dūcēre, 3. v. a. [ād, "to;" dūco, "to lead"] *To lead to or up, prompt, induce.*

**ād-ēo**, ivi or ii, itum, īre, 4. v. a. and n. [ād, "to;" ēo, "to go"] *To go to approach.*

**ād-ēquīto**, ēquītāvi, ēquītātum, ēquītāre, 1.v.a. [ād, "to;" equito, "to ride"] With ad: *To ride to or towards; to ride up.*

**ād-hibēo**, hibūi, hibitum, hibēre, 2. v. a. [for ād-hābēo; fr. ād, "at;" hābēo, "to have"] *To summon to.*

**ādi-tus**, tūs, m. [ādāo, "to go to"] *Means of approach, access.*

**ad-jīcio**, jēci, jectum, jīcēre, 3. v. a. [for ad-jācio; fr. ād, "without force;" jācio, "to cast"] *To fling, throw, hurl.*

**ad-jūvo**, jūvi, jūtum, jūvāre, 1. v. a. [ad, "without force;" jūvo, "to assist"] *To assist, help, aid.*

**ad-ministro.** mīnistrāvi, mīnistrātūm, mīnistrāre, 1. v. a. [ād, "without force;" ministro, "to serve"] *To take in hand, execute, perform.*

**ad-mīror,** mīrātūs sum, mīrāri, 1. v. dep. [ad, "without force;" mīror, "to wonder"] *To wonder or be astonished.*

**ad-mittō,** mīsi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [ad, "to;" mittō, "to allow to go"] *Of a horse as Object: To give the reins to.*

**ādōlesc-ens,** entis, comm. gen. [P. pres. of ādōlesc-o, "to grow up;" as Subst.] *A youth.*

**ādōlescent-ia,** īae, f. [ādōlescens, ādōlescent-is] *Youth.*

**ād-ōrior,** ortus sum, īrīri. 4. v. dep. [ād, "against;" īrīor, "to rise"] *To attack, assault, assail.*

**adsci-sco,** vi, tum, scēre, 3.v.a. incep.: [adsci-o, "to take to one's self knowingly; to admit"] *To take to one's self; to unite, join.*

**ad-sum,** fūi, esse, v. n. [ād, "at;" sum, "to be"] *To be present: to be at hand.*

**adven-tus,** tūs, m. [advēn-īo, "to come to"] *Approach, arrival.*

**adver-sus,** sa, sum, adj. [for advert-sus; fr. advert-o, "to turn towards"] *Opposite, unfavorable, unsuccessful.*

**ad-vertō,** verti, versum, vertēre, 3. v. a. [ād, "towards;" vertō, "to turn"] *To observe, recognize, perceive by directing the mind towards an object.*

**aedific-ium,** li, n. [aedific-o, "to build"] *A building of any kind.*

**aegr-ē,** adv. [aeger, aegr-i, "feeble, sick"] *With difficulty or effort; scarcely.*

**aequāl-iter,** adv. [aequāl-is, "equal"] *Equally, regularly.*

**aequ-itas,** Itātis, f. [aequ-us, "even" also "just"] *Evenness; justice, fairness.*

**aequ-o,** īvi, ītūm, īre, 1. v. a. [aequ-us, "equal"] *To make, or render, equal; to equalize.*

**aequus,** a, um, adj. [root IR, "to make like or even :" cp. imitor, aemulus; īkōw] *Equal.*

**aes-tas,** tātis, f. [root IDH, "to burn :" cp. aedes, aestus; aiθōw, aiθēp] *Summer.*

**aes-timo,** timāvi, timātūm, timāre, 1. v. a. [prob. for aer-timo; fr. aēs, aer-is, "money"] *To reckon, consider.*

**aestū-ārium,** īrīi, n. [aestus, un-contr. Gen. aestū-is, "a tide"] *A part of the coast which the sea alternately covers and leaves; a salt marsh, a morass.*

**ae-tas,** tātis, f. [for aevitās: cp.

aevum, aeternus (=aeviternus): Gothic, avis, "time;" German, ewig, "ever;" Gk. aiώr, aeí; all from root AIV, a lengthened form of i, "to go"] *Age, time of life; old age.*

**af-fēro,** attūli, allātūm, af-fere, 3.v.a. [for ad-fero; fr. ad, "to;" fēro, "to bring"] *To bring, take, or carry to or up to; to cause, impart.*

**af-ficio,** fēci, fectum, fictēre, 3. v. a. [for ad-faciō; fr. ad, "to;" fēcio, "to do"] *To treat or use either well or ill.—When folld. by Acc. of person or thing and Abl. of thing, the phrase is usually rendered by a verb or verbal expression akin to the Lat. Abl.: e.g. afficere aliquem dolore, to grieve or annoy one, and in Pass. construction, affici dolore, to be grieved or annoyed; with, supplicio, to punish.*

**affin-itas,** Itātis, f. [affin-is, "a kinsman or relation by marriage"] *Relationship by marriage, kinship, connexion.*

**āger,** īgri, m. [root AG, "to drive:" first applied to driven cattle, then to where they are driven: cp. Gk. ἀγός; Gothic, akrs; German, acker; English, acre] *A field, land. Plur.—The fields, the country; territory, district.*

**agger,** īris, m. [aggēr-o (ad, "to;" gero, "to carry") "to bring to a place"] *Materials for constructing a mound; a mound raised for military purposes.*

**aggrēdīor,** gressus sum, grēdi, 3. v. dep. [for ad-grādīor; fr. ad, "to;" grādīor, "to step"] *In a hostile sense: To attack, assault, assail.*

**ag-men,** minis, n. [āg-o, "to set in motion"] *An army on march; a column.—Of troops: agmen claudere, to close the line of march, i.e., to bring up the rear.*

**āgo,** īgi, actum, īgēre, 3. v. a. [see ager] *To drive, set in motion, bring forward; to do, perform, effect. Without Object: To treat, speak. With ut and Subj.: To aim at doing, etc.; to endeavor or strive to do. With gratias: To give or return thanks, to thank. Of a court of justice: To hold.*

**ālācr-itas,** Itātis, f. [ālācer, alacer-is, "eager"] *Eagerness, ardour, alacrity.*

**āl-āriūs,** īria, īriūm, adj. [āl-a, "a wing" of an army] *Of, or belonging to, or on the wings of an army—As Subst.: īlāri, īrum, m. plur., soldiers in the wing of an army.*

**ālī-as,** adv. [āli-us, "another"] *At another time:—āllas.....āllas, at one time.....at another time; now.....now.*

**ālī-ēnūs,** īna, īnum, adj. [ālius, "another"] *Of, or belonging to, another.*

ăliquam-diu, adv. [aliquam (adv.) "in some degree" (only used in connection with diu and multus); diu, "for a long time"] *For some long, or considerable, time.*

ăliquid, adv. [adverbial neut. sing. of aliquis] *In some degree, to some extent, somewhat.*

ăli-quid, quid, (Gen. ălicūjus; Dat. ălicui; Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. not used) indef. pron. subst. [alius, quis] *Someone, somebody; something.*

ăliter: [al-is, old form of al-ius] *Otherwise.—aliter ac.: Otherwise than, differently; in another way.*

ăl-ius, ia, iud (Gen.: ălius, Dat. ălii), adj. [root ALL, "to change:" cp. alibi, aliquis, alter; Gothic, alis, alja, O.H.G. elles (else); Gk. ἄλλος, ἄλλα, ἄλλασσω] *Another, other.—Of many: aliis .... alius, one ....: another.—The remaining, remainder of.—As Subst.: ălii, örüm, m. plur. The rest, the others.*

ăl-o. ūi, itum and tum, ēre, 3. v. a. [root AL or OL, "to grow:" cp. ad-ol-esco, sub-ol-esco; ἄλθω] *To nourish, maintain, cherish.*

al-ter, tēra, tērum (Gen. altērius, Dat. altēri), adj. [see alius] *The other of two; alter....alter, the one....the other.*

alt-ĭtūdo, Itūdīnis, f. [alt-us "high"] *Height, depth.*

al-tus, ta, tum, adj. [see al-o] *High, lofty; deep.*

ăment-ia,iae, f. [ămens, amen-tis, "foolish"] *Folly, infatuation.*

ămic-ită, Itiae, f. [ămīc-us, "a friend"] *Friendship; a league of amity, alliance between nations.*

ăm-icus, ica. Icum, adj. [am-o, "to love"] *Loving, friendly, kind.—As Subst.: A friend.*

ă-mitto, misi, missum, mittēre, 3. v.a. [ă, "from;" mitto, "to let go"] *To let go*

ăm-or, ör̄is, m. [am-o, "to love"] *Love.*

ampl-i-fic-o, ăvi, ătum, āre, 1. v. a. [for ampl-i-fac-o; fr. ampl-us, "large," (i), connecting vowel; fāc-io, "to make"] *To enlarge, extend, increase, enhance.*

ampliūs, cōmp. adv. [adverbial neut. of amplior, "more extensive"] *More, further.—The adverbs amplius, plus, and minus are often joined to numerals and other words denoting "measure" as mere qualifying adjuncts, without influencing the construction.*

am-pl-us, a, um, adj. [am (=ambi),

"around;" pl-ō, "to fill"] *Ample, extensive; noble, distinguished, illustrious.*

an, conj. [prob. a primitive word] Introducing the second half of a disjunctive sentence: *Or.—an ....an, whether....or; see also ne.*

an-ceps, cip̄it-is, adj. [for an-cāpit-s; fr. an (=ambi), "around;" cāput, cāpit-is, "a head"] *Two-fold, doubtful, uncertain.*

angust-iae, lārum, f. plur. [an-gus-tus, "narrow"] *A desile, pass.*

angus-tus, ta, tum, adj. [for angor-tus; fr. angor, "compression"] *Narrow, dangerous or critical.*

anim-adverto, adverti, adversum, advertēre, 3. v. a. [ānimus, "the mind;" adverto, "to turn towards"] *To perceive, observe; folld. by Objective clause, to chastise, punish.*

ān-imus, imi, m. [root AN, "to breathe:" cp. anima; āνεμος] *Mind, feelings, disposition, courage, heart.*

an-nus, ni, m. [root AN, "to go round:" cp. ēvros, ēvriavtōs; annulus] *Of time: A year.*

ann-ūus, a, um, adj. [ann-us, "a year"] *Yearly, annual.—In adverbial force: Annually.*

ante, adv. and prep.: Adv.: *Before, previously;*—paucis ante diebus, a few days before. Prep. gov. acc.: *Before.*

ant-ăā, adv. [prob. for ant-eam; fr. ant-e, "before;" eam, acc. sing. fem. of pron. is, "this, that"] *Formerly, previously, once.*

antiqu-ītus, adv. [antiqu-us, "ancient"] *Anciently, of old, in former times.*

ant-īquus, iqua, iquum, adj. [ant-e, "before"] *Former, ancient, old.*

ă-pēr-io, ūi, tum, ire, 4. v. a. *To open.*

ăper-tus, ta, tum, adj. [ăpēr-Io, "to uncover"] *Uncovered, exposed.—Of places: Open, clear.*

ap-pell-o, ăvi, ătum, āre, [for ad-pell-o; fr. ad, "towards;" pello, "to bring"] 1. v. a. *To address, accost, speak to.—With second Acc. To call a person or thing, that which is denoted by second Acc.*

ap-pētō, pētivi or pētli, pētūm, pētēre, 3. v. a. [for ad-pēt-o; fr. ăd, "to or towards;" pētō, "to seek or go to"] *To seek or strive after; to endeavour to get or obtain.*

ap-prōpinqu-ītas, Itātis, f. *Nearness of relationship.*

ap-prōpinquo, prōpinquāvi, propinquātum, prōpinquāre, 1. v. n. [for ăd-

própinquo; Ir. ád, "to;" propinquo, "to draw near"] With Dat.: *To draw near to, approach.*

**Apri-lis**, lis, m. [contracted from Apérilis; fr. ápéri-o, "to open"] The month of April, in which the earth opens itself for fertility.

**áp-ud**, prep. gov. acc. [prob. obsol. áp-o, áp-io, "to lay hold of"] *With, near to, among.*

**arbítr-ium**, ii, n. [arbíter, arbítri-i, "one who treats a thing according to his own will; a master"] *Will, pleasure.*

**arbítr-or**, átus sum, ári, 1. v. dep. [arbíter, arbítri-i, "an umpire"] *To hold as true in one's mind; to suppose, deem, consider, regard, think.*

**arbor**, óris, f. [root AR, "high"] *A tree.*

**ar-ces-so**, sivi, situm, sëre, 3. v. a. [for ar-ced-so; fr. ár (= ád), "to"; céd-o, "to go"] *To call, summon.*

**ardúus**, úa, úum, adj.: [root AR, "high"] *High, lofty, steep; difficult, arduous.*

**áries**, iéti, m. A military engine: *A ram, a battering-ram; a long beam, sometimes as much as a hundred feet in length, to which was attached at one end a mass of iron in the shape of a ram's head. It was suspended by ropes or chains to another beam lying across two banks of timber, and driven violently, again and again, against the wall of a beleaguered town, till a breach was made.*

**ar-ma**, mórum, n. plur. [root AR, "to fit:" cp. armus, articulus, artus; áρθρον, ἄρθρος, ἀπάρισκω] *Arms, weapons.*

**árma-türa**, turae, f. [arm(a)-o, "to arm"] *Armed soldiers or troops.—levis armatüra, light-armed soldiers.*

**arm-o**, ávi, átum, áre, [arm-a, "arms"] *To furnish with arms or weapons; to arm, equip.*

**arrögant-ter**, adv. [for arrogant-ter; fr. arrogans, arrogant-is, "arrogant"] *Arrogantly, presumptuously.*

**arrögant-ia**, lae f. [arrögans, arrögant-is, "arrogant"] *Arrogance, presumption.*

**arx**, arcis, f. *A citadel.*

**a-scendo**, scendi, scensum, scendere, 3. v. n. [for ad-scand-o; fr. ad, in "augmentative" force; scando, "to mount"] *To mount, ascend, climb.*

**ascen-sus**, sús, m. [for ascend-sus; fr. ascend-o, "to ascend"] *An ascent.*

**á-t**, conj. *But.* [akin to Gr. ár-ap, "but."]

**at-que** (contr. ac) conj. [for ad-que; fr. ád, denoting "addition;" què, "and"] *And also; and.—With comparative adjectives or words expressing dissimilarity, difference, contrariety: Than—After words denoting similarity: As, with.*

**at-tingo**, tigi, tactum, tingére, 3. v. a. [for ad-tango; fr. ád, "against;" tango, "to touch"] *To touch on, border upon; arrive at, come to, a place.*

**auctör-itás**, itatis, f. [auctor, "a producer"] *Weight of character, influence, authority.*

**auc-tus**, ta, tum, adj. [for aug-tus; fr. aug-éo, "to increase"] *Great, distinguished.*

**audäc-ia**, iae, f. [audax, audac-is, "bold"] *Boldness.*

**audäcius**; see audacter.

**audac-ter**, adv. [audax, audac-is, "bold"] *Boldly.*

**aud-éo**, ausus sum, audere, 2. v. semi-dep. *To dare, or venture, to do something.*

**audiens**, ntis: P. pres. of audio.—With Dat.: *Obedient to.*

**aud-ío**, iwi or li, itum, ire, 4. v. a. ("To give ear to;" hence) *To hear* [akin to áv- (= óv-), ávirós, "an ear"].

**aug-éo**, auxi, auctum, augere, 2. v. a. *To increase, augment.*

**aut**, conj. *Or:—aut...aut, either.. or.*

**aut-em**, conj.: *But, on the other hand; besides, further, moreover* [akin to áv-ap].

**auxil-ium**, ii, n. [prob. from obsol. adj. auxil-is, (=aug-sil-is, fr. aug-éo, "to increase"), "increasing"] *Help, aid, assistance, succour:* auxilium ferre, to bring help or succour.—Plur.: *Auxiliary troops or forces; auxiliaries.*

**ávär-itía**, itiae, f. [ávär-us, "avaricious"] *Avarice, covetousness.*

**á-verto**, verti, versum, vertere, 3.v.a. [á, "away;" verto, "to turn"] *To turn away:—aversus hostis, on enemy (turned away, i.e. with his back towards one, or) in retreat.—To turn aside, divert.*

**ávus**, i, m. *A grandfather.*

## B.

**barbärus**, i, m. *A barbarian.*

**bellic-ósus**, ósa, ósum, adj. [bellic-us, "warlike"] *Very warlike, martial.*

**bell-o**, ávi, átum, áre, 1 v.n. [bell-um, "war"] *To wage war, to war.*

**b-ellum**, elli, n. [old form du-ellum; fr. dūo, "two"] *War, warfare.*

čěně-fic-iūm, li, n. [for běně-fáci-um; bene, "well;" fáci-jo, "to do"] *Kindness, favour, benefit.*

bí-dú-um, i, [bidū-us (for bí-di-vus; fr. bí (=bis), "twice;" di-es, "a day") "pertaining to two days"] *A space, or period, of two days; two days.*

bíenn-iūm, i, n. [bienni-us, (for biann-ius; fr. bí (=bis), "twice;" ann-us, "a year"); "pertaining to two years"] *A space, or period, of two years; two years.*

bípartit-o, adv. [bipartit-us, "divided into two parts"] *In two divisions.*

bón-itas, itatis, f. [bón-us, "good"] *The good, or superior, quality of a thing; goodness, excellence.*

bónus, a, um, adj.: *Good* in the widest acceptation of the term; *kind, favourable.*—As Subst.: bonum, i, n. *Advantage, profit.*

bracchium, li. *An arm.* [akin to *Brax(wr.)*]

brévis, e, adj. *In time: Short, brief.*

brév-itas, itatis, f. [brév-is, "short"] *Of time: Shortness.—Of persons: Shortness; short or small stature.*

## C

cád-áver, áveris, n. [cád-o, "to fall dead"] *A dead body, corpse.*

cádo, cécidi, cásym, cádere, 3. v. n. [root CAD, "to fall;" cp. casus, *κατά*] *To fall, fall down; to fall dead, die.*

cálamítas, átis, f. [perhaps for cadamitas, from cad-o, "to fall"] *Misfortune, disaster, calamity.*

cál-o, ónis, m. [cál-a, "a log or billet of wood;" cp. *κάλον*] *A soldier's servant, camp-follower.*

cápio, cépi, captum, cápere, 3. v. a. *To take in the widest sense of the term.—Of arms: To take up.—Of a place: To reach, arrive at.*

captiv-us, i, m. [captiv-us, (fr. cáplo, "to take"), "taken prisoner"] *A prisoner, captive.*

cáp-ut, itis, n. [cp. κεφαλή; Gothic, haubith; German, haupt] *The head; a person, man.*

carrus, i, m. *A two-wheeled cart for heavy loads.*

castel-lum, li, n. dim. [for castellum; fr. castrum, cast(e)r-i] *A small fort; a castle, fortress.*

castra, órum, n. plur. [prob. for skad-trum; akin to root SKAD, "to cover;" cp. German, schatten; English, shade] *A camp or encampment as containing several soldiers' tents or huts.*

cá-sus, sūs, m. [for cad-sus; fr. cǎd-o, "to fall out, happen"] *Chance, accident.*

cá-téna, ae, f. *A chain, fetter.*

causa, ae, f. [root SKA, "to cover;" cp. σκύτος, scutum] *A cause, reason.*

cávēo, cāvi, cautum, cábere, 2. v. n. *To be on one's guard; to take care or precaution.*

cédo, cessi, cessum, cédere, 3. v. n. *To go away, withdraw, retreat.* [akin to χάσομαι (=χάδ-σομαι), "to retire".]

célér-itas, itatis, f. [celer, "swift"] *Swiftness, speed, celerity.*

célér-iter, adv. [id.] *Swiftly, speedily, quickly.*

cél-o, ávi, átum, áre, 1. v. a. [root KAL, "to hide;" cp. καλύπτω] *To hide, conceal, censēo, úi, um, ère, 2. v. a.: Of the Senate: To decree, resolve, ordain.*

cen-sus, sus, m. [for census; fr. cens-éo, "to make a return of property" for assessment] *An enumeration taken of the Helvetii by Caesar's order.*

centum, num. adj. indecl. *A hundred* [akin to Sans. *catan*; Gr. *κατόν*].

centuri-o, ónis, m. [centuri-a, "a century" or division of troops in the Roman armies] *A centurion.*

cer-tus, ta, tum, adj. [fr. CER-, root of cer-no, "to decide"] *Sure, certain.*—Phrases: Certiorem facere, (to make very sure, i.e.) to inform; certior fléri, (to be made very sure or certain, i.e.) to be informed.

c-éteri, éterae, étera, adj. plur. [rare in sing.] *The other, the rest: the remaining, remainder of.* Subst.: cétéri, órum, m. plur. *The rest.*

cibári-a, órum, adj. [cibári-us (*cibus*, "food,") "pertaining to food"] *Provisions, victuals.*

cingo cinxii, cinctum, cingére, 3. v. a. *Of places as Objects: To surround, encircle, inclose.*

circinus, i, m. [see circum] *A pair of compasses.*

circ-iter, adv. [circ-us, "a circle"] *Of number: About, near, nearly.*

circui-tus, tūs, m. [circuiteo, "to go around;" see circum] *A circuit, compass, circuitous route.*

circum, prep. gov. acc. [probably adverbial acc. of circus, "a ring;" cp. κίρκος, circulus] *Around, round about, all round; near, in the neighbourhood of.*

circum-do, dědi, dátum, däre 1. v. a. [circum, "around;" do, "to put"] *To surround, inclose, etc.*

**circum-dūco**, duxi, ductum, dūcere, 3. v. a. [circum, "around;" duco, "to lead"] *To draw around.*

**circum-jīcio**, jēci, jectum, jīcēre, 3. v. a. [for circum-jācio; fr. circum, "around;" jācio, "to cast"] With Dat. of pers. Objects: *To place, or throw, troops, etc., round a city; to surround a city with troops.*

**circum-mūnīo**, mūnivi, mūnitūm, mūnire, 4. v. a. [circum, "around;" mūnio, "to fortify"] *To fortify around, or all round; to secure or protect by fortifications.*

**circum-sisto**, stēti, nosup., sistēre, 3. v. n. [circum, "around;" sisto, "to stand"] *To stand around.*

**circum-vēnīo**, vēni, ventum, vēnīre, 4. v. a. [circum, "around;" vēnīo, "to come"] With accessory notion of hostility: *To surround, enclose on all sides, beset.*

cis, prep. gov. acc. *On this side of.*

**cīter**, tra, trum, adj. [for cis-ter; fr. cis, "on this side"] *On this side, hither. cīterior*, us: see cīter.

**cīt-ra**, prep. gov. acc. [cīter, citr-i, "on this side"] *On this side of.*

**cītr-o**, adv. [id.] *Hither*:—only in connection with ultro: *hither and thither, to and fro.*

**civ-ītas**, Itātis, f. [civ-is, "a citizen"] *Citizenship; a state, commonwealth.*

**clām-or**, ōris, m. [clām-o, "to cry out"] *Outcry, clamour, shouting, a shout.*

**clau-do**, si, sum. dēre. 3. v. a. [root CLAV, akin to κλεί-ω, "to shut"] *To shut, shut up; to close, end, finish.—claudere agmen, (to close the line of march, i.e.), to bring up the rear.*

**clément-ia**,iae, f. [clēmens, clémentis, "mild;" in disposition, "clement"] *Mildness of disposition, clemency.*

**cli-ens**, entis, comm. gen. [for clu-ens, which is also found; fr. clū-ō, "to hear;" hence, "to obey"] *A dependant, adherent.*

**cō-ācervo**, ācervāvi, ācervātūm, ācervāre, 1.v.a. [cō (=cum), "together;" ācervo, "to heap"] *To heap together, heap up.*

**co-ēmo**, ēmi, emptum, ēmēre, 3. v. a. [cō (=cum), in "intensive" force; ēmo, "to buy"] *To buy up, buy, purchase.*

**coep-i**, (pres. ante-classical), isse, v. def. n. and a. [contr. fr. co-āplo; fr. cō (=cum), in "augmentative" force; āplo, "to lay hold of"] *To begin to do.*

**cō-ercēo**, ercūi, ercitum, ercēre, 2. v. a. [for co-ārcēo; fr. cō (=cum), in "inten-

sive" force; arcō, "to enclose"] *To restrain, hold in check.*

**cō-gīto**, gitāvi, gitātūm, gitāre, 1. v.a. [contr. fr. co-agito; fr. cō (=cum), in "intensive" force; agito, "to put in motion"] *To weigh thoroughly in the mind; to ponder, think.*

**cō-gnosco**, gnōvi, gnitūm, gnoscēre, 3. v. a. [cō (=cum), in "augmentative" force; gnosco, (=nosco), "to become acquainted with"] *To become thoroughly acquainted with, learn, make inquiry about; to investigate.*

**cōgō**, cōgi, cōactum, cōgēre, 3. v. a. [contr. fr. co-ago; fr. cō (=cum), "together;" āgo, "to drive"] *To collect, assemble; to force, compel.*

**cōhors**, tis, f. [cp. χορτός, "an enclosed space;"] Lat. hortus, "yard or garden"] *A cohort; the tenth part of a Roman legion.*

**cōhortā-tīo**, tīonis, f. [cohort(a)-or, "to exhort"] *An address, exhortation.*

**cō-hortor**, hortātūs sum, hortāri, 1. v. dep. [cō (=cum), in "strengthening" force; hortor, "to exhort"] *To exhort, to encourage, animate.*

**col-līgo**, ligāvi, ligātūm, ligāre, 1. v. a. [for con-līgo; fr. con (=cum), "together;" līgo, "to bind or fasten"] *To pin together by means of something driven through two or more things.*

**collis**, is, m. [root cel, "to be high:" cp. celsus, columna; κολωνη] *A hill.*

**col-lōco**, lōcāvi, lōcātūm, lōcāre, 1. v. a. [for con-lōco; fr. con (=cum), in "intensive" force; loco, "to place"] *To put, place, or station anywhere; to place a woman in marriage; Le., to give a woman in marriage.*

**collōqū-īum**, li, n. [collōquor, "to confer with"] *A conference.*

**col-lōquor**, lōquūtūs sum, lōqui, 3. v. dep. [for con-lōquor; fr. con (=cum), "together;" lōquor, "to talk"] *To talk together or with a person; to hold a conference, confer with.*

**com-būro**, bussi, bustum, bürōre, 3. v. a. [com (=cum), in "intensive" force; BŪRO (=uro), "to burn"] *To burn up, consume by fire.*

**commēā-tus**, tūs, m. [commēā(a)o, "to go to and fro"] *Provisions, supplies.*

**com-mēmōrō**, mēmōrāvi, mēmōrātūm, mēmōrāre, 1.v.a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; mēmōrō, "to mention"] *To make mention of, recount, relate.*

**com-mēo**, mēavi, mēatūm, mēāre, 1. v. a. [com (=cum), in "intensive" force;

m̄o, "to go"] *To go, come, travel, etc., frequently to a place.*

**com-m̄inus**, adv. [com (=cum), "together;" m̄anus, "hand"] *Hand to hand, in close fight.*

**com-mitto**, misi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [com (=cum), "together;" mitto, "to cause to go"] *Of battle: To engage in, commence.—With Dat.: To trust, intrust.—With ut and Subj.: To give occasion, or cause, that.; to perpetrate, commit, do, anything wrong.*

**commōd-e**, adv. [commod-us, "convenient"] *Conveniently, suitably, readily.*

**com-mōd-us**, a, um, adj. [com (=cum), "with;" mōd-us, "a measure"] *Convenient, suitable.*

**com-mōn-ē-fācio**, fēci, factum, fācere, 3. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; mōn-ē, "to cause to think;" (e) connecting vowel; fācio, "to make"] *To remind forcibly, put in mind, impress.*

**com-mōvēo**, mōvi, mōtum, mōvēre, 2. v. a. [com (=cum), in "intensive" force; mōvēo, "to move"] *To move greatly or thoroughly.—Mentally: To disturb, affect, disquiet. Of a battle: To bring about, force.*

**com-mūnio**, mūnivi or mūnii, mūnitum, mūnire, 4. v. a. [com (=cum), in "intensive" force; mūnio, "to fortify"] *To fortify strongly or on all sides.*

**com-mūnis**, mūne, adj. [com (=cum), "together;" perhaps, mūnis, "serving"] *Common, general.*

**commūtā-tiō**, tiōnis, f. [commut(a)-o, "to change entirely"] *A changing, change, alteration.*

**com-mūtō**, mūtāvi, mūtātum, mūtāre, 1. v. a. [com (=cum), in "intensive" force; mūto, "to change"] *To change, wholly alter.*

**com-pārō**, pārāvi, pārātum, pārāre, 1. v. a. [com (=cum), "together;" pāro, "to bring or put"] *To make or get ready, prepare; to acquire, procure.*

**com-pello**, pūli pulsūm, pellēre, 3. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; pello, "to drive"] *To drive, force the enemy.*

**com-pēr-īo**, i, tum, īre, 4. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; root PER, akin to per-iōr, "to pass through"] *To find out accurately; to ascertain.*

**com-plector**, plexus sum, plecti, 3. v. dep. [com (=cum), "with;" plecto, "to entwine"] *To embrace, clasp.*

**com-plēo**, plēvi, plētum, plēre, 2. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force;

plēo, "to fill"] *Sometimes with Abl.: To fill completely or entirely with.*

**com-plūres**, plūra (and sometimes plūria) adj. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; plūres, "very many"] *Very many, several.*

**com-porto**, portāvi, portātum, portare, 1. v. a. [com (=cum), "together;" porto, "to carry"] *To carry together, convey, collect.*

**cōnā-ta**, ḍrum, n. plur. (sing. prob. not found) [cōn(a)-or, "to attempt"] *Attempts, endeavours, efforts.*

**cōnā-tus**, tūs, m. [id.] *An attempt, endeavour, effort.*

**con-cēdo**, cessi, ccessum, cēdere, 3. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; cēdo, "to yield"] *To grant, concede.*

**con-cido**, cidi, cīsum, cīdere, 3. v. a. [for con-caedo; fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; caedo, "to cut"] *To cut up, slay, kill, destroy.*

**concili-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [con-cli-um, "union"] *To bring about, procure, gain.*

**con-cil-īum**, ii, n. [for con-cāl-īum; fr. con (=cum), "together;" cāl-o, "to call"] *A meeting, assembly, council.*

**con-clāmo**, clāmāvi, clāmātum, clāmāre, 1. v. a. [con (=cum), in "intensive" force; clāmo, "to cry out"] *To cry out aloud; to exclaim, shout out.*

**con-curro**, curri (rarely cūcurri), cursum, currēre, 3. v. n. [con (=cum), "together;" cur:o, "to run"] *To run together, or in a body.*

**concur-sus**, sūs, m. [for con-curr-sus; fr. concurr-o, "to run together"] *A running together.*

**cond-ītio**, itionis, f. [cond-o, "to put together"] *State, or condition, of a person; an agreement, terms.*

**con-dōno**, dōnāvi, dōnātum, dōnāre, 1. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; dōno, "to give" as a present] *To forgive, overlook.*

**con-dūco**, duxi, ductum, dūcēre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), "together;" duco, "to lead"] *To assemble, collect.*

**confēro**, contūli, collātum, conferre, v. a. irreg. [con (=cum), "together;" fero, "to bear"] *To bring together; to collect, gather; to compare; To (bear one's self, etc., i.e.) betake one's self.—Of a fault, blame: To ascribe, attribute, to one; lay to the charge of, throw upon one.*

**confer-tus**, ta, tum, adj. [for confēr-tus; fr. confērcio, "to cram or press

*close together"] Crowded together, closely packed.*

**con-ficio**, fici, factum, ficere, 3. v. a. [for con-facio; fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; facio, "to do or make"] *To prepare, accomplish.*

**con-fido**, fisus sum, fidere, 3. v. n. semi-dep. [con (=cum), in "intensive" force; fido, "to trust"] *With Dat.: To trust.*

**con-firm-o**, avi, atum, are, 1. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; firmus, "strong"] *To strengthen, confirm; to encourage; to assert.*

**configo**, flicxi, flixtum, fligere, 3. v. n. [con (=cum), "together;" fligo, "to dash"] *To come, or enter, into conflict; to engage, contend, fight.*

**con-grēdior**, gressus sum, grēdi, 3. v. dep. [for con-gradior; fr. con (=cum), "together with;" gradior, "to step"] *In a friendly sense: To meet with one; In a hostile sense: To engage, come into collision, fight, etc.*

**con-jicio**, jeci, jectum, jicere, 3. v. a. [for con-jacio; fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; jacio, "to cast"] *Of weapons: To hurl, throw, cast.—Of persons: with in catenas: To throw into chains.*

**con-jungo**, junxi, junctum, jungere, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), "together;" jungo, "to join"] *To join together, unite.*

**con-jurā-tio**, tōnis, f. [conjur(a)o, "to swear together;" hence, "to conspire, plot"] *A conspiracy, league.*

**con-jūro**, jüravi, jüravi, jüratum, 1. v. n. [con (=cum), "together;" juro, "to swear"] *To enter into a confederacy; to combine, unite.*

**cōnor**, atus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. *To endeavour, try, attempt.*

**con-quiro**, quisivi, quisitum, quirrē, 3. v. a. [for conquaero; fr. con, in "augmentative" force; quaero, "to seek"] *To seek after, or search out, earnestly or carefully.*

**con-sanguin-ēus**, ēa, ēum, adj. [con (=cum), denoting "correspondence;" sanguis, sanguini-is, "blood"] *Related by blood, akin.—A Subst.: consanguinēus, ēi, m. A blood relation, kinsman.*

**con-scisco**, scivi, scitum, sciscere, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; scisco, "to decree"] *With mortem sibi: (To decree death to one's self, i.e.) To kill, or destroy one's self; to commit suicide.*

**con-sci-us**, a, um, adj. [con, "with;" sci-o, "to know"] *Conscious.*

**con-scribo**, scripsi, scriptum, scribere, 3. v. a. [con, "together;" seribo] *Of soldiers: To enrol, enlist.*

**con-sen-sus**, sūs, m. [for consent-sus; fr. consentio, "to agree"] *Agreement, consent.*

**con-sentio**, sensi, sensum, sentiro, 4. v. n. [con (=cum), "with;" sentio, "to think"] *With cum; To agree, or combine, with; to make common cause with.*

**con-sēquor**, sēquūtus sum, sēqui, 3. v. dep. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sequor, "to follow"] *To follow, follow after.—In a hostile sense: To pursue; to obtain.*

**con-servo**, servāvi, servātum, servāre, 1. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; servo, "to keep"] *To preserve, keep unhurt or alive.*

**con-sido**, sēdi, sessum, sīdēre, 3. v. n. [con (=cum), "together;" sido, "to sit down"] *Of troops: To take one's station; to encamp; to settle.*

**consilium**, li, n. *A plan, design; an assembly; a council of war.*

**con-similis**, simile, adj. [con (=cum), in "intensive" force; similis, "like"] *Altogether, or wholly, like.*

**con-sisto**, stiti, stitum, sistēre, 3. v. n. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sisto, "to set one's self," i.e., "to stand"] *To take one's stand; stand still.—Of troops: To take up a position; to halt, make a halt.*

**con-sōlor**, sōlatus sum, sōlāri. 1. v. dep. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sōlor, "to comfort"] *To comfort, to console.*

**con-spec-tus**, tūs, m. [con-spic-lo] *Sight, view.—in conspectu, before the eyes, or in the presence of some one.*

**con-spic̄io**, spexi, spectum, spicere, 3. v. a. [for con-spic̄io; fr. con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; sp̄cio, "to see"] *To see, behold, observe.*

**con-spic̄-or**, atus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [for con-spic̄or; fr. con (=cum), in "intensive" force; SPEC, root of spec̄io, "to see"] *To see, behold, get a sight of, descry.*

**constant-ia**,iae,f. [constans constantis, "standing firm"] *Of character: Firmness, steadfastness, constancy.*

**con-stan-ter**, adv. [for constant-ter; fr. constans, constantis, in force of "uniform"] *Uniformly, unanimously, with one voice.*

**con-stitūo**, stitūi, stitūtum, stitūre, 3. v. a. [for con-statuo; fr. con (=cum); statuo, "to place"] *To draw up an army or fleet in order of battle; to post troops;*

*to put, station; to arrange, regulate, set in order; to fix, appoint, to resolve, determine, decide.*

**consuē-sco**, vi, tum, sc̄ere, 3. v. n. *inch.* [consūē-o, "to be accustomed" [To accustom one's self.—In perf. tenses: To have accustomed one's self, i.e., to be accustomed or wont,

**consuē-tūdo**, tūdīnis, f. [for consuetudo; fr. consuēt-us, "accustomed"] *Custom, habit, usage.*

**consul**, illis, m. *A consul:* one of the two chief magistrates of the Roman state, chosen annually after the expulsion of the kings.

**consūl-ātus**, ātūs, m. [consul] *The office of a consul; the consulship.*

**consūlo**, ū, tum, ēre, 3. v. n.: *To take counsel, deliberate, consult.*—Impers. Pass. inf. perf.: *consultum (esse), That counsel was taken, that it was deliberated.*

**consul-tum**, ti, n. [con-sūlo, "to determine upon"] *A resolution, decree.*

**con-sūmo**, sumpsi, sumptum. sū-mēre, 3.v.a. [con (=cum), in "intensive" force; sūmo, "to take"] *To annihilate, destroy, bring to nought, waste.*

**con-tem-ptus**, ptūs, m. [for contemn-ptus; fr. contemno, "to despise"] *Scorn, contempt.*

**con-tendo**, tendi, tentum, tendēre, 3.v.n. and a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force; tendo, "to stretch"] *To make an effort or endeavour; to strive eagerly after, exert one's self zealously for.*—With accessory notion of hostility: *To strive, contend, struggle.*

**conten-tiō**, tiōnis, f. [for contend-tio; fr. contend-o, "to contend"] *A contention, contest.*

**continen-ter**, adv. [for continent-er; fr. continens, continent-is, "continuous"] *In time: Continuously, without interruption.*

**con-tinēo**, tinūi, tentum, tinēre, 2. v. a. [for con-tēnēo; fr. con (=cum), "together;" tenēo, "to hold"] *Of places: In Pass.: To be surrounded, encompassed, or enclosed by; to comprise, occupy; to restrain.*

**con-tingo**, tigi, tactum, tingēre, 3.v.a. and n. [for con-tango; fr. con (=cum), in "intensive" force; tango, "to touch"] *Act.: To touch, reach, extend to.—Neut.: To happen or chance; to fall out, come to pass.*

**contin-ēus**, ūa, ūum, adj. [contin-ēo, "to hold together"] *Of time: Successive, in succession.*

**contra**, adv. and prep. Adv.: ("Over against;" hence) *On the other side, on the*

*other hand, in return, in reply; in opposition; on the contrary.* Prop. gov. acc.: *Against.*

**con-trāhō**, traxi, tractum, trähēre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), "together;" trāhō, "to draw"] *To draw, or bring together; to collect, assemble.*

**contrā-rīus**, ria, rīum, adj. [contra, "over against"] *Of places: Lying over against, opposite.*

**contūmēl-ia**,iae,f. [contūmēo, through obsol. adj. contūmēl-us, "swelling greatly"] *Insult, affront, contumely.*

**con-věnīo**, vēni, ventum, vēnire, 4. v. n. [con (=cum), "together;" venio, "to come"] *To come, or meet, together; to collect, assemble; to be agreed upon.*

**conven-tus**, tūs, m. [convēn-iō] *An assembly, assemblage, meeting; a judicial assembly, a court of justice.*

**con-ver-to**, verti, versum, vertēre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "augmentative" force, verto, "to turn"] *To turn or turn round; to wheel round.*—Pass. in reflexive force: *To turn one's self round, turn round; change.*

**con-vincō**, vīci, victum, vincēre, 3. v. a. [con (=cum), in "intensive" force; vīco, "to conquer;" hence, "to show, or prove conclusively"] *To show, or prove, very conclusively.*

**con-vōcō**, vōcāvi, vōcātum, vōcāre, 1. v. a. [con (=cum), "together;" vōcō, "to call"] *To call together; to convene, convoke, summon.*

**cō-pīa**,iae,f. [contr. fr. co-op-ia; fr. co (=cum), in "augmentative" force ops, ὅπ-is, "means"] *Copiousness, plenty Plur.: Forces, supplies.*

**cōpī-ōsus**, ūsa, ūsum, adj. [cōpī-ia, "plenty"] *Furnished abundantly, or well supplied with a thing; abounding in wealth, rich.*

**cōr-am**,adv. [contr. fr. co-or-am; fr. co (=cum), in "augmentative" force; os, or-is, "the face"] *Personally, in person.*

**cornu**, ūs, n. [root CAR, "hard;" cp. carina, calculus; κέρας, κάρπον] *Of an army: A wing.*

**corp-us**, ūris, n. [root CER or CRE, "to make"] *The body.*

**cort-ex**, icis, m. and f. *The bark of trees.*

**crē-ber**, bra, brum, adj. [CRE, root of cre-sco, "to increase;" hence] *Frequent, numerous.*

**crē-do**, didi, ditum, dēre, 3. v. a. *To believe; to think, suppose.*

**crēmo**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. [root CAR, "to burn;" cp carbo] *To burn.*

**crē-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [root CRE or CER, "to make"] *To make a person something, e.g. king, consul; to create, appoint.*

**crē-sco**, vi, tum, scēre, 3. v. n. [akin to crēo] *To increase, to become greater or larger.*

**crī-nis**, nis, m. [for crē-nis; fr. CRE, root of cres-co, "to grow"] *The hair of the head.*

**crūcīā-tus**, tūs, m. [cruci(a)-o, "to torture"] *Torture.*

**crūdēl-itas**, itātis, [crūdēl-is, "cruel"] *Cruelty.*

**crūdēl-iter**, adv. [id.] *Cruelly, with cruelty.*

**cultus**, tūs, m. [for col-tus; fr. cōl-o, "to cultivate"] *Mode, or manner, of living.*

**cum**, prep. gov. abl.; [cp. Greek *ξύν*, *σύν*] *With, together with.*—In composition (also com, co): *With, together.*—In "augmentative" or "intensive" force, to denote completeness, a high degree. With personal pronouns cum always follows its case, e.g. secum, nobiscum, etc., and usually so with Relative pronouns. e.g. quibuscum.

**cunctus**, a, um, (mostly plur. cuncti, ae, a) adj. [contr. fr. conjunctus; fr. conjungo, "to join together" or convinc tus, "bound together"] *All, the whole.*

**cūpid-ē**, adv. [cupid-us, "eager"] *Eagerly, zealously, passionately.*—Comp.: *Too eagerly.*

**cūpid-itas**, itātis, f. [id.] *A longing, desire, eagerness.*

**cūp-īdus**, Ida, Idum, adj. [cūp-lo] With Gen. or Gerund in di: *Desirous of, desiring, eager for.*

**cūp-īo**, ivi or ii, itum, īre, 3. v. n. With Dat.: *To wish well to; to be favourably disposed towards.*

**cūr-** (anciently quo-r), adv. [contracted acc. to some, fr. quare (=quā-re); acc. to others, fr. cui rei] *Why; wherefore.*

**cūr-a**, ae, f. [for coer-a; fr. coer-o, old form of quer-o, "to seek"] *Care, solicitude, attention.*

**cūr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. [cūr-a, "care"] With Acc. and Gerundive: *To take care, order, or cause, that something be done.*

**cūr-sus**, sūs, m. [for curr-sus; fr. curr-o, "to run"] *A running, speed,*

*course:—cursum adaequare, (to make equal their running) (i.e.) to keep up with the pace of the horses.*

**cus-tos**, tōdis, comm. gen. [root sou, "to cover" cp. σκύτος, σκία; scutum] *A guard, keeper.*

**custōdi-a**, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] *A guard, a protecting force.*

## D.

**damn-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [damnum in the meaning of "a penalty"] *To condemn.*

**dē**, prep. gov. Abl.: *From, away from; in the course of, during, in; of, about, concerning, respecting; from, out of, from among a number of persons.—Of a cause, reason, etc.: From, for.*

**dē-bēo**, bāi, bitum, bēre, 2.v.a. [contr. fr. dē-habēo; fr dē, "from;" habēo, "to have"] *To owe.—With Inf.: To be bound to do; I etc., ought to do, etc.*

**dē-cēdo**, cessi, cessum, cēdere, 3. v. a. [de, "away;" cēdo, to go"] *To go away or depart; to withdraw.*

**dē-cēm**, num. adj. indecl. [Greek, δέκα; English, ten] *Ten.*

**dē-cernō**, crēvi, crētum, cernīre, 3. v. a. [dē, in "strengthening" force; cerno, "to decree"] *To decree.*

**dē-certo**, certāvi, certātum, certīre, 1. v. n. [dē, in "strengthening" force; certe, "to contend"] *To contend, or fight, vigorously or earnestly.*

**dē-cido**, cīdi, no sup., cīdēre, 3. v. n. [for de-cado; fr. de, "down;" cado, "to fall"] *To fall down.*

**dē-īmūs**, īma, īmum, adj. num. adj. [dē-cēm, "ten"] *Tenth.*

**dē-cipio**, cēpi, ceptum, cipēre, 3. v. a. [for de-cipio; fr. de, in "strengthening" force; capio, "to take;" hence, in bad sense, "to deceive"] *To deceive.*

**dē-clāro**, clārāvi, clārātum, clārāre, 1. v. a. [de, "completely;" clāro, "to make clear"] *To announce, declare.*

**dē-cliv-is**, e, adj. [dē, "down;" clivus, "a sloping ground or hill"] *Sloping downwards or from the top to the bottom.*

**dēcūmānus** (dēcīm-), āna, ānum, adj. [dēcīm-a, "the tenth" cohort] *Of the tenth cohort, decumanus.—porta decumana, the decuman gate, the name of the main gate of the four in a Roman camp, given to it from the tenth cohorts of the legions being stationed near it. It was the furthest from the enemy.*

**dē-curro**, curri and cū-curri, cursum, currēre, 3. v. n. dē, "down;" curro, "to

run"] *To run down; to lead or draw off, withdraw.*

dē-fātīgo, fātīgāvi, fātīgātūm, fātīgārē, 1. v. a. [dē, denoting "completeness;" fatigo, "to weary"] *To weary thoroughly, weary out, exhaust.*

dē-fendo, fendi, fensum, fendērē, 3. v. a. [dē, "away from;" obsol. fendo, "to strike"] *To ward off; to protect, defend.*

dēfēn-siō, sīōnīs f. [for defend-sio; fr. defendo, "to defend"] *A defending, defense.*

dēfēn-sor, sōris, m. [for defend-sor; fr. defend-o, "to defend"] *A defender.*

dē-fērō, tūlī, lātūm, ferre, 3.v.a. irreg. [dē, "down;" fērō, "to bring"] With ad: Of the command of an army: *To hand over to, confer upon.—To report, state, announce, whether by speech or in writing.*

dē-fētīscor, fessus sum, fētīsci, 3. v. dep. inch. [for dē-fatiscor; ir. dē, in "strengthening" force; fētiscor, "to grow faint"] *To become quite faint or weary. —In perf. tenses: To be quite faint or weary; to be wearied out or exhausted.*

dē-fīcio, fēci, fectum, fīcērē, 3. v. n. [for dē-fācio; fr. dē, "away from;" fācio, "to make"] Of supplies: *To fall, fall short, be wanting.—Of persons, etc. To revolt.*

dē-inde (trisyll.), adv. [dē, "from;" inde, "thence"] Of time: *In the next place, afterwards, after that.*

dējec-tus, tūs, m. [for dējac-tus, fr. déjicio, "to throw or cast down;" through dē "down;" JAC, root of jācio] *A declivity, sloping ground, a slope.*

dē-jīcio, jēci, jectum, jīcērē, 3. v. a. [for dē-jācio; fr. dē, "down;" jācio, "to throw"] *To throw or cast down;—dejecti ēa spe (thrown down from that hope, i.e.) disappointed in that hope.*

dēlēo, évi, étum, ère, 2. v. a. *To put an end to, efface the recollection of, blot out.*

dē-libēro, libērāvi, libēratūm, libērārē, 1. v. a. [for dē-libro; fr. dē, in "strengthening" force; libro, "to poise or weigh"] *To weigh well in one's mind; to ponder, consider, deliberate.*

dē-līgo, ligāvi, ligātūm, ligārē, 1. v. a. [dē, "down;" līgo, "to bind"] *To bind down; to bind fast, fasten.*

dē-līgo, lēgi, lectum, ligērē, 3. v. a. [for dē-lēgo; fr. de, "out;" lēgo, "to choose"] *To choose out, select, pick out.*

dē-minūo, mīnāi, mīnūtūm, mīnārē, 3. v. a. [dē, in "strengthening" force; mīnūo, "to make less"] *To make less; to lessen, diminish.*

dēmissus a [um, P. perf. pass. of dēmitto] Of localities: *Low-lying, low. Of the head: Bowed down, drooping.*

dē-mitto, misi, missum, mittērē, 3. v. a. [dē, "down;" mitto, "to let go"] *To let, or allow, to go down; to lower, let fall.*

dē-monstro, monstrāvi, monstrātūm, monstrārē, 1. v. a. [dē, in "augmentative" force; monstro, "to show"] *To show, point out.*

dēmūm, adv. [a lengthened form of the demonstrative particle dem, in i-dem, tan-dem] *At last, at length.*

dē-nēgo, nēgāvi, nēgātūm, nēgārē, 1. v. a. [dē, in "intensive" force; nēgo, "to deny"] *To refuse.*

dē-ni, nae, na, num. distrib. adj. [for dec-ni; fr. dec-em, "ten"] *Ten each.*

dēnī-que, adv. [f. r dein-que; fr. dēn, "then;" que, "and"] *At length, at last.*  
densus, a, um, adj. [connected with dēcūs] *Thick, dense.*

dē-nuntīo, nuntiāvi, nuntiātūm, nuntiārē, 1. v. a. [dē, "from;" nuntiō, "to send a message"] *To intimate, announce; to menace, threaten.*

dē-perdo, perdīdi, perditum, perdērē, 3. v. a. [dē, denoting "completeness;" perdo, "to lose"] *To lose entirely or completely.*

dē-pōno, pōsāi, pōsītūm, pōnōrē, 3. v. a. [dē, "down" pōno, "to put"] *To put or lay down in a place; to lay aside.*

dē-pōpūlo, pōpūlāvi, pōpūlātūm, pōpūlārē, 1. v. a. [dē, in "strengthening" force; populo, "to ravage"] *To ravage utterly; to lay waste.*

dē-pōpūlor, pōpūlātūs sum, pōpūlārē, 1. v. dep. [dē, in "strengthening" force; populor, "to ravage"] *To ravage utterly; to lay waste.*

dē-prēcā-tor, tōris, m. [deprec(?)or, "to intercede with"] *An intercessor.—eo intercessore, (he being an intercessor, i.e.) at his intercession.*

dē-prēcor, prēcātūs eūn, prēcīrē; 1. v. dep. [dē, in "strengthening" force; prēcor, "to pray"] *To pray, entreat, beg, or beseech earnestly; to pray for.*

dē-sēro, serūi, sertum. serērē, 2. v. p. [dē, in "negative" force; serō, "to join"] *To forsake, abandon, desert.*

dē-signo, signāvi, signātūm, signārē, 1. v. a. [dē, "out;" signo, "to mark"] *To denote, point out or at.*

dē-sisto, stiti, stitūm, sistērē, 3. v. n. [dē, "away from;" sisto, "to set one's self, stand"] *To set one's self away from*

**dēspec-tus**, tūs, m. [despecio, "to look down upon;" de, down; specio, "to look at"] *A view, prospect from higher ground.*

**dē-spēro**, spērāvi, spēratūm, spērāre, 1. v. a. [dē, denoting "reversal" spēro, "to hope"] *To give up or lose hope, to despair.*

**dē-spīcio**, spexi, spectum, spīcere, 3. v. a. [for de-specio; fr. de, "down;" specio, "to look at"] *To disdain, contemn, despise*

**dē-spōlio**, spōliāvi, spōliātūm, spōliāre, 1.v.a. [dē, in "strengthening" force; spōlio, "to spoil"] *With Abl.: To despoil or deprive of.*

**dē-stītūo**, stītāi, stītūtūm, stītīnē, 3. v.a. [for de-statuo; fr. de, "away from;" statuo, "to put" or "place"] *To forsake, abandon, desert.*

**de-stringo**, strinxi, strictum, strin-gēre, 3. v. a. [dē, in "strengthening" force; stringo, "to draw" a sword from the sheath] *To unsheathe, draw out.*

**dē-sum**, fūi, esse, v. n. [dē, "away from;" sum, "to be"] *To be wanting, to fail.*

**dē-sūper**, adv. [de, "from;" super, "above"] *From above.*

**dētēr-ior**, ius, comp. adj. [obsol. dēter, fr. dē, "below"] ("Lower;" hence) *Worse.*

**dē-terrēo**, terrī, territūm, terrēre, 2. v. a. [dē, "away from," terrēo, "to frighten"] *To deter, discourage, hinder, prevent.*

**dē-trāho**, traxi, tractum, trāhēre, 3. v. a. [de, "away;" trāho, "to draw"] *To withdraw, remove, take away.*

**dētri-mentum**, menti, n. [dētero, "to rub off;" de, "from;" tero, "to rub"] *Loss, hurt, damage, injury, detriment.*

**dēus**, i, m. *A god, deity* [akin to Gr. θεός, and Sans. deva, "a god."]

**dē-věho**, vixi, vectum, věhēre, 3. v.a. [dē, "down" or "away;" věho, "to carry"] *To carry down or away.*

**dē-věnio**, vēni, ventum, vēnire, 4. v. n. [dē, "down;" vēnio, "to come"] *To come down.*

**dex-ter**, tra, trum, adj. [root DEK, "to receive" or DIR, "to point out;" cp. δέξομαι, δέκυνω dico, index] *To, or on, the right side; right. As Subst.: dextra, ae, f. *The right hand.**

**dico**, dixi, dictum, dicēre, 3. v. a. [see dexter] *To say; state, report; appoint. —Of a cause: To plead.*

**dic-tiō**, tīōnis, f. [dīc-o, "to plead"] *A pleading or defending.*

**dic-tum**, tī, n. [dic-o "to speak"] *An order, command.*

**dīes**, ēi, m. (in sing. sometimes f.) [root DIV, "to shine;" cp. divus, δῖος; O.H.G. zio; Lith. divas= deus] *A day:—malo dic, when the day was far spent, or late in the day.*

**differō**, distīli, dilatūm, differre, v. n. [for dis-fero; fr. dis, "apart;" fero, "to carry"] *To differ, be different.*

**dif-fīcīlis**, fīelle, adj. [for dis-facīlis; fr. dis, in "negative" force; fācilis, "easy"] *Not easy, hard, difficult.*

**difficul-tas**, tātīs, f. [difficul, old form of difficil-is, "difficult"] *A difficulty, difficult circumstance.*

**diligent-er**, adv. [for diligent-ter, fr. diligens, diligent-is, "diligent"] *Diligently, carefully.*

**dign-itas**, itātīs, f. [dign-us, "worthy"] *Dignity.*

**diligent-ia**, īae, f. [diligens, diligent-is, "diligent"] *Carefulness, attentiveness, earnestness, diligence.*

**di-mētior**, mensu sum, mētīri, 4. v. dep. [di (=dis), "apart;" mētior, "to measure"] *To measure out.*

**di-mīco**, mīcāvi or mīcī, mīcātūm, mīcare, 1. v. n. [di (=dis), "greatly;" mīco, "to move to and fro"] *To fight, combat.*

**di-mitto**, misi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [di (=dis), "apart;" mitto, "to send"] *To send away, dismiss.*

**dīr-imo**, ēmi, emptum, imēre, 3. v. a. [for dis-emo; fr. dis, "apart;" ēmo, "to take"] *Of a conference: To break up, put an end to.*

**di-rīpīo**, ripūi, reptum, ripēre, 3. v. a. [for di-rapio; fr. di (=dis), "apart," rāpīo, "to tear, etc."] *To plunder.*

**dis-cēdo**, cessi, cesso, cēdere, 3. v. a. [dis, "apart;" cedo, "to go"] *To go away, depart, withdraw.*

**disces-sus**, sūs, m. [for disced-sus; fr. disced-o, "to depart"] *A departing, departure.*

**discipl-ina**, īae, f. [for disciplīn-a; fr. disciplīpūl-us, "a learner"] *Discipline.*

**disco**, didīci, no sup., discēre, 3. v. a. [same root as dexter] *To learn.*

**dis-jīcīo**, jēci, jectum, jēcēre, 3. v. a. [for dis-jācio; fr. dis, "asunder;" jācio, "to throw"] *To disperse, scatter, rout.*

**di-spērgo**, spersi, spersum, spēgēre, 3. v. a. [for di-spargo; fr. di (=dis), "in different directions;" spargo, "to scat-

ter"] *To scatter in different directions; to disperse.*

**dis-pōno**, pōsūi, pōsūtum, pōnēre, 3. v. a. [dis, "in different directions;" pono, "to place"] Of troops: *To set in order, draw up, post.*

**dis-sipo**, sīpāvi, sīpātum, sīpāre, 1. v. a. [dis, "apart;" obsol. sipo, "to cast, throw"] Military t.t.: *To disperse, route, put to flight.*

**dis-tinēo**, tīnūi, tentum, tinēre, 2.v.a. [for dis-teneo; fr. dis, "away off;" teneo, "to hold"] *To keep at a distance, off or away; to hinder, detain.*

**dī-tiō**, tiōnis, f. [prob. for de-tio; fr. do, "to put," through root DA] With reference to the person under whom one places one's self: *Dominion, sway, authority.*

**dīu**, adv. [Adverbial Abl. of obsol. dius (=dies), "a day"]. *For a long time; a long while.*

**dīu-turn-itas**, itatis, f. [dīu-turn-us, "of long duration"] *Long duration or continuance; length.*

**dīu-turnus**, turna, turnum, adj. [dīu, "a long while"] *Of long duration; long, prolonged.*

**dīurnus**, urna, urnum, adj. [di-es, "a day"] *Of, or belonging to, the day; by day.*

**diver-sus**, sa, sum, adj. [for divertus; fr. divert-o, "to turn away," also "to turn in a different direction"] *Separate, apart from others; different, various.*

**dīv-es**, itis, adj. [root dīv, "to shine;" see dies] *Rich, wealthy. Comp.: divitor and dītior; Sup.: divit-issimus and dītissimus.*

**di-vīdo**. visi, visum, vīdēre, 3. v. a. [di (=dis), "apart;" root VID, "to part asunder:" ep. viduus, vidua; English, widow] *To divide, separate.*

**di-vīnus**, ina, īnum, adj. [see dies] *Divine.*

**do**, dēdi, dātum, dāre, 1.v.a. [root DA, "to give:" cp. dos, domum; δόσις, δίδωμι] *To give in the widest acceptation of the term: negotium dare alicui, ut or uti, c. Subj., to direct, or commission, one, to do.—With ad fugam: To put, etc., to flight.*

**dōc-ēo**, ūi, tum, ēre, 2. v. a. [akin to dic-o] *To teach, instruct, inform, show, tell.*

**dōl-ēo**, ūi, itum, ēre, 2. v. n. *To be in pain; to grieve, sorrow.*

**dōl-or**, ūris, m. [dōlēo, "to grieve" Grief, sorrow.

**dōl-us**, i, m. *Craft, fraud, guile, deceit.*

**dōmes-ticus**, tīca, ticum, adj. [prob. for domus-ticus; fr. domus, "a house;" hence, "one's country or home"] *Domes-tic, at home, in one's own country.*

**dōm-ī-cil-īum**, ūi, n. [for dōm-ī-cūl-īum; fr. dōm-us, "abode;" (i), connecting vowel; root CUL=καλ, in καλ-ύπτω, "to conceal"] *A habitation, dwelling, domicile.*

**dōmīn-or**, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [root DAM, "to tame:" cp. δαμάω, δμώς; domo, dominus; Eng. tame] *To rule, bear, sway, have dominion.*

**dōmus**, i and ūi, ūrum, āre, 1.v.a. [root DAM, "to build:" cp. δέμω, δόμος; Goth. timrjan; O.H.G. zimmer, "sawn timber"] *A dwelling, house, abode.—dōmi, At home.—domo, From home.—After verbs of motion: domum, To the house, home, homewards.*

**dōn-o**, ūvi, ūrum, āre, 1.v.a. [see do] *To give as a present; to present.*

**dūbitā-tiō**, tiōnis, f. [dubit(a)-o, "to doubt"] *A doubting, doubt, hesitation.*

**dūb-īto**, itāvi, Itātum, itāre, 1. v. n. intens. [primitive form dū-bo, fr. dū-o, "two"] *To hesitate, doubt, be in doubt.*

**dūb-īus**, ia, ūum, adj. [obsol. dūbo, "to move two ways, vibrate to and fro;" fr. dūo, "two"] *Doubtful, uncertain.*

**dū-cent-i**, ae, a, ūnum, adj. plur. [duo, "two;" cent-um, "a hundred"] *Two hundred.*

**dūco**, duxi, ductum, ducēre, 3. v. a. *To draw, lead, conduct, in the widest sense.—Ducere uxorem, to lead a wife (home), i.e. to marry.—Ducere in matrimonium, to lead (home) for marriage, i.e. to marry.—Of a commander: To lead, move or march troops; induce; reckon regard; to draw out, prolong.*

**dum**, adv. [akin to diu] *While, whilst, while that; until, until that.*

**dū-o**, ae, o, ūnum, adj. plur. *Two [δύο].*

**dū-dēcim**, num. adj. plur. indecl. [for duō-dēcem; fr. duo, "two;" decem, "ten"] *Twelve.*

**dūodēcim-us**, a, ūum, num. adj. [dūodēcim, "twelve"] *Twelfth.*

**dū-dē-vīginti**, num. adj. plur. indecl. [duo, "two;" dē, "from;" viginti, "twenty"] *Eighteen.*

**dū-plex**, plīcis, adj. [for du-plic-s; fr. dū-o, "two;" plīc-o, "to fold"] *Two-fold, double.*

**dūr-us**, a, ūum, adj. *Hard, severe, toil some, difficult.*

**dux**, dūcis, comm. gen. [for duc-s; fr. dūc-o, "to lead"] *A guide, conductor.—Of troops: A leader, general.*

## E.

**ē**; see ex.

**ēd-ītus**, Ita, Itum, adj. ēd-o, "to put, or set, forth" *Raised, elevated.*

**ē-do**, didi, ditum, dēre, 3. v. a. [ē (=ex), "out;" do, "to put"] *To put out or forth.*

**ē-dūco**, duxi, ductum, dūcōre, 3. v. a. [e (=ex), "out;" dūco, "to lead"] *To lead out or forth.*

**ēf-fēmīn-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for ex-fēmīn-o; fr. ex, denoting "change;" fēmina, "a woman"] *To render effeminate, enervate.*

**effēro**, extūli, ēlātum, efferre, v. a. irreg. [for ex-fēro; for ex, "out; fēro, "to bear"] *To spread abroad, publish, proclaim.*

**ef-fīcio**, fēci, fectum, fīcēre, 3. v. a. [for ex-fācio; fr. ex, "out;" fācio, "to make"] *With double Acc.: To make or render an object that which is expressed by the second Acc.*

**ēgo**, Gen. mēi (plur. nos), pers. pron. *I.*

**ē-grēdīor**, gressus sum, grēdi, 3. v. dep. [for ē-grādīor; fr. e (=ex), "out;" grādīor, "to step"] *To go out or come forth; to leave.*

**ēgrēgiē**, adv. [see egregius] *Excellently, admirably.*

**ē-grēg-iūs**, ia, ium, adj. [ē (=ex), "from out of;" grex, grēg-is, "a flock"] *Excellent, eminent.*

**ēlectus**, a, um [pf. part. of eligo] *Chosen.*

**ēlīgo**, lēgi, lectum, ligēre, 3. v. a. [e, "out of" lēgo, "to choose"] *To choose or pick out; to select.*

**ē-mīgro**, mīgrāvi, mīgrātum, mīgrārē, 1. v. n. [e (=ex), "from;" migro, "to depart"] *To depart from, emigrate.*

**ē-mitto**, mīsi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [ē (=ex), "away from"] mitto, "to send"] *To throw away, cast aside or off.*

**ēmo**, ēmi, emptum, ēmēre, 3. v. a. [ēmo, "to take"] *To buy, purchase.*

**ēmōl-ēmentum**, īmenti, n. [ēmol-ītor, "to work out"] *Effort, extortion, labour, difficulty.*

**ēnim**, conj.: *For.*

**ē-nuntio**, nuntiāvi, nuntiātum, nuntiārē, 1. v. a. [e (=ex), "out;" nuntio, "to tell"] *To divulge, disclose, reveal.*

**ēo**, adv. [prob. for eom (=cum), old acc. sing. masc. of pron. is, "this, that"] *Of place: To that place, there. Of a cause or reason: For the cause or reason that follows; on that account.*

**ēo**, ivi, or ii, Itum, ire, v. n. *To go* [root I, akin to Sans. root I, Gr. ī-évai, "to go"]

**ēōdem**, adv. [for eodem, (=eundem), old acc. masc. sing. of idem, "the same"] *To the same place.*

**ēqu-ē-s**, Itis, m. [for equi-(t)s; fr. ēqu-us, "a horse;" (t), epenthetic; I, root of ēo, "to go"] *A horseman.—Plur.: Horse-soldiers, cavalry.*

**ēqu-ester**, estris, estre, adj. [equi-us, "a horse"] *Pertaining to a horse, horse-, cavalry.*

**ēquitā-tus**, tūs, (Dat. ēqui-tātu, ch. 39, etc.) m. [ēquit(a)-o, "to be an equus or horseman; to ride"] *Horse soldiers, cavalry.*

**ēqūus**, i, m. [AC, "swift:" cp. ὄκυς, aquila] *A horse.—ex equis, on horseback.*

**ē-ripiō**, ripūi, reptum, ripēre, 3. v. a. [for ē-ripiō; fr. ē (=ex), "away;" riþio, "to snatch away"] *To snatch away.—With Dat. of person and Acc. of thing: To deprive one of something; to deliver, set free.*

**ērup-tiō**, tiōnis, f. [ērumpo, "to sally out"] *A sortie, sally.*

**ēt**, conj. *And;—et...et, both...and* [akin to Gr. ētι, "moreover."]

**ētiām**, conj. [akin to et] *And also, and furthermore; likewise, also, besides; even.*

**ētiām-si**, conj. [etiam, "even;" si, "if"] *Even if, although.*

**et-si**, conj. [et, "even;" si, "if"] *Even if, although.*

**ē-vello**, velli and vulsi, vulsum, vel-lēre, 3. v. a. [ē (=ex), "out;" vello, "to pluck out"] *To pluck out, pull out.*

**ēven-tus**, tūs, m. [ēvēn-io, "to turn out, issue"] *Issue, result, consequence, event.*

**ex (ē)**, prep. gov. abl.: *Of local relations: Out of;—ex vinculis dicere, to plead in chains.—From:—ex equis, (from horses, i.e.) on horseback; ex itinere, (out of the march, i.e.) during or on the march.—From, in consequence of; in accordance, or conformity with; through, by;—ex communī consensu, by common consent.—Of time: After:—diēm ex die, day after day.—Of parentage: By.*

**ex-āgitō**, agitāvi, agitatē, agitāre, 1. v. a. [ex, "without force;" agitō, "to disturb, chase"] *To harass.*

**ex-ānim-o.** āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [ex, implying "negation"; ānim-a, "life"] In Pass. only: *To be deprived of strength; to be weakened; to be weak or exhausted.*

**ex-audiō,** audiū or audī, auditum, andire, 4.v.a. [ex, "thoroughly;" audio, "to hear"] *To hear thoroughly; to hear distinctly or clearly.*

**ex-cēdo,** cessi, cessum, cēdere, 3. v. n. [ex, "out or away;" cēdo, "to go"] *To go out or away; to withdraw, depart.*

**ex-cipio,** cēpi, ceptum, cipēre, 3. v. a. [for ex-cipio; fr. ex, "without force;" cipio, "to take"] *To take, receive; to intercept, encounter.*

**excur-sio,** sionis, f. [for excurr-sio; fr. excurr-o, "to run out;" hence, "to sally forth"] *A sally, onset, attack.*

**exemplum,** i. n. *An example in the widest acceptation of the word; A way, manner, sort, kind.*

**ex-ēo,** ivi or li, itum, ire, v. n. irreg. [ex, "out or forth;" ēo, "to go"] *To go out, or forth, from.*

**ex-ercēo,** ercēi, ercītum, ercēre, 2. v. a. [for ex-arceo; fr. ex, "out;" arceo, "to inclose"] *To practise, exercise.*

**exercitā-tio,** tīonis, f. [exercit(a)-o, "to exercise"] *Exercise, practice.*

**exercitā-tus,** ta, tum, adj. [id.] *Well, or fully exercised, trained, practised.*

**exercit-us,** Itūs, m. [exercēo, "to exercise"] *A trained, exercised, or disciplined body of men; an army.*

**exigū-itas,** Itātis, f. [exigū-us (of time), "short"] *Shortness.*

**exim-iūs,** ia, lum, adj. [exim-o, "to take out"] *Of abstract things: Extraordinary, remarkable.*

**existimā-tio,** tīonis, f. [existim(a)-o, "to think"] *Opinion, judgment.*

**ex-istīmo,** istimāvi, istimātum, istimāre, 1. v. a. [for ex-aestimo; fr. ex, "without force;" aestimo, "to think"] *To think, imagine, deem, suppose.*

**expēdi-tus,** ta, tum, adj. [expēdi-o, "to set free"] *Unencumbered, without baggage, light-armed.*

**ex-pello,** pūli, pulsum, pellēre, 3. v. a. [ex, "out;" pello, "to drive"] *To drive out, expel.*

**ex-pēriōr,** pertusum, pērirī, 4.v.dep. [ex, "thoroughly;" obsol. pēriōr, "to go or pass through;" hence, "to try"] *To try, prove, put to the test; to make trial of, experience.*

**explōra-tor,** tōris, m. [explor(a)-o, "to spy out"] *A spy, scout.*

**explōrā-tus,** ta, tum, adj. [explor(a)-o, "to search out"] ("Searched out") *Certain, ascertained, sure, known.*

**ex-prīmo,** pressi, pressum, prīmēre, 3. v. a. [for ex-prēmo; fr. ex, "out;" prēmo, "to press"] *To extort, elicit.*

**ex-pugno,** pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnāre, 1. v. a. [ex, "thoroughly;" pugno, "to fight"] *To take by assault; to storm, capture.*

**ex-quirō,** quisivi, quisitum, quirēre, 3. v. a. [for ex-quero; fr. ex, "very much;" quaero, "to seek for"] *To search out, ascertain.*

**ex-sēquor,** sēquūtus sum, sēqui, 3. v. dep. [ex, denoting "to the end or close;" sequor, "to follow"] *To follow up, carry out, enforce.*

**ex-spectō,** spectāvi, spectātum, spectāre, 1. v. a. [ex, "very much;" specto, "to look out"] *To wait for, await, wait to see; to expect.*

**ex-strūo (-trūo),** struxi, structum, strūre, 3. v. a. [ex, "thoroughly;" strūo, "to heap up"] *To pile up, raise.*

**ex-ter (-tērus),** tēra, tērum, adj. [ex, "out"] *On the outside, outward;—extremum agmen, (the last part, or extremity, of the line of an army on the march, etc.; i.e.) the rear:—in extremis suis rebus, (in their extreme circumstance; i.e.) in their utmost or greatest danger.*

**extrā,** prep. gov. acc. [contr. f. extērā, abl. sing. fem. of extērus, "outward"] *Out, or outside, of; beyond.*

**extrēmus,** ā, um, sup. adj.; see extēr. As Subst.: **extrēmum,** i, n : *The end, extremity.*

**ex-ūro,** ussi, ustum, ūrēre, 3. v. a. [ex, denoting "completeness;" ūro, "to burn"] *To burn up, consume by fire.*

## F.

**fācil-e,** adv. [facil-is, "easy"] *Easily, with ease:—non facile, not easily, i. e. with difficulty.*

**fāc-ilis,** īle, adjec. [fāc-io, "to do"] *Easily, devoid of difficulty.*

**fāc-inus,** Inōris, n. [fāc-io, "to do"] *In bad sense: A bad deed, crime.*

**fācio,** fēci, factum, fācēre, 3. v. a. and n. [root akin to FU, "to be" in a causative sense: cp. fu-i; -bam in imperf. act. of verbs; Gk. φάω] *Act: To make, in the widest acceptation of the term:—proelium facere, to make, i.e., to engage in battle; so hoc proelio facto, when this engagement had taken place: potestatem sui*

*facere*, (*to make an opportunity of himself*; i.e. at ch. 40) *to afford an opportunity of fighting with him*:—*facere judicium*, (*to make i.e.*) *to form an opinion*:—*To do*,—*Neut.*: With adverbs: *To act, behave*:—*frēcere arroganter, to act arrogantly or presumptuously*.

*fac-tio*, *tīōnis*, f. [*fac-iō*; in the sense of “*to take part, to side*”] *A party, side, faction*.

*fac-tum*, *ti*, n. [*fac-iō*, “*to do*”] *A deed, action, act*.

*fācul-tas*, *tātis*, f. [obso. *fācul* (= *fācili-s*), “*easy*”] *Power, means, opportunity, supply, abundance*. Plur.: *Means, resources*.

*fallo*, *fēfelli*, *falsum, fallēre*, 3. v. a. *To deceive* [akin to Gr. *σφάλλω*].

*fā-mes*, *mis*, f. *Hunger, famine*; [root *BHAG*, “*to eat*”; cp. *fagus*; Gr. *φηγός*, *φαγεῖν*; Goth. *boka*; Eng. *beech*].

*fāmili-ia*, *iae*, f. [for *fāmūl-ia*; fr. *fāmūl-us*, “*a servant*”] (“*the whole number of servants under one master; a household*”; hence) *A family*.

*fāmili-āris*, *āre*, adj. [*fāmili-a* *O*, or *belonging to, a family; intimate, friendly, on good terms*.—As Subst. *fāmiliāris*, is, m. *An intimate friend*.

*fas*, n. indecl. *The will of the gods*:—or it may be translated by the English *adjud.* *Lawful, permitted, allowable*.

*fastigo*, *āvi*, *ātum*, *āre*, 1. v. a. *To make pointed; to raise or bring up to a point*.—P. perf. pass.: *Sloping up to a point, sloping down, steep*.

*fā-tum*, *ti*, n. [*f(a)-or*, “*to speak*”] *Destiny, fate*.

*fāvēo*, *fāvi*, *fautum, fāvēre*, 2, v. n. With Dat.: *To be well-disposed or favourable to; to favour*.

*fēlic-itas*, *itatis*, f. [*felix, felic-is* “*fortunate*”] *Good fortune, success*.

*fēr-ax*, *ācis*, adj. [*fēr-o*, (of the soil), “*to bear, bring forth*”] *Fruitful, fertile, productive*.

*fēre*, adv. *Nearly, almost, about*.

*fēr-o*, *tūli*, *lātum*, *ferre*, v. a. [root *FER*, “*to bear*”: cp. *φέρω*, *φέρνη*, *φόπος*, *φαρέτρα*; *ferax*, *fertilis*, *fortis*, *fortuna*; Goth. *bar*, *baira*; A.S. *bere*, (Scot. *bere*, *barley*). The root *TUL* or *TOL*, “*to bear*” appears in *τάλω*, *τάλαττον*; *tollo*, *tolero*; Gothic, *thula*; O.H.G. *dolem*] *To bear, to carry; to submit to, suffer, tolerate, endure, any person or thing*.—Of aid: *To carry, bring, render*.

*fer-rum*, *ri*, n. *Iron; an iron implement of any kind; esp. a sword*.

*fertil-itas*, *itatis*, f. [*fertil-is*, “*fruitful*”] *Fertility*.

*fēr-us*, *a*, *um*, adj. [*Fierce, savage* [akin to *fer*, *Aescle* *diab*, “*a wild animal*.”]] *fēd-ēs*, *ēi*, f. [*fid-o*, “*to trust*;”] *Trust, faith; fidelity; pledged or plighted faith; a promise*.

*filia*, *ae*, f. [akin to *filius*] *A daughter*.

*filius*, *ii*, m. [root *FU*, “*to beget*”] *A son*.

*fin-go*, *finxi*, *fictum, fingēre*, 3. v. a. [akin to Gr. *θιγγάνω*, “*to touch*;” Lat. *festigō*, *figura*; Goth. *deigu*; Eng. *dough*] *To form, mould, fashion, etc.*:—*vultum fingere*, (*to form, or mould, etc., the countenance, i.e.*) *to command their countenance, so as to hide the fears that filled them*.

*fi-nis*, *nis*, m. [probably for *fid-nis*, fr. *findo*, “*to divide*,” through root *FID*] *An end*. Piur.: *Borders of a country; and so territory, land, country, included within borders*.

*fin-itimus*, *itima*, *itimum*, adj. [*fin-is; see finis*] *Bordering upon, adjoining, neighbouring* As Subst.: *finitimi, orūm*, m. plur. *The neighbouring peoples*

*fio*, *factus, sum, fīeri*, v. pass. irreg. [see *facio*] *To be made; to become; to happen or come to pass; to be brought about*.

*fir-mus*, *ma*, *murm*, adj. [for *fēr-mus*. fr. *fēr-o*; hence, “*able to bear*” (see *fero*)] *Strong, firm*.

*flāg-ito*, *itāvi*, *itātum*, *itāre*, 1, v. a. *To demand earnestly.—With double Acc.: To demand something earnestly of one*

*flēo*, *flēvi*, *flētum, flēre*, 2, v. n. [root *PLU*, “*to flow*” cp. *φλέω*, *fluō*] *To weep*.

*flē-tus*, *tūs*, m. [*flē-o*, “*to weep*”] *A weeping, lamentation*.

*flōre-ns*, *ntis*, adj. [*flōre-o*, “*to flourish*”] *Flourishing, prosperous*.

*flū-men*, *minis*, n. [*flū-o*, “*to flow*”] *A stream, river*.

*flūo*, *fluxi*, *fluxum, flūre*, 3.v.n. [see *flēo*] *To flow*.

*fōrē* (= *futurum esse*), fut. inf. of *sum*. *Fōrē uti*, (*that it would be, that; i.e. that the result would be, that*).

*for-s*, *tis* (only in nom. and abl.), f. [prob. for *fer-tis*; fr. *fēr-o*, “*to bring*”] *Chance, hap.—Adverbial Abl.: forte, By chance or accident, perchance*.

*for-tis*, *te*, adj. [see *fero*] *Brave, bold, courageous*.

*fort-iter*, adv. [*fort-is*, “*brave*”] *Bravely, boldly, with bravery*.

**fort-itūdo**, Itūdīs, 1. [fort-is "brave"] *Courage, valour, bravery.*

**fort-ūna**, ūnae, f. [fors, fortis, "chance"] *Fortune, whether good or bad.* Plur.: *Property, fortunes.*

**fos-sa**, ae, f. [for fod-sa; fr. föd-Io, "to dig"] *A ditch, trench, fosse.*

**frāngō**, frēgi, fractum, frangēre, 3. v. a. [root RAG or REG: cp. Gr. πέγνυμι, πράξις; Lat. friare; Ger. brechen; Eng. break, wreck] *To shatter, wreck, ruin, etc.*

**frāter**, tris, m. *A brother*

**frāter-nus**, na, num, adj. [frater, "a brother"] *Of, or belonging to, a brother; fraternal.*

**frēm-itūs**, Itūs, m. [frēm-o, "to roar"] *A roaring; a dull, heavy sound or noise.*

**frons**, frontis, f. [akin to Gr. ὁ-φρούς; Eng. brow] *The fore part, or front, of anything.*

**frig-us**, ūris, n. [akin to Gr. πίγων; Lat. frigeo; Ger. friegen; Eng. freeze] *Cold, frost.*

**fructū-ōsus**, ūsa, ūsum, adj. [fructus, (uncontr. gen.) fructuīs, "fruit"] *Abounding in fruit, fruitful, fertile, productive.*

**fruc-tus**, tūs, m. [for frugvts; fr. fru-or, "to enjoy"] *An enjoyment, enjoyment; fruit, produce of the soil*

**frūment-ārius**, āria, ārium, adj. [frument-um, "corn"] *Pertaining to corn; res frūmentāria, corn, provisions. Of places. Abounding in corn.*

**frūment-um**, menti, n. [frū-or, "to eat"] *Corn, grain.* Plur.: *Corn. i.e. crops.*

**frux**, frūgis (mostly pl.) f. [for frug-s; fr. FRUG, a root of fru-or, "to eat"] *Fruits of the earth; produce of the fields.*

**fūg-a**, ae, f. [fūgio, "to flee"] *Flight; in fugam conjicere, (to throw into, i.e.) to put to flight, rout.*

**fūgio**, fūgi, fūgitum, fūgēre, 3. v. n. [akin to φύγει, root of φεύγω, "to flee"] *To flee, flee away, take to flight.*

**fūgitiv-us**, i, m. [fūgitiv-us, "fleeing away"] *A runaway, fugitive.*

**fū-mus**, mi, m. [root DHU, "to shake;" cp. θυμός, θύω, θῦμα; Lat. favilla; O.H.G. tunst (storm); Eng. dust] *Smoke.*

**fund-itor**, Itōris, m. [fund-a, "a sling"] *A slinger.*

**fundo**, fūdi, fūsum, fundēre, 3. v. a. [root FUD, "to pour out:" cp. Gr. χύσειν, χέω; Eng. gush] *To rout or overthrow.*

**fūrōr**, ūris, m. [fur-o] *Rage, fury, madness.*

## G.

**gāl-ēa**, ēae, f. [root KAL, "to cover;" cp. καλύπτω, celo] *A helmet, head-piece.*

**gēnēr-ātim**, adv. [gēnus, gēnēr-is, "a race"] *By races, nations, or tribes.*

**gen-s**, tis, f. [root GEN, "to produce;" γίγνομαι, γένεσις; gigno, genus, gnascor; Goth. kuni (=Lat. genus)] *A nation, tribe.*

**gēnūs**, ēris, n. [see gens] *A race, stock, family.* Of things: *Kind, sort.*

**gērō**, gessi, gestum, gērēre, 3. v. a. *To do, perform, carry on.* Of war: *To wage.*

**glādiūs**, ii, m. *A sword.*

**glōr-ia**, iae, f. [for clu-oria: fr. root ELU, "to hear:" cp. Gr. κλέος, κλυτός, κλειτός; Lat. cluo, ausculto, cliens, in-cluytus] *Glory, renown, fame.*

**glōrī-or**, ātus, sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [glōrī-a, "boasting"] *To boast, vaunt, pride one's self, brag.*

**grandis**, e, adj. *Great, large.*

**grāt-ia**, iae, [grāt-us, "pleasing"] [see gratus] *Favour, kindness, shown by another to one's self; credit, influence.—Favour shown by one's self to another; courtesy, kindness.—In Abl. followed by Gen., Gerund in di, or Gen. with Gerundive: For the sake, or purpose, of; on account of. —Plur.: Thanks.*

**grātūlā-tiō**, tiōnis, f. [gratul(a)or] *Joy, rejoicing, congratulation.*

**grāt-ūlor**, ūlātus sum, ūlāri, 1. v. dep. [grāt-us, "pleasing"] *To wish one joy, to offer congratulations.*

**grātūs**, ta, tum, adj. [akin to χαρά, χαρίς; O.H.G. grierig, greedy] *Dear, pleasing, delightful*

**grāv-is**, e, adj. [akin to βαρύς: cp. βητή, βηθύνει; Lat. brutus] *Heavy, weighty; severe, dangerous.*

**grāvī-ter**, adv. [grav-is, "serious"] *Heavily, seriously, severely.*

**grāv-or**, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [grāv-is, "heavy"] *To feel vexed, or annoyed, at; to do something reluctantly.*

## H.

**hāb-eo**, ūi, itum, ēre, 2. v. a. *To have, in the widest acceptation of the term; to possess; to account, consider; to hold, i.e., to do, make, perform.*

**hibern-a**, ūrum, n. plur. [hibern-us, "winter;" root him, "to snow;" cp. hiems; Gk. χειών, χειμών, χειμά; Sansc. hima, "snow;" so Himalaya, "house of snow;" Himavat, "gifted with snow;"

*Imaus, Emodus]* With ellipse of *castra*, which is occasionally expressed. *Winter-camp, winter-quarters.*

**hic**, haec, hoc (Gen. hūjus; Dat. huic), pron. dem. [pronominal root i aspirated; e, a dem. suffix: cp. i-s, i-ta, i-pse; *This person or thing: As Subst.: This man, he.*

**hic**, adv. [1. hic] *In this place, here.*

**hīēm-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, l. v. n. [see under *hiberna*] *To winter; to have, or take up, winter-quarters.*

**hō-mo**, mīnis, comm. gen. [prob. same root as facio; generally referred to *humus*, "the ground," and so, "the one pertaining to the ground"] *A human being, a person; a man, a woman.*

**hōnes-tus**, ta, tum, adj. [for *honos-tus*; fr. *honos*. (= honor), "honour"] *Honourable*

**hōnor**, (**hōnos**), ūris, m.. *Honour, respect, esteem; public honour or distinction in recognition of service rendered to the state; official dignity, office.*

**hōnōr-i-fic-us**, a, um, adj. [for *hon-or-i-fac-us*; fr. *hōnor*, *hōnōr-is*; (i) connecting vowel; fac-io, "to do"] *That does honour to one; honourab.e.*

**hōra**, ae, f. [for *Fosara*; same root as *īeap*; Lat. ver; Slav. *jara* (spring); Zend. *yare*; Goth. *jer(a)*; Norw. *jaar*; Ger. *jahr*; Eng. *year*] *An hour.*

**horrēo**, no perf. nor sup., ēre, 2. v. a. *To shudder, or be frightened at.*

**hor-tor**, tātus sum, tāri, l. v. dep. [root AR or OR, "to raise;" cp. *ōprvui*] *To strongly urge; to exhort, advise.*

**hos-tis**, tis, comm. gen. [Sans. root *GHAS*, "to eat;" hence, the "one entertainer, friend, guest; an entertainer; a host]

**hos-pit-ūm**, ii, n. [hospes, hospit-is] *hospitality, entertainment.*

**hos-pes**, pītis, m. [akin to Sanscrit *GHAS*, "to eat;" and *pēt-o*, "to seek."] *A tained"] An enemy, or foe, of one's country. Plur.: The enemy.*

**hūc**, adv. [for *hoc*, adverbial neut. acc. of *hic*, "this"] *To this place, hither.*

**hūmān-itas**, Itātis, f. [hūmān-us, "kind;" also, "refined" in manners] *Kindness, humanity; courtesy, or polished, manners; refined behaviour.*

## I.

**ī-bi**, adv. [pronominal root, i] *In that place, there*

**ic-tus**, tūs, in [ic.o, "to strike"] *A stroke, blow.*

**i-dēm**, ēdēm, Idem, (Gen. ējusdem; Dat. ēdēm), pron. dem. [pronominal root i, with demonstrative suffix dem] *The same.*

**iden-tidēm**, adv. [for *Idem-tidēm*; fr. idem (neut. of *idem*), "the same;" the composition of *tidēm* is uncertain] *Repeatedly, from time to time, every now and then.*

**īdōnēus**, a, um, adj. *Fit, suitable, convenient.*

**Id-ūs**, ūum, f. plur. [prob. Id-ūo, "to divide;" root VID, as in *divido*, hence the day dividing the month] *The Ides:* the fifteenth day of the months March, May, July and October; the thirteenth day of the remaining months.

**ignis**, is (Abl. igni), m. *Fire.*

**īgnō-ro**, rāvi, rātum, rāre, l. v. a. [for *in-gno-ro*; fr. in, "negative" particle; root GNO; whence no-seo, old form *gnoscō*, "to know"] *Not to know, or know of; to be ignorant of, to be unacquainted with.*

**īgnosco**, gnōvi, gnōtum, gnoscēre, 3. v. n. [fr. *in-gnosco*; fr. in, "not;" *gnosco* (= nosco), "to know" with reference to a fault- or crime] *With Dat.: To pardon, forgive.*

**il-le**, ia, lud (Gen. illius; Dat. illi), pron. adj. [for *is-le* fr *is*] *That.*

**illic**, adv. ille (pron.), "that"] *In that place, there.*

**im-mortālis**, mortāle, adj. [for *im-mortālis*: fr. in, "not;" *mortālis*, "mortai"] *Immortal, undying.*

**impēdi-mentum**, menti, n. [impedit-o] *A hindrance, obstacle, impediment.* Plur.: *The baggage of troops.*

**im-pēd-īo**, iwi or li, itum, ire, 4. v. a. [for *in-pēd-īo*; fr. in, "in"; pes, pēd-is, "the foot"] *To hinder, obstruct, impede.*

**impēditus**, a, um, P. perf. pass. of *impēdi-*—*Of troops: Encumbered with baggage.*

**im-pello**, pāli, pulsum, pellēre, 3. v. a. [for *in-pello*; fr. in, "against;" *pello*, "to drive"] *To push forwards; to impel, urge, instigate.*

**im-pendēo**, no perf. nor sup., pendēre, 2. v. n. [for *in-pendeo*; fr. in, "upon or over;" *pendeo*, "to hang down"] *To overhang.*

**impērā-tor**, tōris, m. [imper(a)-o, "to command"] *A commander, esp. a commander-in-chief.*

**impērā-tum**, ti, n. [imper(a)-o, "to command"] *A command, order.*

**impér-itus**, périta, péritum, adj. [for in-péritus, fr. in, "not;" péritus, "skilful"] With Gen.: *Unskillful, unskilled, or inexperienced in, not acquainted with.*

**impér-iūm**, li, n. [imper-o, "to command"] *Command; supreme power, dominion.*

**impéro**, péravi, pératum, pérare, 1. v. a. [for in-páro; fr. in, "upon;" páro, "to put"] *To command, order, bid; to make a requisition for, to demand.*

**im-pétro**, pétrovi, pétratum, pétreare, 1. v. a. [for in-patro; fr. in, "without force;" patro, "to perform"] *To get, obtain.*

**impé-t-us**, ūs, m. [impéto, "to fall upon, or attack"] *An attack, assault, onset; impetuosity, force.*

**im-plōro**, plōravi, plōratum, plōrare, 1. v. a. [for in-ploro; fr. in, "upon," plōro, "to bewail;" hence, "to cry out aloud"] *To beg, beseech, entreat, implore.*

**im-pōno**, pōsāi, pōsitum, pōnēre,, 3. v. a. [for in-pōno; fr. in, "upon;" pōno, "to put"] With Dat.: *To put or place, upon, to mount on horses. Of a tribute: To impose.*

**im-porto**, portāvi, portātum, portāre, 1. v. a. [for in-porto; for in, "into;" porto, "to carry, or bring"] *To carry or bring into a country, to import.*

**im-prōbus**, prōba, prōbum, adj. [for in-prōbus; fr. in, "not;" prōbus, "good"] *Had abominable, wicked.*

**imprōvis-o**, adv. [imprōvisus, "unforeseen"] *Unexpectedly, suddenly, on a sudden.*

**im-prōvisus**, prōvisa, prōvisum, adj. [for in-provisus; fr. in, "not;" prōvisus, "foreseen"] *Not foreseen, unforeseen, unexpected:—de improviso, unexpectedly.*

**im-pugno**, pugnāvi, pugnatūm, pugnāre, 1. v. a. [for in pugno; fr. in, "against;" pugno] *To fight against; to attack.*

**impún-e**, adv. [impun-is, "unpunished"] *Without punishment, without harm or loss, with impunity.*

**impún-itas**, itatīs, f [id] *Freedom, or safety, from punishment; impunity.*

**in**, prep. gov. abl. and acc.: With Abl.: *In; among.*—With Gerunds or Gerundives: *In, during; on, upon.*—With neut. adj. to form adverbial expressions: in occulto, secretly, in secret.—With Acc.: *Into.*—With verbs of rest to denote going into or to, a place and then doing the action denoted by the verb:—collocare propter quas suas nuptum in alias civitates,

*(to take his kinswomen, to be married, into other states, and there give them in marriage; i.e.) to settle his kinswomen in marriage in other states.—Upon; against, at; for; to, towards; after, according to:—mirum in modum, after a wonderful manner.*

**in-cen-do**, di, sum, děre, 3. v. a. [for in-can-do; fr. in, "in or into;" root CAN, "to set on fire;" Gr κάω] *To set on fire, burn.*

**in-cídō**, cídi, cásym, cídere, 3. v. n. [for in-cádo; fr. in, "into;" cádo, "to fall"] *With in and Acc. of person: To fall into the hands of.*

**in-cídō**, cidi, císum, cídere, 3.v.a. [for in-caedo; fr. in, "into;" caedo, "to cut"] *To cut partially; to make a cut in.*

**in-cíp̄o**, cépi, ceptum, cípcré, 3. v. a. [for in-cápio; fr. in, "in;" cápio, "to take"] *To begin, commence.*

**incítātus**, a, um: P. perf. pass. of incito: *Of a horse: At full speed.*

**in-cítō**, citávi, citátum, citáre, 1. v. a. [in, "without force; cito, "to set in rapid motion"] *To arouse, excite, incite.*

**incōlo**, cōlūi, cultum, cōlēre, 3. v. a. and n. [in, "in;" colo, to "dwell"] Act: *To inhabit.* Neut.: *To dweli, reside.*

**in-cōlūmis**, cōlūme, adj. [in, in "intensive" force; obsol. cōlūmis, "safe"] *Quite safe, safe, in safety.*

**incommōd-um**, i, n. [incommodus, "troublesome"] *Trouble, misfortune, disaster.*

**incrédibilis**, crēdibile, adjective [in, "not;" crēdibilis, "to be believed"] *Not to be believed, incredible, extraordinary.*

**in-crēp-ito**, itávi, itátum, itáre, 1. v. a. and n. freq. [incrēp-o, "to make a noise against; to exclaim loudly against"] Act: *To inveigh against; to taunt, reproach.* Neut.: *To taunt, revile.*

**in-cús-o**, ávi, átum, áre, 1.v.a. [for incaus-o fr. in, "against;" caus-a, "a charge"] *To blame, find fault with, censure.*

**incur-sus**, sūs, m. [for incur-sus; fr. incur-o, "to run against;" hence, "to attack"] *An attack, onset, assault.*

**i-n-de**, adv. [probably fr. pronominal root i; with n, epenthetic; de, suffix] Of place *From that place or quarter, thence. Of time. After that.*

**indic-iūm**, li, n. [indic-o, "to make known"] *Information.*

**in-dico**, dixi, dictum, dicēre, 3. v. a. [in "augmentative" force; dico, "to say"] *To declare publicly; to proclaim, appoint.*

**indign-itās**, Itātis, f. [indign-us, "un-worthy"] *Unworthy treatment, indignity, etc.*

**indiligen-ter**, adv. [for indiligent; fr. indiligens, indiligent-is, "careless"] *Carelessly, heedlessly, negligently.*

**indūco**, duxi, ductum, dūcere, 3 v. a. [in, "into;" dūco, "to lead"] *To move, excite, stimulate.*

**indulgēo**, ulsi, ultum, ulgēre, 2 v. n. With Dat.: *To be kind, or indulgent, to, to favour.*

**in-dūo**, dnēre, dūtum, dūcre, 3. v. a. [cp. évēvw,] *To put on.*

**in-ēo**, Ivi or II, Itum, Ire, v. a. [in, "into;" éo, "to go"] *To enter upon, begin, commence.—Of a plan: To form, adopt.*

**in-erm-is**, e, adj. [for in-armis; fr. in, "not;" arma, "arms"] *Not having, or without arms; unarmed.*

**in-erm-us**, a, um, adj. [for in-arm-us, fr. in, "not;" arn: a, "arms"] *Not having, or without arms; unarmed—The form inermus is rare; inermis is generally found.*

**infér-ior**, Ius, comp. adj. [infer-us, "that is below"] *Lower*

**infēro**, tūli, (il)-lātum, ferre, v. a. [in; fero, "to bear;" in, "into"] *To bear, carry, or bring, into or to; [in "against;" To bring, or carry against:—bellum inferre (to carry war against one, i.e.) to make war upon one, wage war against one;—so inferre calamitatem or injuriam, to inflict a calamity or injury; inferre vulnera, to inflict wounds; signa inferre, (to carry the standards against one; i.e.) to advance to the attack. Of a cause or reason: To assign, allege.*

**in-fērus**, ēra, ērum, adj. [in, "in;" suffix ērus, with digamma or f prefixed] Pos.: *That is below, beneath, or underneath; low.*

**in-flecto**, flecti, inflexum, inflectrē, 3. v. a. [in, "without force;" flecto, "to bend"] *To bend. With personal pron. in reflexive force: Of things: To bend itself, become bent.*

**in-flūo**, fluxi, fluxum, flūere, 3 v. n. [in, "into;" flūo, "to flow"] *Of a river: To flow or run into; to empty itself into.*

**in-gens**, gentis, adj. [in, "not;" gens "a race or kind"] *Vast, immense, huge.*

**in-grēdīor**, gressus sum, grēdi, 3. v. dep. [for in-grādīor; fr. In, "into;" grādīor, "to step"] *To enter.*

**iniqu-ītas** (quadrisyll.) Itātis, f. [iniquus, "uneven;" also "unfavorable"] *Unevenness; unfavourableness.*

**in-imicus**, Imica, Imicūm, adj. [for in-amicus; fr. in, "not," amicus, "friendly"] *Unfriendly, hostile, mimical.* As Sust. **in-imicus**, i, m. *A private enemy or foe.*

**in-iquus**, Iqua, Iquum, adj. [for inaequus; fr. in, "not;" aequus, "just"] *Unjust.*

**in-itium**, tī, n. [Ineo, "to go in,"] *A beginning, commencement.*

**in-jicīo**, jēci, jectum, jēcēre, 3. v. a. [for in-jácio, fr. in, "into;" jácio, "to throw"] *Mentally, with Acc. of thing and Dat. of person, and in Pass. with Dat. of person alone: To infuse something into one; to inspire one with some feeling.*

**injür-ia**, ae, f. [injür-ius, "injurious"] *Unjust or wrongful conduct, injustice; a wrong, injury.—Adverbial Abl.: Injuriā, unjustly, undeservedly, without cause.*

**in-jus-sus**, sūs (only found in Abl Sing.), m. [for in-jub-sus, fr. in, "not;" jüb-ēo, to "command"] *Without command:—injussu suo, without his command or order.*

**in-nascor**, nātus sum, nasci, 3. v. dep. [in, "in;" nascor, "to be born"] *Mentally. To arise, or spring up, in the mind; to be produced*

**innōcentī-a**,iae, f. [innōcents, innōcent-is, "innocent"] *Uprightness, integrity, innocence*

**inōp-ia**,iae, f. [inōps, Inōp-is, "without means"] *Want, lack, scarcity.*

**inōpina-ns**, ntis, adj. [in, "not;" opin(a)-or, "to expect"] *Not expecting, of one's guard, unaware.*

**in-quīro**, quisivi, quisitum, quirēre, 3. v. a. [for in-quaero, ; fr. in, "without force;" quaero, "to seek"] *Mentally: Without object: To enquire, make enquiries.*

**in-sciens**, scientis, adj. [in, "not;" sciens, "knowing"] *Unaware, without one's knowledge.*

**in-sēquor**, sēquūtus sum, sēqui, 3. v. dep. [in, "after or upon;" sēquor, "to follow"] *To follow after or cleve upon; to pursue, press upon the fleeing enemy.*

**insid-iae**, lārum, f. plur. [insid-ēo, "to take up a position in a place"] *An ambush, ambuscade; artifice, plot, treachery.*

**insign-e**, is, n. [insign-is, "having a mark on it"] (*That which has a mark on it;* hence, "a distinctive mark," etc.; hence) *A standard, ensign.*

**in-sign-is**, e, adj. [in, "upon;" sig-

num, "a mark"] *Marked, remarkable, especial.*

**in-siliō**, siliū and sili, no sup., silire, 3. v. n. [for in-salio; fr. in, "upon;" sālio, "to leap"] *To leap on, or upon.*

**in-sisto**, stiti, no sup., sistere, 3. v. n. [in, "upon;" sisto, "to set one's self to stand"] *With Dat.: To stand on or upon.*

**insolen-tēr**, adv., [for insolent-ter; fr. insolens, insolentis, "insolent"] *Insolently.*

**in-sta-r**, n. indecl. [in, "in;" STA, root of sto, "to stand"] *A likeness of; like, corresponding to, resembling.*

**in-stitūō**, stitūi, stitūtum, stitūre, 3. v. a. [for in-statūo; fr. in, "without force;" stātūo, "to set"] *Of persons: To train up, instruct.*

**institū-tūm**, ti, n. [institū-o, "to institute"] *Institution, custom.*

**in-sto**, stiti, stātum, stāre, 1. v. n. [in, "upon;" sto, "to stand"] *To press hard, assail, vigorously.—Of time: To be close at hand.*

**in-strūō**, struxi, structum, strūre, 3. v. a. [in, "without force;" strūo, "to build"] *Of troops: To arrange, draw up, form.*

**intel-līgo**, lexi, lectum, ligere, 3 v. a. [for inter-lēgo; fr. inter "between;" lēgo, "to choose"] *To perceive, understand, comprehend.*

**inter**, prep. gov. acc. *Between, among; inter se, among themselves, i.e. mutually, one with another. Of time: During*

**inter-cēdo**, cessi, cesso, cēdere, 3 v. n. [inter "between;" cēdo, "to go or come"] *Of time: To intervene; to be, or exist between*

**inter-cipio**, cēpi, ceptum, cipēre, 3. v. a. [for inter-capio; fr. inter, "between;" capio, "to take"] *Of things: To intercept; to seize in passing.*

**inter-clūdo**, clūsi, clūsum, clūdere, 3.v. a. [inter, "between;" clūdo (=cludo), "to shut"] *To cut off persons from supplies.*

**inter-dico**, dixi, dictum, dicēre, 3. v. n. [inter, "between;" dico, "to speak"] *With Dat. of person and Abl. of place: To prohibit one from coming into a place; to shut one out from a place.*

**inter-diu**, adv. [inter, "during;" dies, "day"] *During the day, by day.*

**interdum**, adv. [inter, "at intervals;" dum] *Sometimes, occasionally.*

**intēr-ēā**, adv. [for intēr-ēam; fr. inter, "between;" ēam, acc. sing. fem. of is] *Of time: Meanwhile, in the mean time.*

**inter-ficiō**, fēci, fectum, fēcēre, 3. v. a. [for inter-faciō; fr. inter, "between;" faciō, "to make"] *To destroy, esp. to kill, slay, slaughter.*

**intēr-im**, adv. [inter, "between;" im = sum, acc. masc sing. of is] *Meanwhile, in the meantime*

**intēr-ior**, ius. comp. adj. [comp. of obsol. adj. inter-us, "within"] *Inner; in the interior of a country.*

**inter-jiciō**, jēci, jectum, jēcēre, 3. v. a. [for inter-jacio; fr. inter, "between;" jacio, "to throw"] *To put, set, or place, between; to intersperse.*

**inter-mittō**, misi missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. and n [inter, "apart;" mitto, "to make to go"] *Act.: To leave off, or discontinue, for awhile; to interrupt the doing of a thing: intermissā nocte, a night having intervened. Neut.: to leave a space or interval.*

**internēc-īo**, lōnis, f. [internēc-o, "to kill utterly"] *Utter destruction, extermination.*

**inter-pell-o**, āvi, ātūm, ārē, 1. v. a. [inter, "between;" pello, "to drive"] *To obstruct, hinder, molest, disturb.*

**inter-pōno**, pōsūi, pōsūtum, pōnēre, 3. v. a. [inter, "between;" pōno, "to put"] *Of a pretext, reason, etc: To allege, interpose.*

**interpres**, ētis, comm. gen. *An interpreter.*

**inter-scindo**, scīdi, scissum, scindēre, 3.v.a. [inter, "between;" scindo, "to cut or tear"] *With accessory notion of destruction: To cut down, break up, tear to pieces, destroy.*

**inter-sum**, fūi, esse, v. n. [inter, "between;" sum, "to be"] *Of space, To be between, intervene.*

**inter-vallum**, valli, n. [inter, "between;" vallum, "the mound" of a camp] *An interval of space; distance.*

**in-texo**, texūi, textum, texēre] 3.v.a. [in, "in or among;" texo, "to weave"] *To interlace, intertwine.*

**intrā**, prep. gov. acc. [contr. fr. intērā. abl. sing. fem. of absol. intērus, "within"] *On the inside of, within.*

**in-tro**, trāvi, trātum, trārē, 1. v. n. *With accessory notion of force: To penetrate, get inside, enter.*

**intrō-dūco**, duxi, ductum, dūcēre, 3.v.a. [intro, "within, inside;" dūco, "to lead"] *Folld. by in c. Acc.: To lead within, inside of or into.*

**intrō-mitto**, misi, missum, mittēre, 3.v.a. [intro, "within;" mitto, "to send"] *To send within or inside; to send in.*

in-tūēor, tūltus sum, tācī, 2. v. dep. [in, "at or upon;" tūēor, "to look"] *To look at or upon; to cast the eyes down upon.*

in-ūsítātus, ūsítāta, ūsítātum, adj. [in, "not;" ūsítātus, "usual"] *Not usual, unusual, uncommon.*

in-ūtilis, ūtīle, adj. [in, "not;" ūtilis, "useful"] *Not useful, useless, of no use.*

in-věnīo, věni, ventum, věnīre, 4. v. a. [in, "upon;" věnīo, "to come"] *To find, discover.*

in-větērasco, větērāvi, no sup.; větērascēre, 3.v.a. [in, "without force;" větērasco, "to grow old"]. *To grow old: to be established.*

in-victus, vieta victum, adj. [in, "not;" victus, "conquered"] *Unconquered, unvanquished, not to be conquered, invincible.*

in-vídeo, vidi, visum, vídēre, 2. v. a. [in, "at or towards;" video, "to look"] *In a bad sense. To envy.*

invito, ávi, átum, áre, 1. v. a. *To invite*

in-vit-us, ta, tum, adj. *Unwilling, reluctant, against one's will.*

i-pse, psa, psum, pron. dem. [for is-pse; fr. is : suffix, pse] *Self, very, identical.*

irā-cundus, cunda, cundum, adj. [ira-scōr, "to be angry"] *Very angry or wrathful, full of rage or passion.*

ir-ridicūle, adv. [for in-ridicule; fr. in, "not;" ridicūle, "laughably, humorously"] *Not humorously, unwittingly; without wit or humour.*

ir-ridēo, risi, risum, ridēre, 2. v. n. [for in-video; fr. in, "without force;" ridēo, "to laugh;" hence "to laugh in ridicule"] *To laugh in ridicule; to mock, jeer.*

is, ēa, id, pron. dem. [pronominal root i] *This, that person or thing just mentioned.*

ita, adv.: *Thus, in this way or manner, so; in the following way or manner; accordingly.*

itā-que, conj. [ita, "thus;" quē, "and"] *And thus, and so. On this, or that account; therefore.*

item, adv.: *So, even so, in like manner; also, likewise.*

i-ter, tīmēris, n. [ēo, "to go," through root i] *Of troops: A march; a journey; a road, way.*

itēr-um, adv. *Anew, afresh, a second time, again.*

## J.

jā-cēo, cēl, cītum, cēre, 2. v. n. *To have fallen in battle, etc.; to be lying slain.*

jācio, jēci, jactum, jācēre, 3. v. a. *To throw, cast, fling.—Of earthworks: To throw up, construct by throwing up earth.*

jac-to, tāvi, tātum, tāre, 1. v. a. freq. [jāclo, "to throw"] *Of the arms: To throw or toss about.—Of matters: To agitate, discuss.*

jam, adv. [prob. for eam, fr. is, "this"] *At this time, now; already.*

jūba, ae, f. *The mane of a horse.*

jūbēo, jussi, jussum, jābēre, 2. v. a. *To order, command, bid.*

jūdīc-iūm, li, n. [jūdīco, "to judge"] *A trial; decree, decision; judgment, opinion.*

jū-dīc-o, ávi, átum, áre, 1. v. a. and n. [for jur-dīc-o; fr. jus, jūris, "law;" dīc-o, "to point out"] *Act: To decide, determine; to deem, consider, judge. Neut.: To settle, come to a decision or termination.*

jūg-um, i, n. [jungo, "to join," root JUG] *Of mountains: A height, summit ridge. A yoke formed by a spear fastened horizontally to the top of two other spears set upright in the ground, beneath which a vanquished force was compelled to pass as a token of submission.*

jū-mentum, menti, n. [for jug-mentum; fr. jungo, "to yoke;" root JUG] *A draught animal, beast of burden.*

jungo, junxi, junctum, jungēre, 3. v. a. [see jus] *To join, unite.*

jū-ro, rāvi, rātum, rāre, 1. v. n. [root YU, "to join" or "bind"] *To take an oath; to swear.*

jū-s, ris, n. [root YU, "to join," cp. ζεύρυμ, jungo] *Law, whether natural, human or divine. A right or privilege; power, authority.*

jus-jūra-nđum, Gen. juris-jura-nđi, n. [jus, "a right;" jur(a)-o, "to swear"] *An oath.*

jūst-itia, itiae, f. [see jus] *Justice.*

just-us, ta, tum, adj. [for jur-tus; fr. jus, juris, "law"] *Just, proper, right.*

jūvo, jūvi, jūtum, jūvare, 1. v. a. *To help, aid, assist.*

juxta, adv. [prob. for jug-sta; fr. JUG, root of jungo, "to join" STA, root of sto, "to stand"] *Close at hand, hard by, near.*

## K.

**Käl-endae**, endārum, f. plur. ("Things to be called out or proclaimed"; i.e., the Nones, whether they were to be on the fifth or seventh day of the month. The proclamation was always made by the Pontifices on the first day of the month; hence called) *The Kalends* [kälo=καλῶ, "to call out."]

## L.

**läb-or**, oris, m. [root LAB, "to get" or "to gain;" cp. ἀρεῖν] *Toil, exertion, labour.*

**lä bōr-o**, ävi, åtum, åre, 1. v. n. and a. [labor, "labour"] Neut.: *To labour, toil.* Or soldiers. *To be hard pressed; to be in danger.* Act.: *To labour at; to endeavour earnestly to effect.*

**läc-esso**, essivi or essli, essitum, essere, 3. v. a. intens. [see lacrima] *To attack, fall upon, assault, assail.*

**läcrīma**, ae, (old form daerīma), f. [root DAC, "to bite;" cp. Gr. δάκνω, δάκος] *A tear.*

**läcūs**, ūs, m. *A lake.* [akin to λάκκος, "a pit, pond."]

**lä-pis**, pidis, m. *A stone* [akin to λᾶ-ας, "a stone."]

**larg-iōr**, itus sum, iri, 4. v. dep. [largus, "large," hence "bountiful"] *To bribe.*

**larg-i-ter**, adv. [largus, "large;" hence, "extensive"] *Extensively, to a great extent, very much or greatly*

**largi-tio**, tiōnis, f. [largi-or, "to bestow freely"] In a good sense: *Liberality.*

**lass-itūdo**, itūdinis, f. [lass-us, "weary"] *Weariness, exhaustion, fatigue.*

**lät-e**, adv. [lät-us, "wide"] *Widely, extensively, far and wide.*

**lät-éo**, üi, itum, ère, 2.v.n. [root LAT, "to be hid;" cp. λαυθάνω, λήθη] *To be hid, be concealed.*

**lät-itūdo**, itūdinis, f. [lät-us, "wide"] *Width, breadth.*

**lätus**, a, um, adj [for stlatus: root STAR, "to scatter;" cp. sterno; στρένυμι; O. H. G. strao; Eng. strew, straw] *Broad, wide.*

**lätus**, èris, n. [prob. akin to lätus, "wide"] ("The extended thing;" hence) *A side.* Of an army: *The flank: laterē aperto, on (their) open flank i. e. on their right flank, which was more exposed to the weapons of the enemy, in*

consequence of its not being protected by the shields of the soldiers; ch. 25.

**laus**, laudis, f. [for (c)laus: root CLU, "to hear;" see gloria: for omission of initial c; cp. lamentor=clamentor] *Praise, commendation.*

**lax-o**, ävi, åtum, åre, 1.v.a. [lax-us, "loose;" hence, in extent, "broad, extended"] Of troops: *To open, open, open wide; to leave or make a space between.*

**lēgā-tiō**, tiōnis, f. [lēg(a)o, "to send on an embassy"] *An embassy. The persons attached to an embassy; delegates*

**lēgā-tus**, ti, m. [id.] *An ambassador; a lieutenant-general; a lieutenant.*

**lēg-io**, lōnis, f. [lēg-o, "to levy or enlist"] *A Roman legion, consisting of 10 cohorts of infantry, and a squadron of 300 cavalry.*

**lēgiōn-ārius**, aria, årium, adj. [lēgiō, lēgiōn-is, "a legion"] *Of, or belonging to, a legion; legionary.*

**lēn-itas**, itatis, f. [lēn-is, "soft, smooth;" hence, "gentle"] *Gentleness.*

**lēn-īter**, adv. [lēn-is, "soft;" hence, "gentle"] *Gently, moderately, gradually.*

**lēv-is**, e, adj. [root LEV, "to raise or to be light;" cp. lepus (a hare); Gk. ἐλαχ-ύς, ἐλαφ-ός] *Light* (opp. to "heavy").—Of troops: *Light-armed; light.*

**lēv-itas**, itatis, f. [lev-is, "light;" hence, in character, "light-minded, fickle"] *Light-mindedness, fickleness.*

**lex**, lēgis, f. [=leg-s; fr. leg-o, "to read"] *A law, statute, decree, ordinance.*

**liben-ter**, adv. [for libent-ter; fr. libens, libent-is, "willing"] *Willingly.*

**lib-er**, éra, érum, adj. [root LU, "to loosen;" cp. λύω, ἐλευθερός; Latin, solvo (=se-luo)] *Free, unrestricted, whether of persons or things.*

**libérāl-itas**, itatis, f. [libérāl-is, "liberal"] *Generosity, liberality.*

**libérāl-īter**, adv. [libérāl-is, "pertaining to a free man;" hence, "courteous"] *Courteously.*

**libér-e**, adv. [liber] *Freely, i.e. unrestrictedly, without restraint.*

**lib-éri**, érōrum, m. plur. (the sing. only in late Lat.) [root LIB or LIB, "to love;" cp. Lat. lubet, libet; Eng. lief] *Children.*

**liber-tas**, tātis, f. [liber, "free"] *Freedom, liberty.*

**lic-éo**, üi, itum, ère, (usually only in 3rd pers. sing. and inf. mood) 2. v. n. *To be allowable; to be permitted or lawful.*

**līcēor**, *Itus sum, ēri*, 2. v. dep. *To bid at an auction.*

**ling-ua**, *uae*, f. [ling-o, "to lick"] *The tongue; a language.*

**lin-ter**, *tris*, m. [perhaps, lin-o, "to smear;" see *litera*] *A boat, skiff.*

**litera**, ae, f. [root LI, "to smear;" ep. *litus*, *lino*] *Sing.: A letter of the alphabet.—Plur.: A letter, epistle.*

**lōc-us**, i, m. (Plur. *lōc-i*, m. and *lōc-a*, n.) [for (st)locus; root STA, "to stand;" ep. *ἰστημι*, *ἴστος*, *στήλη*; Latin stare, sisto, status; O.H.G. stam; Gothic standa; Lith stote] *A place.*

**long-e**, adv. [long-us, "long;" hence, "far off"] *Far off, at a distance.—With Comparative and Superlative words: By far, very much, greatly.*

**long-inqu-us** (trisyll.), a, um, adj. [for long-hinc-vus; fr. long-us, "long;" hinc, "hence"] *Of time: Of long duration or continuance; long continued, long.*

**long-itūdo**, *itūdīnis*, f. [long-us, "long"] *Length.*

**lon-gus**, a, um, adj. *Long.—Of time: Distant, far off, remote.*

**lōqu-or**, *ūtus* (and *lōc-*) *sum*, i, 3.v.dep. *To speak, talk.*

**lū-na**, *nae*, f. [for *luc-na*; fr. lūc ēo, "to shine"] *The moon.*

**lux**, *lūcis*, f. [for *luc-s*; fr. lūc ēo, "to shine;" cp. *luceo*, *lu(c)mēn*; Gk. *λευκός*, *λεύσσα*; Scotch lowe, a flame] *Light, the light of day, daylight.*

**luxūr-ia**, *iae*, f. [obsol. adj. *luxūr-is*, "luxurious;" fr. *luxus*, "luxury"] *Luxury.*

## M.

**māchīnā-tiō**, *tiōnis*, f. [*māchīn(a)-or*, "to contrive"] *An engine of war; a machine.*

**māg-is**, comp. adj. [MAG, root of magnus] *More; in a greater or higher degree.*

**māgistr-ātus**, *ātūs*, m. [magister, magistr-i, "master"] *Magistracy; a magistrate.*

**magn-ītūdo**, *itūdīnis*, f. [magnus] *Greatness, magnitude, large size.*

**magn-ōpēre**, adv. [for *magnō opere*, the ablatives sing. of *magnūs* "great," and *ōpūs*, *ōpēris*, "work" respectively] *Greatly, very greatly, exceedingly.*

**mag-nus**, na, num, adj. [root MAG, "to be great;" ep. major (=mag-iōr), maximus (=mag-simus), magister; Gk. *μέγας*, *μέγεθος*; O. H. G. *mihil*, mer; Gothic, *mikils*, mais, maist (most); Scotch, muckle] *Great, large.—Of sound:*

*Powerful, loud.—In age: Great, advanced, old.*

**mājor**, us, comp. adj.: see magnus.—As Subst.: *mājōres*, um, m. plur.: *Ancestors, forefathers.*

**māl-e**, adv. [māl-us, "bad"] *Badly, injuriously, to one's hurt.*

**mālē-fic-iūm**, ii, n. [for male-facium; fr. mālē, "badly;" fācio, "to do"] *An evil deed, offence, crime; mischief, harm.*

**māl-us**, a, um, adj. [root MAL, "to be black;" ep. *μέλας*] *Bad of its kind.*

**mandā-tum**, ti, n. [mand(a)-o] *A command, order.*

**man-do**, dāvi, dātūm, dārē, 1. v. a. [mān-us, "hand;" do, "to put"] *To enjoin, command; to betake one's self to flight.*

**mān-ēo**, si, sum, ēre, 2. v. n. [root MAN, "to remain;" cp. *μένω*; *To remain continue.*

**mān-ī-pūl-us**, i, m. [a lengthened form of mān-i-pl-us, for man-i-ple-us; fr. mān-us, "a hand;" (i) connecting vowel; plē-o, "to fill"] In the early times of the Romans, the standard of a company of soldiers was a pole surmounted by a small bundle, as it were a mere handful of hay or straw: *A company of soldiers belonging to the same standard; a maniple.*

**mansuē-tūdo**, *tūdīnis*, f. [for mansuetūdo; fr. mansuēt-us, "gentle"] *Gentleness, mildness, clemency.*

**mā-nus**, nūs, f. [root MA or MAN, meaning (1) to touch, as in manus; (2) to measure, as modus, metior, metare, mensis; Gk. *μέτρος*, *μῆν*; Goth. *mēna* (moon); Eng. moon, month; (3) to think, mens; moneo, meniri, mentior; Gk. *μάνιομαι*, *μέμνημαι*, *μονσα*] *A hand.*

**māre**, is, n. [root MAR, "to die;" Sans. maru, "death;" Slav. moro; Celtic mor; Lith. marios, manes; Gothic, marei; Irish, muir, "sea;" or. MAR, "to be bright;" as marmor; μαρμάρω; English, mere, "sea" in mer-maid]. *The sea.*

**mār-ītūm**, *ītīma*, *ītīmūm*, adj. [mār-e, "the sea"] *On the sea-coast; bordering on the sea; maritime.*

**mātāra**, ae, f. *A Celtic javelin or pike.*

**mā-ter**, *tris*, f. [root MA, "to produce;" Gk. *μητήρ*] *A mother.*

**mātr-īmōniūm**, *mōntī*, n. [mater-is, "mother"] *Marriage, matrimony.*

**mātūr-e**, adv. [maturus] *Early, speedily, soon.*

**mātūr-o**, *āvi*, *ātūm*, *āre*, 1. v. a. [ma-

**t̄.as**, “quick”] *To hasten, quicken, or accelerate.*

**mātūrus**, a, um, adj. *Ripe.*

**maxim-e**, sup. adv. [maxim-us] *In the greatest or highest degree; very greatly; especially, chiefly.*

**mēdiōcr-iter**, adv. [mediocr-is, “moderate”] *Moderately.*

**mēd-iūs**, la, ium, adj. *Middle, mid; the middle of that denoted by the substantive with which it is in attribution.*

**mēmōr-ia**,iae,f. [mēmōr, “mindful”] *Memory, recollection, remembrance.*

**men-s**, tis, f. [see manus] *The mind, as being the origin of thought.*

**mensis**, is, m. [see manus] *A month, as a measure of time.*

**mercā-tor**, tōris, m. [merc(a)-or, “to trade”] *A trader, merchant.*

**mer-cē-s**, dis, f. [for mer-ced-s; fr. merx, mere-is, “gain;” cēd-o, “to come”] *Reward, recompense; terms, condition.*

**mēr-ēor**, itus sum, ēri, 2. v. dep. *To deserve or merit.—With Adv.: To act or conduct one’s, etc., in the way denoted by the accompanying verb.*

**mēri-dies**, dīci, m. [for mēdi-dies; fr. mēdi-us, “middle;” dies, “day”] *Mid-day, noon.*

**mēr-ītum**, iti, n. [mēr-ēor, “to deserve”] *Desert, merit.*

**mētior**, mensus sum, mētiri, 4. v. dep. [see manus] *To measure, measure, measure out for division.*

**miles**, itis, comm. gen. *A soldier.*

**milit-āris**, āre, adj. [miles, milit-is, “a soldier”] *Military, pertaining to war;—res militaris, military affairs, i.e., military science, etc.*

**mill-e**, num. adj. indecl. *A thousand.*

**mīnīm-e**, sup. adv. minīm-us] *In the least degree, by no means.*

**mīnīm-um**, sup. adv. [adverbial neut. of minīm-us] *Very little, very slightly, not at all.*

**mīn-ūo**, ūi, ūtum, ūre, 3.v.n. [root MIN, “to lessen;” cp. minor, μινύθω] *To grow or become less; to diminish.*

**mīnus**, comp. adv. [adverbial neut. of minor] *Less:—nihilominus (sometimes written as one word, nihilominus), by nothing the less, i.e. none the less, nevertheless, notwithstanding.—To make an emphatic negation: Not at all, in no degree:—minus posse, he was quite unable.*

**miror**, rātus sum, rāri. 1. v. dep. *To wonder; to wonder, or marvel at.*

**mirus**, a, um, adj. [miror, “to won-

der”] *Wonderful, amazing, marvellous, etc.*

**miser**, īra, īrum, adj. *Wretched, miserable.*

**mīsēr-or**, ītus sum, īri, 1. v. dep. miser, “wretched”] *To lament, deplore, bewail.*

**mitto**, misi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. *To let, suffer, or allow, to go; to cause to go; to send; to cast, hurl, launch.*

**mōbil-itas**, itatis, f. [mobil-is, “movable;” hence, “fickle”] *Fickleness, changeableness, inconstancy.*

**mōdo**, adv. *Only, merely.*

**mōdus**, di, m. [see manus] *A manner, method, way, mode.*

**moen-īa**, ium, n. plur. [root MUN, “to ward off;” cp. munio; à-μυν-ειν] *Walls, ramparts, as a means of warding off the enemy.*

**mōlest-e**, adv. [molest-us, “troublesome] *In a troublesome way*

**mōl-o**, ūi, itum, īre, 3.v.a. *To grind, crush, bruise corn.*

**mōn-ēo**, ūi, itum, īre, 2. v. a. [see manus] *To warn, advise, admonish.*

**mon-s**, tis, m. [for min-s; fr. min-čo, “to project”] *A mountain, mount.*

**mōr-īor**, tūs sum, i or īri, 3. v. dep. [see mare] *To die.*

**mōr-or**, atus sum, īri, 1.v.dep.a. [mora, “delay”] *To delay, i.e., to tarry, linger stay.*

**mōr-s**, tis, f. [mōr-īor, “to die”] *Death:—mortem sibi consiscere; see conscisco.*

**mōs**, ūris, m. [prob. for me-os; fr. mē-o, “to go”] *Practice, usage, custom.*

**mōvēo**, mōvi, mōtum, mōvēre, 2. v. a. *To move, set in motion.*

**mūlīer**, īris, f. *A woman.*

**mult-ītūdo**, itūdnis, f. [mult-us] *A great number; a multitude.*

**mult-um**, adv. [adverbial acc. neut. of mult-us] *Much, greatly.*

**mul-tus**, ta, tum, adj.: Sing.: *Much:—multo, adverbial abl. of measure: By much; far, far more; very much, etc.—In collective force: Many a, i.e., many, numerous.—Plur.: Many, numerous.*

**mūni-mentum**, menti, n. [muni-o, “to fortify”] *A fortification, safeguard, defence, protection.*

**mūn-īo** (old form moen-io). ūi or ūi, itum, īre, 4.v.a. [moen-īa, “walls”] *To build a wall, or raise fortifications, around; to fortify, to defend, protect, secure, guard.*

**mūni-tiō, tīōnis, f.** [mūni-ti-o, "to fortify"] *A fortifying, the act of raising fortifications; a fortification, rampart.*

**mūnus, ēris, n.** *A gift, present.*

**mūr-us, i., m.** [for munrus: see moenia] *A wall of a city.*

## N.

**nam, conj. For.**

**nam-que, conj. [nam, "for;" suffix que]** An emphatic confirmative particle: *For, for indeed, for truly.*

**na(n)c-iscor, nactus sum, nancisci, 3. v. dep.** *To get, obtain. To meet with, find.*

**na-scōr (old form gna-), tu<sup>s</sup> sum, sci, 3. v. dep.** [for gna-scōr; root GNA=GAN; cp. yēv-ōs; gigno, gens, genus] *To be born.—Of a hill, etc.: To rise, spring.*

**nā-tiō, tīōnis f.** [nas-cor, "to be born"] *A nation, race of people.*

**nā-tūra, tūrae, f.** [id]. *The nature, i.e. the natural property, etc., of a thing; natural situation or position of a country, etc.*

**nā-tus, tūs (found only in Abl. sing.) m.** [nā-scōr, "to be born"] *Birth, age, years.*

**nāv-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a.** [=gnāvus, "diligent"] *To do, perform, accomplish with diligence or zeal.*

**nāv-icūla, icūlae, f. dim.** [nav-is, "a vessel"] *A small vessel; a boat.*

**nāvis, is, f.** *A ship, vessel* [akin to Gr. ναῦς; Sans. nauis.]

**nē, adv. and conj. Adv.: No, not;—ne quidem, not even. Conj: That not; lest. After words denoting fear: That. After words denoting a hindrance: That one, etc., should not, etc., do; from doing, etc.**

**nē, enclitic and interrogative particle: Whether:—ne . . . an . . . an, whether . . . or whether . . . or whether.**

**nec; seo neque.**

**nēcess-ārīo, adv.** [nēcessārī-us, "necessary"] *Unavoidably, necessarily*

**nēcess-ārius, āria, ārlum, adj.** [nēcessē, "needful"] *Needful, necessary; pressing, urgent; nearly related to one through natural ties.—As Subst.: necessarius, li, m.* *A relative, kinsman.*

**nēcess-ītas, ītās, f.** [id.] *Need, necessity, urgency, unavoidable force of circumstances.*

**nēcess-ītūdo, Itūdīs, f.** [id.] *Relationship; friendship, intimacy.*

**lec-ne, conj. [nec, "not;" ne, "or"] Or not.**

**nēc-o, āvi or īi, ītum, īre, 1. v. a.** [root NAK, "to harm;" Lat. noceo, nex, necare, nox, niger; Gk. νεκρός, νεκύς] *To kill.*

**neg-līgo, lexi, lectum, ligēre, 3. v. a** [for nec-lego; fr. nec, "not;" lego, "to gather"] *To neglect.*

**nē-g-o, āvi, ītum, īre, 1. v. a.** ("To say no to;" hence) *To deny.*

**nēg-ōtiūm, ūti, n.** [for nec-ōtiūm; fr. nec, "not;" ūti, "leisure"] *An affair, matter, business.*

**nē-mo, minis, comm. gen.** [contr. fr. ne-homo; fr. nē, "not;" homo, "a person"] *No person, no one, nobody.*

**nē-que, (contracted nec), conj.** [nē, "not;" que, "and"] *Neither, nor; and not.*

**nē-qui-quām, adv.** [ne, "not;" qui-quām, adverbial abl. neut. of quis-quām, "any"] *In vain, to no purpose, causlessly.*

**ne-uter (dissyl), utra, utrum, adj.** [ne, "not;" uter, in force of "either" of two] *Neither of the two, neither one nor the other.*

**nerv-us, i., m.** Plur.: *Might, power.* neu, see nēve.

**nē-ve, (contracted neu) conj.** *And not, nor.*

**nex, nēcis, f.** [see neco] *Death; esp. violent death.*

**nihil; see nihilum.**

**nī-hilum, i.** [apocopated nīhil, contr. nil, indecl.], n. [for nē-hilum, ; fr. ne, "not;" hilum, "a mark," or filum, "a thread"] *Nothing.—nihilo minus (or as one word, nihilominus, adv.) not at all the less, nevertheless, notwithstanding.*

**nīhilo; see nihilum.**

**nil: see nihilum.**

**nī-sī, conj.** [ne, "not;" si, "if"] *If not, i.e., unless, except.*

**nitor, nīsus, or nīxus sum, nīti, 3. v. dep.** With Abl.: *To rely, or depend, upon.*

**nō-bilis, bīle, adj.** [nō-seo] *Renowned, celebrated, famed; of noble birth, high-born.* As Subst.: **nō-bilis, i., m.** *A nobleman,*

**nōbil-ītas, ītās, f.** [nōbīl-is, "noble"] *The nobility, the nobles.*

**nōcēo, īi, ītum, īre, 2.v.a.** [see neco] *To harm or injure.*

**noctū, [abl. of obsolete noctus=nox]** *By night; in the course of the night.*

**noct-urnus**, urna, urnum, adj. [nox, noct-is, "night"] *Of or belonging to, night, by night; nocturnal.*

**n-ōlo**, ölüi, olle, v. irreg. [contracted fr. ne, volo; nē, "not;" vōlo, "to wish"] *To not wish, to be unwilling.*

**nō-men**, mīnis, n. [no-sco] *A name, purpose, design: suo nomine, on his own account.*

**nōmīnā-tim**, adv. [nōmīn(a)o, "to name"] *By name, expressly.*

**nōmīn-o**, ävi, åtum, åre, 1. v. a. [nō-men, nōmīn-is, "a name"] *To name; to specify or mention by name.*

**non**, adv. *Not* :—non placed before a negative word forms, in connection with it, a slight affirmative: non nunquam, or as one word, nonnunquam, (*not never*, i.e.) *sometimes*; non nullus, or as one word, nonnullus, (*not none*, i.e.) *some*.

**non-ā-ginta**. num. adj. indecl. ("Ninth ten;" i.e.) *Ninety* [nōn-us, "ninth;" (a) connecting vowel; ginta = kōvta = "ten."]

**non-dum**, adv. [non, "not;" dum, "yet"] *Not yet.*

**non-nullus**, nulla, nullum, adj. [non, "not;" nullus, "none;" see non] *Some.*

**non-nunquam**, adv. [non, "not;" nunquam, "never;" see non] *Sometimes.*

**nos-ter**, tra, trum, pron. poss. [nos] *Our, our own, ours.*—As Subst.: **nostri**, örüm, m. plur. *Our men.*

**nōvem**, num. adj. indecl. *nine.*

**nōvus**, a, um, adj.: *New*: novae res, a change in the state, a revolution. Sup.: *Last.* As Subst.: **nōvissimi**, örüm, m. plur. *of soldiers: Those in the rear of an army, the rear. Where a thing is last, the last part of a thing: novissimum agmen, the last part of an army on march, the rear.*

**nox**, noctis, f. [see moceo]. *Night.*

**nūbo**, nupsī (and nupta sum), nuptum nūbēre, 3. v. a. and n. [nub-es, "a cloud"] (hence, to put on the bridal veil) *To marry or wed, to be married.*

**nūd-o**, ävi, åtum, åre, 1.v.a. [nūd-us, "naked"] With Abl.: *To strip of, leave bare of or without; to leave exposed to the enemy; to leave defenceless.*

**nūd-us**, a, um, adj. *Naked, bare.*

**n-ullus**, ulla, ullum, adj. [for ne-ul-lus; fr. nē, "not;" ullus, "any"] *Not any, none, no; sometimes with Gen. of thing distributed.*

**nūm**, interroz. particle: In direct questions; without any corresponding force in English. In indirect questions: *Whether.*

**nūm-ērus**, ēri, m. [root NEM, "to distribute:" cp. νέμειν, νομός; Lat. nemus, numerus] *A number.*

**nun-c**, adv. *Now* [akin to Gr. νῦν, "now;" c. shortened from ce, demonstrative suffix.]

**n-unquam**, adv. [for ne-unquam; fr. ne, "not;" unquam, "ever"] *Not ever, never.*

**nunti-o**, ävi, åtum, åre, 1. v. a. [nunti-us] *To carry or bring intelligence about; to announce.*

**nunti-us**, i, m. [perhaps contracted fr. nov-ven-tiūs; fr. nōv-us, "new;" vēn-io, "to come"] *A bearer of news or tidings; a messenger, courier; news or tidings; a message.*

**nū-per**, adv. [for nov-per; fr. nov-us, "new"] *Newly, lately, recently, not long ago.*

**nūt-us**, tūs, m. [nū-o, "to nod"] ("A nodding;" hence) *Command, will.*

## O.

**ōb**, prep. gov. acc.: ("Towards, at;" hence) *To indicate, object or cause; On account of, for.*

**ōb-aer-ātus**, äta, åtum, adj. [öb, "upon;" aes, aer-is, "bronze;" hence, "money"] *Involved in debt.*—As Subst.: **ōbaerātus**, i, m. *A debtor.*

**ob-dūco**, duxi, ductum, dūcēre, 3. v. a. [öb, "over against;" dūco, in force of "to form or construct"] *To draw over against or opposite.*

**ōb-i-tus**, tūs, m. [öbéo, in the force of "to die," through root osi (=öb; i, root of eo, "to go")] *Death, destruction.*

**ob-jīcio**, jeci, jectum, jīcēre, 3. v. a. [for ob-jācio, fr. ob, "before;" jācio, "to throw"] *To oppose, to expose.*

**ob-li-viscor**, tus sum, visci, 3 v. dep. ("to be melted away" from the mind; hence) With Gen.: [ob. without force; root li, "to smear or melt :" see litera.] *To forget.*

**ob-sēcr-o**, ävi, åtum, åre, 1. v. a. [for ob-sacr-o; fr. öb, "on account of;" sacr-a, "sacrifices"] *To beg, entreat, implore, beseech.*

**ob-servo**, servāvi, servātum, servāre, 1. v. [ob, "without force;" servō, "to watch"] *To watch, observe, mark.*

**obses**, idis, m. and f. [for obsid-s; fr. obsid-ēo, "to stay or remain" any where] *A hostage.*

**ob-signo**, signāvi, signātum, signāre, 1.v.a. [öb, "without force;" signō, "to seal"] *To seal, put a seal upon a will.*

**ob-stringo**, strinxi, strictum, strin gere, 3. v. a. [ob, "around ;" stringo, "to bind"] Morally: *To bind, attach, connect.*

**ob-tinēo**, tinui, tentum, tinēre, 2. v. a. [for ob-tēnēo ; ob, "without force ;" tēnēo, "to hold"] *To hold or occupy; to acquire, get possession of, obtain.*

**ob-vēnīo**, vēni, ventum, vēnire, 4. v. n. [ob, "before ;" vēnīo, "to come"] With Dat.: *To fall to the lot of.*

**occā-sus**, sūs, m. [for occāsus ; fr. occid-o, "to set ;"] Of the sun: *The setting or going down.*

**oc-cido**, cidi, cism, cidēre, 3. v. a. [for ob-caedo ; fr. ob, "against ;" caedo, "to strike"] *To cut down, kill, slay, slaughter.*

**occul-to**, tāvi, tātum, tāre, 1. v. a. intens. [occul-o, "to hide"] *To hide, conceal.*

**occul-tus**, ta, tum, adj. [id.] *Hidden, concealed, secret.* Adverbial expression: In occulto, *secretly, in secret.*

**occūpātus**, a, um; P. perf. pass. of occupo: *Busy, engaged, occupied.*

**oc-cūp-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v a [for ob-cap-io ; fr. ob, "without force ;" CAP, root of cap-lo, "to take"] *To take or lay hold of, to seize; to occupy, hold possession of.*

**oc-curro**, curri (rarely eu-curri), cursum, currēre, 3. v. n. [for ob-curro ; fr. ob, "up or towards ;" curro, "to run." With Dat.: *To hinder, oppose, prevent.*

**ōcēānus**, i, m. *The Ocean, [ώκεανός]*

**oct-āvus**, āva, āvum, num. adj. [oct-o, "eight"] *Eighth.*

**octo**, num. adj. indecl. *Eight.* [οκτώ

**octō-dēcim**, num. adj. indecl. [for octo-decem ; fr. octo, "eight ;" decem, "ten"] *Eighteen.*

**octō-ginta**, num. adj. indecl. ("Eight-tens") *Eīdhy* [octo, "eight ;" ginta = koutā = "ten."]

**ōc-ūlus**, ūli, m. *An eye.*

**ōdi**. isse, v. defect. *To hate.*

**of-fendo**, fendi, fensum, fendēre, 3. v. a. [for ob-fendo ; fr. ob, "against ;" fendo (əbsol.), "to strike."] *To mortify, vex, annoy, offend the feelings.*

**offen-siō**, slōnis, f. [for offend-siō; fr. offendō, "to offend"] *A giving offence to; an offending, or displeasing, of.*

**offēro**, obtuli, oblātum, offerre, v.a. irreg. [for ob-fēro ; fr. ob, "towards ;" fēro, "to bring"] *To present, offer.*

**offic-iūm**, i, n. [for op-faciūm ; fr.

(ops) opis, "aid ;" facio, "to do, to perform ;" Duty, service, allegiance.

**ō-mitto**, mīsi, missum, mīttere, [fr. obmittō ; fr. ob, "without force ;" mittō, "to let go"] *Of advice. To neglect, disregard.*

**omn-ino**, adv. [omnis] *Altogether, at all.*

**omnis**, e, adj. *All.*

**ōnus**, ēris, n. [root IN, "to breathe," i.e., "what makes one breathe :" see animus] *A burden, load.*

**ōpēr-a**, ae, f. [ōpēr-or, "to work"] *Work, labour.*

**ōportet**, fit, ēre, (only in 3rd person and inf. mood) 2. v. n. (*It*) *is necessary, fit, proper, right ; (it) behoves.*

**oppidān-us**, a, um, adj. [oppidum, "a town"] *Of or belonging to a town.* — As Subst.: **oppidāni**, örum, m. *Townsmen, townspeople.*

**oppidum**, i, n. *A town.*

**opin-īo**, lōnis, i. [opinor, "to think"] *Opinion, belief, reputation.*

**op-port-ūnus**, ūna, ūnum, adj. [for ob-port-ūnus ; fr. ob, "over, against ;" port-us, "a harbour"] *Convenient, suitable, seasonable, opportune.*

**op-primo**, pressi, pressum, primēre, 3. v. a. [for ob-prēmo, fr. ob, "against ;" prēmo, "to press"] *To crush, overwhelm, overpower.*

**op-pugno**, pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnare, 1. v. a. [for ob-pugno ; fr. ob, "against ;" pugno, "to fight"] *To attack, lay siege to, besiege, a city.*

**op-s**, is (Nom. Sing. does not occur, and the Dat. Sing. is found perhaps only once) f. [probably for ap-s, fr. root AI, whence ap-iscor, "to obtain"] *Means of any kind ; wealth, riches, resources.*

**optim-e**, sup. adv. [optimus, "best"] *In the best way; very good, highly well.*

**optimus**, a, um, sup. adj. *Best; very good or favourable.*

**ōpus**, ēris, n. *Work, labour; a military work, fortification.*

**ōpus** only in Nom. and Acc.) n. indecl. *Need, necessity.* In connection with some part of sum used as an Adj.: *Needful, necessary.*

**ōrā-tiō**, tlonis, f. [or(a)o, "to speak"] *A speech, oration.*

**ord-o**, ūnis, m. [rī-lar, "to weave"] *Arrangement, order; a line, rank, of soldiers.*

**ōriens**, ūnis, P. pres. & ūrīor: in orientum solem, towards the rising sun, i.e. the East.

Ör-iōr, *tus sum, iri*, 3. and 4 v. dep. [root *or*, "to rise;" Gk. ὄρυμι] Of the heavenly bodies: *To rise, become visible; to begin, commence.*

ornā-mentum, *menti*, n. [orn(a)-o, "to adorn"] *Ornament, decoration.*

Ör-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [os, ör-is, "the mouth"] *To pray, beg, entreat, beseech.*

os-tendo, *tendi tensum, tendēre*, 3. v. a. [for. obs-tendo; fr. obs (= öb), "before or over against;" tendo, "to stretch out"] *To show, exhibit, display; to declare, set forth, make known.*

### P.

pābūlā-tio, *tlōnis*, f. [pabul(a)-or, "to forage"] *A foraging, collecting of fodder.*

pā-būlum, *būli*, n. [pa-sco, "to feed"] Of animals: *Food, fodder.*

pācātus, a, um, P. perf. pass. of pāco: *Undisturbed, tranquil, in a state of peace.*

pāc-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [pax, pāc-is, "peace"] *To bring into a state of peace or quietness; to tranquilize.*

paene, adv. *Nearly, almost.*

pāgus, i. m. *A canton; i.e. A district of the Gauls or Germans; the people of a canton.* [See pax.]

pālam, adv. *Openly.*

pāl-us, ūdis, f. *A swamp, marsh* [hybrid word: for pal-ud-s; fr. πηλός, "clay;" ūd-us, "wet, moist."]

pāndo, *pandi, pansum and passum, pandēre*, 3. v. a. *To open, throw open* P. perf. pass.: *Of the hair: Dishevelled.*

par, pāris, adj. *Equal; sometimes with Dat.*

pārātus, a, um, P. perf. pass. of pāro. *Ready, prepared.*

pār-ēo, ū, ūtum, ēre, 2. v. n. *To obey.*

pār-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To make, or get, ready; to prepare.*

par-s, tis, f. *A part, piece, portion, share.*

partim, adv. [old acc. form of pars. "a part," and used adverbially] *Partly, in part.—As Subst.: Some:—partim... partim, some...some.*

parv-ūlus, ūla, ūlum, adj. dim. [parv-us, "small"] *Slight, trifling, petty.*

par-vus, va, yum, adj. *Small, little.*

pas-sus, sūs, m. [for pad-sus; fr. PAD, "to go"] *A step or pace. As a measure of length: A pace equal to five Roman feet.*

pāt-ē-fācio, fēci, factum, fācēre, 3. v. a. [pātēo, "to lie open;" (e), connecting

vowel; fācio, "to make"] *To open, throw open.*

pātēns, ntis, P. pres. of pateo. *Open, lying open, to attack.*

pāt-ēo, ū, no sup. ēre, 2. v. n. *To lie, stand, or be open; to stretch out, extend.*

pāt-er, tris, m. *A father, as one who protects.* [root PA "to feed." CP. pasco.

pātēor, passus, sum, pāti, 3. v. dep. *To bear, endure; to allow, permit, suffer.*

pātēriū, īa, īum, adj. [pāter, patr-is] *Of, or belonging to, a father; a father's; paternal; hereditary.*

paucus, a, um, adj. Sing.: *Small, whether in size or extent.* Plur.: *Few.* As Subst.: *pauci, ūrum, m. plur. Few persons, few.*

paul-ātim, adv. [paul-us, "little"] *By little and little, by degrees, gradually.*

paul-isper, adv. [id.] *For a little while; for a short time.*

paul-o, adv. [adverbial abl. of paul-us, "a little"] *By a little, a little, somewhat.*

paulūl-um, adv. [adverbial neut. of paulūl-us, "very little"] *A very little, just a little.*

paul-um, adv. [adverbial neut. of paul-us, "little"] *A little, somewhat*

pāx. pācis, f. [for pac-s; fr root PAC, "to bind;" hence, pālus, pagus, pagina; Gk. πάγνυμι] *Peace.*

pecco, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. *To do amiss, commit a fault, transgress, offend, do wrong.*

pēd-es, itis, m. [for pēd-i-t-s; fr. pes, pēdis, "a foot;" (t) epenthetic; i, root of eo, "to go,"] *A foot soldier.* Plur.: *Infantry.*

ped-ester, estris, estre, adj. [pes, pēdis, "a foot"] *On foot, that goes on foot:—pedestres copiae, foot forces, infantry.*

pell-is, is, f. *A skin or hide* [akin to πέλλα, "a hide"].

pello, pēpūli, pulsum, pellēre, 3. v. a. *To beat, rout, / ut to flight.*

pendo, pēpendi and pendī, pensum, pendēre, 3. v. a. [prob. akin to pendeo, "to hang"] *To weigh, weigh out; to pay.*

pēr, prep. gov. acc.: *Through, through the midst of; all over or along; through by, by means of.*

percunctā-tio, tlōnis, f. [percunct-(a)-or, "to enquire"] *An enquiring, enquiry.*

**per-dūco**, duxi, ductum, dūcere, 3. v. a. [per, "through;" dūco, "to lead"] Of a ditch, building: *To bring, carry.*

**pēr-ēo**, iwi or ii, itum, ire, v. n. irreg. [pér, "through;" éo, "to go"] *To perish, lose one's life, die.*

**per-fācilis**, facile, adj. [pér, in "augmentative" force; facilis, "easy"] *Very easy.*

**per-fēro**, tūli, lātum, ferre, v. irreg. [pér, "without force;" fēro, "to bear"] *To bear, submit to, endure.*

**per-fīcio**, fēci, fectum, fīcēre, 3 v. a. [for per-fācio; fr. per, "completely;" fācio, "to make"] *To accomplish, execute; to complete.*

**per-fringo**, frēgi, fractum, fringēre, 3. v. a. [for per-frango; fr. pér, "through;" frango, "to break"] *To break, to break through.*

**perfūg-a**, ae, m. [perfūg-lo, "to desert"] *A deserter to the enemy.*

**per-fūgio**, fūgi, fūgitum, fūgēre, 3. v. a. [pér, "quite;" fūgio, "to flee"] *To flee for refuge; to go over, or desert, to the enemy.*

**pēricl-itor**, Itātus sum, Itāri, 1. v. dep. n. [pēricl-um, "a trial, experiment"] *To try, prove, put to the test.*

**pēricūl-ōsus**, ōsa, ōsum, adj. [periculum, "danger"] *Full of danger, dangerous, perilous.*

**pēri-cūlum**, cūli, n. [obso. pēri-or, "to try"] *A trial, experiment, attempt; with Objective Gen.: periculum facere (alicius), to make trial of one, put one to the test; danger, peril.*

**pēri-tus**, ta, tum, adj. [obso. pēri-or, "to try"] With Gen.: *Acquainted with, skilled in.*

**per-mānēo**, mansi, mansum, mānēre, 2. v. n. [pér, "to the end;" mānēo, "to stay"] *To stay to the end, to continue, endure; remain.*

**per-mitto**, misi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [pér, "through;" mitto, "to let go"] *To give leave, or permission, to; to permit or allow: sometimes with Dat*

**per-mōvēo**, mōvi, mōtum, mōvēre, 2. v. a. [pér, "thoroughly;" mōvēo, "to move"] *To influence, affect, move deeply; to induce, persuade, prevail upon.*

**pernīc-ies**, iēi, f. [for pernīc-les; fr. pernē-o, "to kill utterly"] *Destruction, ruin.*

**per-paucus**, pauca paucum, adj. [pér, "very;" paucus, "little"] *Sing. Very little. Plur.: Very few.*

**perpētū-o**, adv. [perpētū-us "con-

stant"] *Constantly, uninterruptedly, perpetually.*

**perpēt-ūus**, ūa, ūum, adj. [per, "through;" root PAD or PAT, "to extend;" ep. pateo; Gk. πετάννυμ] *Constant, perpetual; whole, entire.*

**per-rumpo**, rūpi, ruptum, rumpēre, 3. v. a. [per, "through;" rumpo, "to break"] *To break, or burst, through.*

**per-sēquor**, sēquītus sum, sēqui, 3. v. dep. [per, in "augmentative" force; sēquor, "to follow"] *To follow perseveringly, to continue to follow.*

**persēvēr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n., [persēvērus, "very strict"] *To persist, persevere.*

**per-solvo**, solvi, sōlūtum, solvēre, 3. v. a. [pér, "thoroughly;" solvo, "to pay"] *Of punishment: to pay.*

**per-spīcio**, spexi, spectum, spīcēre, 3. v. a. [for per-spīcio; fr. per, "thoroughly;" spīcio, "to see"] *To ascertain, learn.*

**per-suādēo**, suāsi, suāsum, suādēre, 2. v. a. [per, "thoroughly;" suadeo, "to advise"] *To convince, persuade, induce. With Dat. of person and Acc. of Neut. pron.: To convince, or persuade, a person, or of about a thing*

**per-terrēo**, terrīi, territum, terrēre 2. v. a. [pér, "thoroughly;" terreo, "to frighten"] *To frighten thoroughly; to strike with terror.*

**pertināc-ia**,iae, f. [pertinax, pertināc-is, "obstinate"] *Obstinacy, pertinacity.*

**per-tinēo**, tinūi, tentum, tinēre, 2. v. n. [for per-tinēo, fr. pér, "thoroughly;" tēnēo, "to hold"] *To reach, or extend, to a place; to belong, relate or have reference to.*

**perturbo**, turbāvi, turbātum, turbāre 1. v. a. [pér, "utterly;" turbo, "to disturb"] *To disturb utterly, to throw into great confusion; to discompose, embarrass.*

**per-vēnio**, vēni, ventum, venire, 4. v. n. [pér, "quite;" vēnio, "to come"] *To reach or arrive.*

**pes**, pēdis, m. [root PAD, "to go;" cp. op-pid-um; Gk. πούς, πέδιον; Goth. fōtus; O.H.G. fuoz; English foot] *A foot, whether of persons, or as a measure; pedem referre, (to carry back the foot, i.e.) to retire, retreat.*

**pēt-o**, iwi and ii, itum, ēre, 3.v.n. [root PAT, "to fly;" cp. Lat. penna (=pet-na); πέτομαι] *To seek, i.e. to ask, beg, solicit, entreat.*

**phālanx**, ngis, t. *A phalanx, [φαλάξ], §*

**pī-lum**, *li*, *n.* *A heavy javelin used by the Roman infantry.*

**pil-us**, *i*, *m.* The divisions of the *Triarii* in the Roman army—so in connection with *primus*; see *primi-pilus* [either fr. *pilum*, “a javelin,” and so, “that which has the *pilum*.”]

**plāc-ēo**, *ūi*, *itum*, *ēre*, *2. v n.* *To be pleasing or agreeable; to please.* Impers.: With Dat.: *Placuit: It pleases, or seemed good to; it was resolved.*

**plān-īties**, *ītēi*, *f.* [plān-us, “flat”] *A flat or even surface, a plain.*

**plēb-s**, *is*, *f.* [root PLE, “to be full;” cp. plenus; πλῆθος] *The multitude or mass; the populace.*

**plērumque** adv. [adverbial neut. of plērusque, “the greater part of”] *For the most part, generally.*

**plērus-que**, *plērā-que*, *plērum-que*, adj. [a strengthened form of *plerus*, “very many”] Rare in Sing.: *The larger or greater part of; the majority of.*

**plūrim-um**, *sup.* adv. [adverbial neut. of plurim-us] *Most.*

**plū-rimus**, *rīma*, *rīnum*, *sup.* adj. [PLE, root of *ple-o*, “to fill;” i) connecting vowel; simus, superl. suffix := *ple-i-*simus; changed as follows: *plei-simus*, *pli-simus*, *ploisimus*, *ploirūmus*, *plūrimus*] Sing.: *Very much.—Plur.. Very many, most numerous.*

**plūs**, *plūris* (Plur. *plūres*, *plūra*), comp. adj [contra and changed fr. *ple-or*; PLE, root of *ple-o*, “to fill;” comparative suffix, “or”] *More*

**plus**, comp. adv. [adverbial neut. of plus] *More.*

**poena**, *ae*, *f.* [root PU, “to purify” or “cleanse;” ep. *purus*, *poenio*, Gk. ἀποίνα, ποινη,] *Compensation, expiation, satisfaction:—poenas dūre, pendēre, persolvēre (to give, or pay, satisfaction i.e. to undergo punishment, pay the penalty:—poenas repetere (to reseek satisfaction, i.e.) to inflict punishment.*

**pol-licēor**, *licitus sum*, *licēri*, *2. v dep.* [for pot-līc eor; fr. inseparable prefix pōt, “much;” licēor, “to bid” at an auction] *To hold forth, or promise, a thing.*

**pond-us**, *ēris*, *n.* [for pend-us; fr. pend-o, “to weigh”] *A weight.*

**pōno**, *pōsūi*, *pōsitum*, *pōnēre*. *3. v. a.* [usually regarded as contracted fr. posino (*i.e.* po, inseparable prefix with augmentative force; sino, “to let down,”) “to let down quite;” but rather fr. a root *pos*] *To put, place, or set. Of a camp: To pitch; to appoint, assign.*

**pon-s**, *tis*, *m.* [root PĀD, “to go” ep. passus, pes; Gk. πόνος, πέδον, πάτος; Eng path] *A bridge.*

**pōpūlā-tīo**, *tionis*, *f.* [popul(a)-or, “to lay waste”] *A laying waste, a ravaging; ravage.*

**pōpūl-or**, *ātus sum*, *āri*, *1. v. dep.* [pōpūl-us, “a people”] *To lay waste, ravage, devastate.*

**pō-pūl-us**, *i*, *m.* [for pol-pol-us; root POL, “many,” reduplicated: cp. πολύς] *The people.*

**porrect-us**, *a*, *um*, *adj.* [for porreg-tus; fr. *porrigo*, “to stretch out;” through from *por* = *pro*, REG, root of *rēgo*] *Of localities: Extended, extensive, long.*

**por-rīgo**, *rexī*, *rectūm*, *rigēre*, *3. v. a.* [pro, “forward;” *rego*, “to reach”] *To stretch or extend.*

**por-ta**, *tae*, *f.* [root POR, “to pass through;” Gk. πόρος περάω; Lat portus, peritus; Goth. foran; Eng. ferry, -fare in thoroughfare] *A gate of a city, house.*

**por-to**, *tāvi tātūm*, *tāre*, *1. v. a.* *To carry, convey* [prob. akin to φέρω.]

**portōr-īum**, *ii*, *n.* [obsol. portor = portitor, “a carrier”] *A toll or impost paid on goods carried through a country.*

**posco**, *pōpōsci*, *no sup.*, *poscēre*, *3. v. a.* *To require, demand*

**posses-siō**, *siōnis*, *f.* [for possed-siō; fr. possideo, “to possess;”] *A possession, occupation*

**pos-sidēo**, *sēdi*, *sessum*, *sidēre*, *2. v. a.* [for pot-sidēo; fr. pōt (inseparable prefix,) “much;” sēdēo, “to sit”] *To have and hold; to be master of; to own or possess; to take, or hold, possession of.*

**possum**, *pōtūi*, *no sup.*, *posse*, *v. n.* irreg. [for pot-sum; fr. pōtis, “able;” sum, “to be”] *To be able, or powerful; to have power to do, etc., something.*

**post**, adv. and prep. [perhaps contracted from pōne (“behind”) est, “it is”] Adv.: Of time: *Afterwards, after, later.—Prep. gov. Acc.: Of place: After, behind: Of time; After, subsequent to.*

**post-ēa**, adv. [probably for post-eam, *i.e.* post, “after;” eam, acc. sing. fem. of is, “this,” “that”] *After this or that; afterwards. In combination with quam, or as one word: After that.*

**postēā-quām**; see postea.

**post-ērus**, *ēra*, *ērum*, adj. [post] *Coming after, following, next.*

**post-quām**, (also written as two words, post quām,) conj. [post, “after;” quām, “that”] *After that, when, as soon as.*

**postr̄-i-die**, adv. conir. fr. **postēr i-die**, i.e. postēr-o die; the respective ablatives of postēr-us, "following;" dies, "day;" with (i) connecting vowel] *On the day after, on the following day, on the morrow.*

**postūlā-tum**, ti. n. [postul(a)-o] Mostly plur.: *A thing demanded; a demand.*

**postūlo**, ávi, átum, áre, 1. v. a. [usually considered akin to posco] *To demand, request, require, desire.*

**pōtent-s**, ntis, (part. pres. of possum; but found only as) adj. *Mighty, powerful, strong, potent, etc.*

**pōtent-ātus**, átūs, masc. [pōtent-s, pōtent-is, "powerful"] *Political power, dominion, rule, command.*

**pōtent-ia**,iae, f. [id.] *Might, force, power; authority, sway, influence.*

**pōtes-tas**, tatis, f. [for pōtent tas; fr. pōtent-s, pōtent-is, "powerful"] *Power A possibility, opportunity:-potestatem sui facere, to give, or present, an opportunity (of himself, i.e.) of fighting with him;* ch. 40.

**pōt-ior**, itus, sum, iri, 4. v. dep [pōt-is, "powerful"] *To become master of; to obtain, get possession of.*

**pōti-us**, comp. adv. [adverbial, neuter of poti-or, "preferable"] *Preferably, rather, more:-potius quam, rather than.*

**prae**, prep. gov. abl [akin to pro, "before"] *In comparison of, compared with*

**prae-ācūtus**, ācūta, ācūtum, adj. [prae, "before;" ācūtus, "sharp"] *Sharp towards, or at, the end; sharp at the point.*

**prae-bēo**, būi, būtum, bēre, 2, v. a. [contracted fr. prae-habēo; prae, "before;" habēo, "to have or hold"] *To supply, furnish, provide.*

**prae-cāvēo**, cāvi, cautum, cāvere, 2 v. n. [prae, "before," "beforehand;" cāvēo, "to take heed"] *To take heed beforehand; to beware, be on one's guard*

**prae-cēdo**, cessi, cessum, cēdere. 3. v. a. [prae, "before;" cēdo, "to go"] *To surpass, excel.*

**prae-cep-s**, cīptis, adj [for prae-cāpit-s; fr. prae, "before;" cāpūt, cāpit-is, "the head"] *In headlong haste; headlong; in adverbial force precipitately.*

**prae-cīpīo**, cēpi, ceptum, cīpēre, v. a. and n. [for prae-cāpīo: fr. prae, "beforehand;" cāpīo, "to take"] *To seize, direct, order, bid, command.*

**praecīpū-e**, adv. [praecipiuus, "especially"] *Especially.*

**prae-dīco**, dicāvi, dicātum, dicāre, 1. v. a. [prae, "publicly;" dīco, "to proclaim"] *To proclaim publicly; to declare, publish, announce.*

**praed-or**, átus sum, ári, 1. v. dep. [præda, "plunder"] *To plunder, spoil, ravage, etc.*

**praefec-tus**, ti, m. [for praefac-tus; fr. prae-ficio, "to set before"] *A prefect, commander.*

**prae-fēro**, túli, lātum, ferre, v.a. irreg. [prae, "before;" fēro, "to bear or carry"] *With Persona. Pronoun in reflexive force: With Dat.: To put, or place, one's self, etc., in front of or before.*

**prae-ficio**, fēci, fectum, fēcēre, 3 v. a. [for praefacio, fr. prae, "before;" fēcio, "to make"] *To set or place over, to appoint to the command of.*

**prae-mittō**, misi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [prae, "before;" ém-o, "to take"] *Reward, recompense*

**prae-opto**, optāvi, optātum, optāre, 1. v. a. [prae, "beyond or more than;" opto, "to wish"] *To wish for, or choose, the rather; to prefer.*

**prae-pōno**, pōstū, pōsitum, pōnere, 3. v. a. [prae, "before;" pōno, "to put"] *To set over as commander.*

**prae-scribo**, scripsi, scriptum, so-ribēre, 3. v. a. [prae, "before;" scribo, "to write"] *To order, appoint, direct, prescribe*

**praescrip-tum**, ti. n. [for praescrib-tum; fr. praescribo, "to order"] *An order, command.*

**prae-sens**, entis (abl. sing. usually praesente of persons, praesenti of things) adj. [prae "before," s.um, "to be"] *Present*

**prae-sent-ia**,iae, f. [prae-sens, prae-sent-is, "present"] *A being present, presence. Phrase: In praesentiā. For the present, at present.*

**prae-ser-tim**, adv. [prae, "before;" sér-o, "to arrange"] *Especially, particularly*

**prae-sidēum**, II. n. [prae-sidēo, "to sit before;" hence, "to guard"] *Protection, defence; a protecting force, garrison.*

**prae-sto**, stiti, stitum, stāre, 1. v. n. and a. [prae, "before;" sto, "to stand"] *Neut.: With dat.. To be superior to; to*

*surpass, excel.* Act.: *To give, supply, furnish*

**prae-sum**, fūi, esse, v. n. [prae, “before;” sum, “to be”] With Dat.: *To set over; to have the charge, or command of.*

**prae-ter**, prep. gov. acc. [prae, “before;” demonstrative suffix ter] *Past, beyond; besides, in addition to, except.*

**praetér-ēā**, adv. [for praeter-eam; fr. praeter, “beyond;” eam, acc. sing. fem. of pron. is, “this”] *Besides, moreover, further.*

**praetér-i-tus**, ta, tum, adj. [praetér-ō, “to go by”] As Subst.: *praeterita, örum, n. plur. Things past; the past.*

**prae-tor**, tōris, m. [contracted fr. prae-tor; fr. praeō, “to go before”] *A praeator; a Roman magistrate charged with the administration of justice. At the end of his year of office he was generally sent to some Province as its governor.*

**prætōr-i-us**, Ia, tum, adj. [praetor, prætōr-is, “a commander, general”] *Of, or belonging to, a praetor; praetorian:—praetoria cohors, a praetorian cohort, i.e. the cohort attached to a general as his body guard.*

**præcēs**, um; see *prefix*.

**præ-hendo**, hendi, hensum, hendere, 3. v. a. [prae, in “augmentative” force; obsoł. hendo, “to lay hold of;” akin to Gr. *χαρδάων*, “to hold”] *To lay hold of firmly; to seize, grasp*

**prēmo**, pressi, pressum, prēmēre, 3. v. a. *In war: To press hard or close, to vex, harass, beset with difficulties*

**prendo**, prendi, prensum, prendēre, 3. v. a. *A contracted form of prehendo; see prehendo*

**præ-tium**, tii, n. [akin to *πρίασθαι*, “to buy.”] *Price cost.*

**prefix**, præc-is (Nom. and Gen. Sing. obsoł.; mostly in plur.) f. [for *præc-s* fr. *præc-or*, “to ask”] *A prayer, request, entreaty, petition.*

**præ-die**, adv. [for *præ-die*; fr *præ*, “before;” die, abl. sing. of *diēs*, “day”] *On the day before.*

**prim-i-pilus**, (also *prim-ō-pilus*), pilī, m. [prim-us, “the first or chief;” (i) or (ō), connecting vowel; pilus, “the triarii:” see *pilus*] *The first, or chief, centurion of the triarii.—The word is obtained by the ellipse of *centurio*, *centurion*, in the expression *primus centurio pilī*, and by combining *primus* and *pilus* together by means of a connecting vowel.*

**prim-o**, **prim-um**, adv. [prim-us,

“first”] *At first, in the first place:—quam primum, as soon as possible.*

**prī-mus**, ma, mum, sup. adj. [for *præ-mus*; fr. *præ*, “before;” with superlative suffix *mus*] *First, the first.—Of time: primā luce, at daybreak or dawn.—In order, rank, etc.: The first, principal.—Phrase: In pīmis: Principally, especially.*

**prin-cep-s**, cīp-is, adj. [for *prī-cap-s*; fr. *prīm-us*, “first;” cap-io, “to take”] *First, whether in order or time.—Of rank: The first, principal, chief.—As Subst.: *princeps, ipis, m. A chieftain; a chief person, leading man.**

**princīp-ātus**, ātūs, m. [princeps, *princip-is*, “a chief”] *The first or chief place; the pre-eminence; chief authority, chieftainship, the chief or first rank.*

**prī-or**, us, comp. adj. [for *præ-or*; fr. *præ*, “before;” comparative suffix, or] *Former; often to be translated *first*. As Subst.: *prīores, um, m. plur.: The former ones, the first mentioned.**

**pris-tinus**, tīna, tīnum, adj. [obsol pris, “before”] *Former; old, ancient.*

**prius**, comp. adv. [adverbial neut. of prior, “before”] *Before, sooner:—prius quam (or, as one word, priusquam), sooner than, before that.*

**priusquam**; see *prius*.

**privā-tus**, ta, tum, adj. [priv(a)-o, “to make *privus*,” i.e. “single”] *Private.*

**prō**, prep. gov. abl.: *Before, in front of; for, in behalf of, in favour of; for, in the place of, instead of; esp. in connection with the title of any officer to denote his substitute; e.g., pro praetore.—In proportion to, in accordance with, conformably to; as, just as, for.*

**prōb-o**, āvi, ātūm, āre, 1. v. a. [prōbus, “good”] *To prove, demonstrate.*

**pro-cēdo**, cessi, cessum, cēdēre, 3. v. a. [pro, “forward;” cēdo, “to go”] *To go forwards, advance.*

**prōcul**, adv. [pro, “forward;” root KEL, “to drive;” cp. celer; κελοματ] *Of place: Of place: At a distance, far off.*

**prō-cumbo**, cūbūi, cūbitūm, cumbēre, 3. v. n. [prō, “forwards;” obsoł. cumbo, “to lie down”] *Of the wounded, etc.: To fall, or sink, forwards, accompanied with a notion of subsequent prostration on the ground; To fall, or sink, down.*

**pro-curro**, cīcurri and curri, cursum, currēre, 3. v. n. [pro, “forwards;” curro, “to run”] *To run forwards, advance with a run or rapidly.*

**prō-d-ēo**, īvi or īi, itum, ire, v. n.

[pro, "forth or forwards;" d. epenthetic; eo, "to go"] *To go, or come, forth or forwards, to advance.*

**prō-do**, dīdī, dītum, dītre, 3 v. a. [pro, "forth or forwards;" do, "to put"] *To hand down, transmit.*

**prō-dūco**, duxi, ductum, dūtēre, 3 v. a. [pro, "forward; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead forwards or forth.*

**prōelī-or**, ātus sum. āri, 1 v. dep. [prōelī-um, "a battle"] *To join battle, engage in battle, battle, fight.*

**prōelīum**. II, n. *A battle, engagement*—*prōelīum committere, to engage in battle.*

**prōfēc-tiō**, tīonis, f [for prōfac-tiō; fr. prōfīcīsor, "to set out"] *A setting out, departure.*

**prō-fīcio**, fēci, fectum, fīcēre, 3 v. a. [for prō-faciō; fr. pro, "forward;" fācio, "to make"] *To effect, bring about, accomplish.*

**prō-fīc-iscor**, fectus sum, fīcīsci, 3 v. dep. n. inch. [pro, "forwards;" fācio, "to make"] *To set out, go, proceed.*

**prō-fligo**, fligāvi, fligātum, fligāre, 1 v. a. [pro, "forwards, down;" fligo, (3rd conj.) "to strike or dash"] *To strike, or dash, down onto the ground; to overthrow.*

**prō-fūgio**, fūgi, fūgitum, fūgēre, 3 v. n. [pro, "forth;" fāgio, "to flee"] *To flee forth, run away, escape.*

**prō-gnā-tus**, ta, tam, adj. [pro, "forth;" gna-scōr, "to be born"] *Sprung, descended.*

**prō-grēdīor**, gressus sum, grēdi, 3 v. dep. [for pro-gradiōr; from pro "forth or forward;" gradīor, "to step or go"] *To step, or go, forth or forward; to advance, proceed.*

**prō-hibēo**, hībāi, hībitum, hībēre, 2 v. a. [for prō-hābēo; fr. prō, "before;" hābēo, "to hold"] *To hold or keep back, ward off, hinder, restrain, prevent.*

**prō-jēcio**, jēci, jectum, jēcēre, 3 v. a. [for prō-jaciō; fr. prō, "forwards;" jācio, "to cast"] *To throw or cast forwards;—projicere se ad pedes, to throw themselves down at the feet of some one.*

**prō-mōvēo**, movi, mōtum, mōvēre, 2 v. a. [pro, "forwards;" mōvēo, "to move"] *Of a camp: To move forwards or onwards; to advance.*

**prōpe**, adv. and prep. [adverbial neut. of obsol. adj. propis, "near"] Adv: ne-r.—Comp.: prōpīlus, *Nearer.* Prep. gov. acc.: *Near.*

**prō-pello**, pāli, pulsūm, pellēre, 3 v. a. [pro, "forwards;" pello, "to drive"] *To drive forwards or before one's self.*

**prōpēr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v.n. [prōpēr-us, "quick"] *To hasten, make haste.*  
**prōpinqu-ītas**, itātis, f. [prōpinqu-us, "near"] *Neighbourhood, vicinity, proximity, nearness; relationship, affinity.*

**prōp-inqu-us**, a, um, adj. [for prōpēr-hinc-us; fr. prōp-e; hinc, "from this place"] *Near, neighbouring, nigh at hand, close.*—Of relationship: *Near, related, kindred.*—As Subst.: **prōpinqu-us**, i. m. *A relation, relative, kinsman.*  
**prōpinqua**, ae, f. *A female relation, etc.*

**prō-pōno**, pōsāi, pōsitum, pōnēre, 3 v. a. [pro, "before or forth," pōn-o, "to put"] *To mention, state, declare.*—Of statement: *To set forth, point out.*

**prop-ter**, prep. gov. acc. [obsol. adj. prōp-is, "near"] *On account, or by reason of; because of.*

**prōptēr-ēā**, adv. [for propter-eam; fr. propter; eam, acc. sing. fem. of is, "this or that"] *On this, or that, account; therefore;—propterea quod, because that, inasmuch as.*

**prō-pugno**, pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnāre, 1. v. n. [pro, "forth;" pugno, "to fight"] *To make a sally or s'rtie.*

**prōpul-so**, sāvi, sātum, sāre, 1. v. a. intens. [propello, "to drive forwards"] *To repel, drive back, ward off.*

**prō-sēquor**, sēquūtus sum, sēqui, 3 v. dep. [pro, "forwards; sēquor, "to follow"] *In hostile sense: To follow after, pursue, chase the enemy.*—With Acc. of person and Abl. of thing: *To honour or present one with something; to bestow something on one.*

**prōspec-tus**, tūs, m. [prospicio—  
for prospecio, "to look forwards or into the distance"] *A look out, a distant view, the prospect.*

**pro-spīcio**, spēxi, spectum, spīcēre, 3 v. a. [for pro-specio; fr. pro, "before;" specio, "to see"] *To look out for to make provision or provide for.*

**prōtīnus**, adv. [for pro-tēnus; fr. pro, "before;" tēnus, "up to or as far as"] *Of time: Forthwith, immediately.*

**pro-vīdeo**, vīdi, vīsum, vīdēre, 2 v. a. [pro, "beforehand;" video, "to see"] *To foresee; to prepare or provide for.*

**Prōvinciā**, ae, f. ("A province;" hence as applied to Gaul) *The Roman province of Gaul; called in latter times Gallia Braccata and Gallia Nabonensis.*

**prō-vōlo**, vōlāvi, vōlātum, vōlāre, 1 v. n. [pro, "forth;" vōlo, "to fly"] *To rush out, dash forth.*

**proxim-e**, sup.adv. [proxim-us] *Near-est, very near; very recently, shortly before.*

**proximus**, a, um, sup. adj. [= pro-simus; for pro-p-simus] fr. obsoi. prop-is, "near;" superlative suffix simus] Of place: *Nearest, next; very near or close*—With Dat or with Acc.: Of time: *The next, whether before or after; the following; the last.*

**prudent-ia**,iae,f. [prudens, prudent-is, "prudent"] *Prudence.*

**public-ē**, adv. [public-us, "public"] *Publicly; on behalf of the state.*

**publ-icus**, ica, icum, adj. [contracted and changed fr. popūl-icus; fr. popul-us, "the people"] *Pertaining to the people; public (as opposed to "private.")*

**pud-or**, òris, m. [pud-eo, "to be ashamed"] *Shame, a sense of shame.*

**pù-er**, èri, m. [root FU, "to grow," hence, "the growing thing"] *A boy, lad.*

**pug-na**, nae, f. [root pug, whence pug(n)-o, "to puncture or stab"] *A fight hand to hand; a battle, engagements.*

**pugn-o**, àvi, àtum, àre, 1.v.n. [pugn-a] *To fight.—Impers. Pass.: Pugnatum est, The battle was fought or waged.*

**pur-go**, gävi, gäatum, gäre, 1. v. a. [pur-us, "clean"] *To clear, or free, from a fault. to exculpate.*

**püt-o**, àvi, àtum, àre, 1. v. a. [püt-us, "clean, clear"] *To dem, hold, think, suppose.*

## Q.

**Q.**, abbreviation for Quintus.

**qua**, adv. [adverbial abl. fem. of qui] Of place: *At, or in, which place; where.*

**quadr-ä-ginta**, num. adj. indecl. *Forty* [contr. fr. quätfior-a-ginta; fr. quätfior, ; (a), connecting vowel; ginta=kova="ten"]

**quadri-n-genti**, ae, a, num. adj. [changed fr. quatuor-i-n-cent-i; fr. quatuor, "four;" (i), connecting vowel; (n), epenthetic; cent-um, "a hundred"] *Four hundred.*

**quaero**, quaeſivi or quaesili, quaeſitum, querere, 3. v. a.: *To seek.—To ask, enquire.*

**quaestor**, tōris, m. [quaero, through root QUÆS] *A quaestor; a Roman magistrate.*

**quā-lis**, le, adj. *Of what sort or kind.*

**quam**, adv. [adverbial acc. fem. of quis] *In what manner, as, how, how much, as much as.*—Particular uses: after comp. words: *Than; see prius... With Superl.: As much (or little) as possible.—After designations of time: That.*

**quam-diu**, adv. [quam, "as;" diu, "for a long time"] *For as long a time as, as long as*

**quam-ob-rem**, adv [quam, acc. fem. sing. of qui, (relatively) "who, which," (interrogatively) "what;" ob, "on account of;" res, "a thing"] *From which cause or reason, wherefore.—Interrogatively: Wherefore, why.*

**qua-ntus**, nta, ntum, adj. *How great, how much:—in neut. with Gen. of thing measured*

**quā-re**, adv [abl. sing. of qui and res respectively; see quamobrem] *For which cause or reason; wherefore, from what cause, why, wherefore.*

**quar-tus**, ta, tum, num adj. [contr. fr. quatuor-tus; fr. quatuor, "four"] *Fourth.*

**quätfior**, num. adj. indecl. *Four* [akin to téσταρ-ες, téτταρ-ες]

**quätfior-dëcim**, num. adj. indecl. [for quatuor-decem, fr. quatuor, "four," decem, "ten"] *Fourteen.*

**que**, enclitic conj. *And:—que....que, both... .and.* [akin to té].

. **quem-ad-mödum** (or separately, quem ad modum), adv. [ad, after or according to; with the acc. sing. of qui, "who, which;" mödus, "manner"] *After what manner; how; as.*

**quéror**, questus sum, quéri, 3. v. dep. *To complain; to complain of.*

**qui**, quae, quod, pron. Relative: *Who, which, what, th t.*—At the beginning of a clause instead of a conj and demonstr. pron.: *And this.—With Subj.: To point out a purpose: For the purpose of; that; in order to or that; to.—In a restrictive force: As far as.—With ellipse of demonstrative pron.: He, or she, who; that, which.—Quo, abl. sing. neut. with comparatives: By how much:—quo... hoc (or eo), by how much... by so much, the, the.—For idem qui, see idem.—2. Interrogative: In indirect clauses. *What, what sort of.*—Indefinite: *Any.**

**qui-cumque**, quae-cumque, quod. cumquae, pron. rel. [qui; suffix cumque; whoever, whatever; whosoever, whatsoever]

**quid**, adv. [adverbial neut. of 1. quis] *For what purpose, etc.; wherefore, why*

**qui-dam**, quae-dam, quod-dam (and as Subst. quiddam), pron. indef. [qui, indefinite; suffix dam] *Particular, certain; some indefinite person or thing.—As Subst.: Masc.: Sing.: A certain person.—Plur.: Certain persons; some persons or other; some.—Neut.: Sing.: A certain thing.—Plur.: Certain things.*

**quidem**, adv.: *Indeed* :—ne quidem, *At least, certainly, forsooth*.

**qui-n**, conj. [for qui-ne: fr. qui, ablative of relative pron. qui, "who, which; ne=non] With Subj.: *That not, but that*.—After words expressing doubt or ignorance: *That; that not, but that*.

**quin-dēcim**, num. adj. indecl. [for quinque-decem; fr. quinque-e, "five;" decem, "ten"] *Fifteen*.

**quin-ētiām**, conj. [or, as two words, quin, "but indeed;" etiam, "too"] *But indeed too; yea too, moreover*.

**quin-gent-i**, ae, a, num. adj. [for quinque-cent-i; fr. quinque-e, "five;" centum, "a hundred"] *Five hundred*.

**qui-ni**, nae, na, num. distrib. adj. [for quinque-e-ni; fr. quinque-e, "five"] *Five*.

**quinqu-ā-ginta**, num. adj. indecl. ("Five tens;" hence) *Fifty* [for quinque-a-ginta: fr. quinque, "five;" (a), connecting vowel; ginta=kv̄ta="ten."]

**quinque**, num. adj. indecl. *Five* [akin to Gr. πέντε].

**quin-tus**, ta, tum, num adj. [for quinque-tus; fr. quinque-e, "five"] *Fifth*.

**quisque** = qui que.

**quis**, quae, quid, pron. interrog.: In direct questions: *What?* i.e. *what sort of a person or thing*.—In indirect clauses: *Who or what*, i.e. *what person or thing*.—As Subst.: *quis*, *What person, who; quid, What thing, what*.

**quis**, quid, pron. indef. *Anyone, anybody, anything; someone, somebody, something*;—ne quis, *that no one*.

**quis-nam**, quae-nam, quid-nam, pron. interrog. [quis, "who or what?" suffix nam] *Who, which or what, I, etc, pray*.

**quis-quam**, quae-quam, quic-quam or quid-quam, pron. indef. [quis, "any one;" suffix quam] *Any, any whatever*. As Subst.: *Any one, any body*: nec quisquam, *and that no one or nobody*.

**quis-que**, quae-que, quod-que, pron. indef. [quis, "any;" suffix que] *Each, every, any*.—With Superlatives to express universality: *Every most, . . . all the most . . .*

**quis-quis**, no fem., quic-quid r quid-  
quid, or quod-quod, pron. indef. *Whatever, whatsoever*,—As Subst.. *Whoever, whosoever*.

**qui-vis**, quae-vis, quod-vis, pron. indef. [qui, "who;" vis, 2. pers. sing of volo, "to will"] *Who, or what, you please or will; any whatever*.

**quo**, adv. [for quo-m, old form of que-m, acc. masc. sing of qui, "who;"]

*Whither, where; to the end that, in order that, so that, that*.

**quōd**, conj. [adverbial acc. neut. sing. of qui] *Because that, inasmuch as; that; If so be that, as respects that, with respect to.—With other conjunctions. But* :—*quod si, but if*.

**quō-mīnus**, conj. [quo ; mīnus] *With Subj. after verbs of hindering, preventing: That.....not; from doing, etc.*

**quōn-īam**, adv. [for quom-jam; fr quom=quon, "since;" jam, "now"] *Since now, seeing then, because, whereas*.

**quōque**, conj.: *Also, too* :—placed after the word to be emphasized.

**quōt-annis**, adv. (also as two words, quot annis) [quot, "as many;" of time, "each, every, all;" annis, Abl. Plur. of annus, "a year," as Abl. of time] *Every year, each year, yearly*.

**quōtidī-ānus**. āna, ānum, adj. [quōtidī-e, "daily"] *Daily, every day; ordinary, usual, common*.

**quōt-l-die**, adv. [quot, "as many;" of time, "each, every;" (l) connecting vowel; die, abl. of dies, "day"] *On each or every day, daily*.

**quōt-les**, adv. [quot, "how many"] *How many times, how often*.

**quum**, (old form quom), relative adv. and causal conj. [for quom=quem; fr. qui, "who" Relative Adv.: *When*.—Causal Conj: *Seeing that, since, as*.

## R.

**rād-ix**, Icis, f. *Mostly plur.: The lower part of a thing; the foot, bottom of a mountain*.

**rā-mus**, mi, m. *A branch, bough*.

**rāp-ina**, mae, f. [rap-io, "to plunder"] *Plunder, pillage, rapine*.

**rā-tio**, tiōnis, f. [rēō, "to reckon," through root RA, "to think"] *A calculation, estimate; condition; terms; reason; account, design, purpose*.

**rātis**, is, f. *A raft, float*.

**rēcēns**, ntis, adj.: *Fresh, recent*.

**rē-cipio**, cēpi, ceptum, clpēre, 3. v. a. [for re-cāpīo; tr. rē, cāpīo, "to take"] *To take, or get, back; to recover*.—With Personal pron. in reflexive force: *To draw back or withdraw; to betake one's self; to recede; to admit*.

**rē-cūs-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for re-caus-o; fr. re, "against;" caus-a, "a cause"] *To decline, refuse, shrink from*.

**red-do**, didi, ditum, dēre, 3. v. a. [red (=rē with d for de, demonstrative),

"back;" do, "to give"] *To give back, return, restore.*

rēd-ēo, ivi or ii, Itum, ire, v. n. [red (see reddo), "back;" ēo, to go"] *To go or come back; to return.*

rēd-īgo, ēgi, actum, Igēre, 3.v.a. [for red-āgo; fr. red (see reddo), "without force;" īgo, "to lead"] *To bring or reduce into a certain state.*

rēd-īmo, ēmi, emptum, īmēre, 3. v. a. [for red-ēmo, red (see reddo), in "intensive" force: īmo, "to buy"] *To take by contract, to farm; to obtain, procure.*

rēd-intēgro, integrāvi, intēgratum, intēgrare, 1. v. a. [red (see reddo), "again"; intēgro, "to make whole"] *To restore, renew.*

rēdī-tio, tīonis, f. [rēdēo, "to return"; through true root REDI] *A returning, return.*

rē-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcēre, 3. v. a. [re, "back"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead, or conduct, back.*

rē-fēro, tīli, lātum, ferre, v. a. irreg. [rē "back"; fēro; see fēro] *To bring, or carry, back or backwards; pedem referre (to carry the foot backwards; i. e.) to retire, retreat; to give back, return, repay; gratiam referre: see gratia; To release, mention.*

rē-fringo, frēgi, iractum, fringēre, 3. v. a. [for rēfrango; fr. rē, "back;" frango, "to break"] *To break open.*

rēg-īo, lōnis, f. [rēg-o, "to direct"] *A tract, territory, region.*

reg-num, ni, n. [rēgo, "to rule"] *Sovereignty, supreme power; a kingdom.*

rēgrēdior, gressus sum, grēdi, 3. v. dep. [for rēgrādior: fr. rē, "back;" grādior, "to step"] *To return; to withdraw, retire, retreat.*

rējīcio, jēci, jectum, jicēre, 3. v. a. [for rējācio, fr. rē, "back;" jācio, "to cast"] *Of weapons: To cast, throw, or hurl back; to beat back, force back, repel, the enemy; to fling aside, cast away.*

rē-languesco, langūi, no sup., languescēre, 3. v. n. [rē, "without force;" languesco, "to become faint or languid"] *Of the mind: To become feeble or faint; to become enervated.*

rē-linquo, liqui, lictum, linquēre, 3. v. a. [rē, "behind;" linquo, "to leave"] *To leave behind in a place.*

rēliqui-us, a, um, adj. [rē, "back;" linquo, "to leave"] *That is left or remains, remaining.—As Subst.: rēliqui-um, i, n. That which remains, a remainder; nihil reliqui (nothing of a remainder, i. e.), nothing remaining, or left.*

rē-mān-ēo, mansi, no sup., mānēre, 2. v. n. [rē, "behind;" mānēo, "to remain"] *To remain or stay behind.*

rē-min-iscor, no perf. isci, 3. v. dep. [see mens] *To call back to mind, remember.*

rē-mitto, misi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [re, "back;" mitto, "to send"] *To send back; to give up, surrender.*

rēmōvēo, mōvi, mōtum, mōvēre, 2. v. a. [rē, "back;" mōvēo, "to move"] *To remove, withdraw, send away.*

rē-mūnērōr, mūnēratus sum, mūnērāri, 1. v. dep. [rē, "in return;" mūnērōr, "to give or bestow, as a present"] *To recompense, reward, repay, requite.*

rēmus, i, m. [prob. for ret-mus, akin to ē-pet-mós,] "an oar:" cp. épēξσω, "to row"] *An oar.*

rē-nuntiō, nuntiāvi, nuntiātum, nuntiāre, 1. v. a. [re, "back;" nuntio, "to bring word"] *To bring, or carry back word; to report.*

rē-pello, pūli, pulsum, pellēre, 3. v. a. [re, "back;" pello, "to drive"] *To drive back, repulse, repel.*

rēpent-e, adv. [répens, repent-is, "sudden"] *Suddenly, on a sudden.*

rēpentino, adv. [répens, repentis, "sudden"] *Suddenly, "on a sudden."*

rēpent-inus, ina, inum, adj. [répens, repent-is, "sudden"] *Sudden, unexpected.*

rē-pērō, pēri, pertum, pērīre, 4. v. a. [for rē-pārō; fr. re, "again;" pārō, "to produce"] *To find or meet with; to find out, discover, ascertain.*

rē-pētō, pētivi, or pētii, pētitum, pētēre, 3. v. a. [rē, "back;" pētō, "to seek;" hence "to demand"] *To demand back; to claim what is due, to exact; poenas repeter (to exact satisfaction for an injury, i.e., to inflict punishment in return for an injury committed).*

rē-praesent-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [rē, "without force;" praesens, praesentis, "present"] *To do, or perform, at once, or immediately.*

rē-prēhendo, prēhendi, prēhensum, prēhendēre, 3. v. a. [re, "back;" prēhendo, "to seize"] *To blame, censure, find fault with.*

rēpūdī-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [repudi-um, "a divorce;" hence, "to divorce;" hence] *To reject, refuse.*

rē-pugno, pugnāvi, pugnātum; pugnāre, 1. v. n. [re, "against or in opposition;" pugno, "to fight"] *To resist, oppose, prove an obstacle.*

**res, réi, f.** [root **VUR**, "to speak;" cp. **ver-bum**; Gk. **épew**, **pýua**] *A thing, matter, affair.*

**rē-scindo, scidi, scissum, scindere,** 3. v. a. [re, "away;" **scindo**, "to cut"] *To cut away, or to pieces; to break up a bridge.*

**rē-scisco, scivi or sciī, scitum, sciscere,** 3. v. a. [re, "without force;" **scisco**, "to ascertain"] *To ascertain, find out, learn, get intelligence of.*

**re-scribo, scripsi, scriptum, scribere,** 3. v. a. [re, "again;" **scribo**, "to write"] *Of soldiers: To enrol anew; to re-enlist; a word used when soldiers were transferred from their original corps to some other part of the army.*

**rē-servo, servāvi, servātum, servāre,** 1.v.a. [re, "back;" **servo**, "to keep"] *To keep back, reserve.*

**rē-sisto, stiti, stitum, sistere,** 3. v. n. [re, "against;" **sisto**, "to stand"] *To withstand, resist, make opposition or resistance; with Dat.*

**rē-spicio, spexi, spectum, spicere,** 3. v. n. [for **rē-spicio**; fr. **ré**, "back;" **spicio**, "to look"] *To look back or behind.*

**rē-spondēo, spondi, sponsum, spondere,** 2. v. a. and n. [re, "in return;" **spondēo**, "to promise solemnly"] *To answer, reply.*

**respon-sum, si, n.** [for respond-sum; fr. **re-spond-ēo**, "to answer"] *An answer, reply, response.*

**res-publica, rē-publicae, f.** [**res**; **publica** (f. of **publicus**), "public"] *The commonwealth, state.*

**rē-spūo, spūi, spūtum, spūre,** 3.v.a. [re, "back;" **spūo**, "to spit"] *To reject, refuse.*

**rē-stitūo, stitūi, stitūtum, stitūre,** 3. v. a. [for **re-statuo**; fr. **re**, "again;" **statuo**, "to set up"] *To set up again; to replace; to restore.*

**rē-tinēo, tinūi, tentum, tinēre,** 2. v.a. [for **rē-tēnēo**; fr. **ré**, "back;" **tēnēo**, "to hold"] *To hold, or keep, back; to restrain.*

**re-vello, velli, vulsum, vellēre,** 3.v.a. [re, "away;" **vello**, "to pluck"] *To pluck, or pull, away; to tear apart.*

**rē-vertor, versus sum, verti,** 3.v.dep. [re, "back;" **vertor**, "to turn one's self"] *To return.—In the ante-Augustan age the perfect and its derivatives were commonly taken from a form **re-vertō**. The present tenses of **revertō** are critically certain in only two passages in two old authors.*

**rē-vōco, vōcāvi, vōcātum, vōcāre,** 1.

v. a. [re, "back;" **vōco**, "to call"] *To call back, recall.*

**rex, rēgis, m.** [for reg-s; fr. **reg-o**, "to rule"] *A king.*

**rhēda, ae, f.** *A four-wheeled chariot or carriage.*

**ripa, ae, f.** *A bank of a river or stream.*

**rōgo, āvi, ātum, āre,** 1. v. a. [prob. **rōgo**, "to be beg, request, solicit.

**rōt-a, ae, f.** *A wheel.*

**rüb-us, i, m.** [prob. **rüb-ō**, "to be red"] *A blackberry bush, a bramble.*

**rüp-es, is, f.** [trumpo, "to break," through root RUP] *A cliff, a steep rock.*

**rursus, adv.** [contr. fr. **rēversus**, "turned back"] *Back again; again, anew, afresh.*

## S.

**saep-e, adv.** [adverbial neut of obsol. **saep-is**, "frequent"] *Frequently, often. oftentimes.—Particular adverbial expression: saepēnūmēro (=saepe; nūmēro, abl. of numerus, "number") Oftentimes, over and over again.*

**sägitt-ārius, āria, ārium, adj.** **sägitt-a**, "an arrow") *Qf or belonging to an arrow; arrow.-—As Subst: sägittārius, ii, m. A bowman, archer.*

**sälū-s, tis, f.** [for salv-ts; fr. **salv-ēo**, "to be well or in good health"] *Safety, preservation.*

**sancio, sanxi, sanctum, sancire,** 4.v.a. [**SANC**, a strengthened form of the root **SAC**, to strengthen, whence **sac-er**, "sacred"] *To confirm, ratify.*

**sán-itas, Itālis, f.** [**san-us**, "sound" in mind] *Soundness of mind, right reason.*

**sarc-īna, Inae, f.** [**sarc-īo**, "to patch"] *A package.—Plur.: Baggage.*

**sati-s, adj. and adv.** Adj.: *Enough, sufficient, satisfactory*—**satis habere**, to hold or deem enough.—Adv.: *To denote diminution, like the English "enough?" Moderately, tolerably.*

**satis-faciō, feci, factum, facere,** 3.v.n. ("To do sufficiently;" hence) *With Dat.: To give satisfaction to, whether by word or deed; to make amends; to ask pardon of or apologise to a person offended.*

**satisfac-tiō, tōnis, f.** [**satisfac-īo**, "to satisfy"] *Satisfaction, amends, apology, made to a person offended.*

**saxum, i, n.** [root **sag**, "sharp;" cp. **sagax**, sagittia] *A huge rough stone; a detached portion or fragment of rock.*

**scēlus. ēris, n.** *A wicked deed; wickedness, guilt.*

**scient-ia**,iae,f.[sciens,scient-is,  
"knowing"] *Knowledge*.

**scio**, scivi or sci, scitum, scire, 4. v. a.  
*To know.*

**scribo**, scripsi, scriptum, scribere, 3.  
v. a. With de: *To write about; to make  
mention of in writing.*

**scū-tum**, ti, n. [see custos] *A shield.*  
**sec-tio**, tōnis, f. [sēc-o, "to cut"]  
*Booty, spoil, plunder.*

**se** (reduplicated sese), acc. and abl. of  
pron. sui.

**sēcius**; see secus.

**sēcrēt-o**, adv. [sēcrēt-us, "secret"]  
*Secretly, privately.*

**sēcum**=cum se; see cum.

**sēcund-um**, prep. gov. acc. [sēcundus,  
following"] *Immediately after, next  
to, after in time or succession; according  
to, in accordance with.*

**sēc-undus**, unda, undum, adj. [for  
sequ-undus; fr. sēqu-or, "to follow"]  
*Second: Favorable, propitious fortu-  
nate.*

**sēc-us**, adv. [prob. for sēquus; fr.  
sēqu-or, "to follow."] In comp. with  
nihilo (*less by nothing*; i.e.) *none the  
less, nevertheless:* here nihilo is abl. of  
measure.

**sed**, conj. [same word as sed=sine,  
"without"] *But.*

**sē-dēcim** (sometimes written sex-  
decim), num. adj. indecl. [for sex-decem;  
fr. sex, "six;" décem, "ten"] *Sixteen.*

**sēd-es**, is, fr. [sēd-ēo, "to sit"] *A  
dwelling-place, abode.*—Plur.: *A settle-  
ment as comprising the abodes of several  
persons.*

**sēditi-ōsus**, ōsa, ōsum, adj. [con-  
tracted from sēditiōn-ōsus; fr. sēditio,  
"sedition"] *Seditious.*

**sēm-el**, adv. [akin to Sans, sama, "the  
same;" Gk. ὅμοιος] *Once.*

**sēmen-tis**, tis, t. [for sēmin-tis; fr.  
sēmin-o, "to sow"] *A sowing of seed.*

**sem-per**, adv. [see semel] *Ever,  
always, at all times.*

**sēn-ātor**, ātōris, m. [sēnēx, sēn-is,  
"an old man"] *A member of the council,  
or assembly of the elders of a state; a  
senator.*

**sēn-ātus**, ātus, m. [senex, sēn-is,  
"old man"] *The Senate; i.e. the council,  
or assembly, of elders.*

**sēnātusconsultum**; see consul-  
tum.

**sēn-ex**, sēnis, adj. comm. gen. [sen-eo,  
"to be old"] *Old, aged, advanced in*

**years.**—As Subst. : comm. gen.: *An old  
man.*

**sē-ni**, nae, na, num. distrib. adj. plur.  
[for sex-ni; fr. sex, "six"] *Six each, or  
apiece; six.*

**sentent-ia**,iae,f. [for sentient-ia; fr.  
sentiens, sentient-is, "thinking"] *An  
opinion.*

**sentio**, sensi, sensum, sentire, 4. v. a.  
*To perceive.*

**sentis**, is, m. *A thorn, briar*

**sēpār-tim**, adv. [sēpār(a)-o, "to  
separate"] *Separately, apart.*

**sepes**, is, f. *A hedge, fence.*

**sept-em**, num. adj. indecl. *Seren*  
[akin to ēπτά].

**septen-triō**, triōnis (more frequently  
plur.), m. *The North Pole, the North*  
[fr. Sans. root STAR, "to strew or scatter,"  
and so "a strewer (of light); a descriptive  
term for a star. According to this  
view "septen-triones" means "the seven  
stars."

**sept-imus**, īma, īnum, num. ord.  
adj. [sept-em] *Seventh.*

**sēpul-tūra**, turae, f. [sēpēllo, "to  
bury"] *A burying, burial.*

**sēqu-or**, ūtus sum, i, 3. v. dep. [root  
SAR, "to follow;" cp. ēπωμαι] *To follow;  
to follow in pursuit of, pursue.*

**serv-ilis**, ille, adj. [serv-us, "a  
slave"] *Of or belonging to, a slave;  
servile*

**serv-itus**, Itūtis, f. [serv-us, "a  
slave"] *Slavery, bondage, servitude.*

**serv-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, v. a. *To save,  
protect, defend from harm, keep un-  
harmed* [akin either to ēpū-w, ēpū-ōpāi,  
"to draw or drag," and so, "to draw  
away or rescue" from an enemy, etc.; or  
to Sans. sarv-a, "whole, entire," and so,  
"to make or keep whole," etc.]

**serv-us**, i, m. [akin to ēpūw, "to  
drag"] *A slave, servant.*

**se-se**; see se.

**seu**; see sive.

**sex**, num. adj. indecl. *Six* [ēξ].

**sex-a-gint-a**, num. adj. indecl. [sex,  
"six": (ā); ginta=kōvta="ten"] *Sixty.*

**sex-cent-i ae**, a, num. adj. [sex,  
"six;" cent-um, "a hundred"] *Six  
hundred.*

**sexdēcim**; see sedecim.

**si**, conj. *If* [ēi].

**sībi**, dat. of pron. sui.

**si-c**, adv. [for si-ce, akin to hic,  
"this;" suffix ce] *In this way, so, thus;*

*in like manner; to such a degree, so much; sic, ut, to such a degree, that.*

**sic-ut**, adv. [sic, "so;" ut, "as"] *So as, just as.*

**sign-i-fer**, fēri, m. [signum, "a standard;" (i) connecting vowel; fer-o, "to bear"] *A standard-bearer.*

**significā-tio**, tōnis, f. [signific(a)-o, "to signify"] *An intimation, a signal.*

**sign-i-fic-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, l. v. a. [for sign-i-fic-o; fr. sign-um, "a sign;" (i) connecting vowel; fāc-io, "to make"] *To show, point out, indicate.*

**signum**, i. n. *A military standard or en-sign:—signa ferre, to carry on the standards, i.e. to break up the camp; for inferre signa see infero. A signal.*

**silva**, ae, f. *A wood, forest* [akin to *vāfñj*].

**silv-estris**, estre, adj. [silv-a, "a wood"] *Wooded, overgrown with woods, woody.*

**sim-ūl**, adv [see semel] *Together, at the same time; simul atque, as soon as.*

**sīmūlā-tio**, tōnis, f. [simul(a)-o, "to feign"] *A feint, pretence, dissimulation.*

**sīmūl-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, l. v. a. [for sīmil-o; fr. sīmil-is, "like"] *To feign, pretend, disseminate.*

**si-n**, conj. [shortened fr. si-ne; fr. si, "if;" ne, "not"] *If on the contrary, if however, but if.*

**sīne**, prep. gov. abl. [akin to se, "apart;" "without"] *Without.*

**singūl-āris**, āre, adj. [singul-i, "single"] *Remarkable, extraordinary.*

**sīn-gūli**, gūlæ, gūla (rare in sing.). num. distrib. adj. *One by one, single.* In adverbial force: *Individually.*

**sīnister**, tra, trum, adj. *Left, i.e. on the left hand or side.—As Subst.: sinistra, ae, f. The left hand or side.*

**si-quis**, qua, quid or quod, indef. pron. [si, "if;" quis, "any"] *If any—As Subst. m.: quis, If any one.*

**si-ve**, (contr. seu), conj. [si, "if;" ve, "or"] *Or if, whether:—sive (seu).....sive (seu), be it that.....or that; if.....or if; whether.....or.*

**sōcer**, cēri, m. *A father-in-law.*

**sōcius**, ii, m. [root *sak*, "to follow;" hence sequor]. *An ally, confederate.*

**sōl**, sōl's m. [root *set*, "to be bright;" ep. ser-en-i-u-s (=sel-enus); Gk. σελήνη, "the moon;" ἡλιος (=σύλιος); Ger. helle, "brightness"] *The sun.*

**sollicitā-tio**, tōnis, f. [sollicit(a)-o,

"to instigate"] *An instigating, inciting, instigation, urging on.*

**sollicit-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, l. v. a. [root *sollus*, Oscan=totus, "all," "whole;" celo, "to stir up"] *To instigate, urge, urge on; to tamper with.*

**sōl-um**, adv. [sōl-us, "alone"] *Only, merely.*

**sōlum**, i, n. *Ground, soil.*

**sōlus**, a, um (Gen. solius, Dat. soli), adj. *Alone, only, sole.*

**sōror**, ūris, f. *A sister: soror ex matre, a sister by his mother, i.e., a half-sister on his mother's side.*

**sors**, tis, f. *A lot.*

**spātiūm**, li, n. *Distance, interval.—Of time: Space, Interval.*

**spēci-es**, ēi, f. [spēc-i-o, "to see"] *Appearance, show.*

**spec-to**, tāvi, tātum, tāre, l. v. a. intens. [id.] *To look at earnestly; to regard.*

**spēculā-tor**, tōris, m. [specul(a)-or, "to spy out"] *A spy, scout.*

**spēcul-or**, ātus sum, āri, l. v. dep. n. [specul-a, "a watch-tower"] *To spy, act the spy.*

**spēr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, l. v. *To hope, expect.*

**spē-s**, ēi, (Gen. Abl. and Dat. Plur. only in post classical writers) f. [for spēr-s; fr. sper-o: as seen by spēr-es, an old Acc. Plur. in one of the earliest Roman writers] *Hope, expectation:—in spēm venire (to come into, i.e.) to form or entertain a hope*

**spir-itus**, itūs, m. [spir-o, "to breathe"] *In bad sense and mostly in plur.: Haughtiness, pride, arrogance.*

**sponte**; see spontis.

**spon-tis**, Gen., and **spon-te**, Abl. (fr. an obsolete spons, of which no other cases than the above are found). f. [for spond-tis and spond-te; fr. spond eo, "to pledge"] (Gen. spon-tis occurs only in phrase Suae spon-tis esse, to be one's own master, or at one's own disposal). Abl. sponte, with or without poss. pron.: Of one's (my, thine, his, etc.) own accord; freely, spontaneously.

**stā-tim**, adv. [st(a)-o, "to stand"] *Immediately, at once.*

**stā-tio**, tōnis, f. [st(a)-o, "to stand"] *Of soldiers: A post, outpost, station.*

**stātūo**, stātni, stātūtum, stātūtre, 3. v. a. [stātus, uncontr. gen. stātū-is, "a standing position"] *To set down as certain in one's own mind; to consider, deem, judge; to decide, resolve, determine.*

**stā-tūra, tūrae, f.** [st(a)-o, "to stand"] *Height, stature.*

**stī-pendī-ārius, ária, árium, adj.** [stipendi-um, "tribute"] *Tributary.*

**stī-pendī-ūm, ii, n.** [fr. stip-pendium; fr. stips, stip-is, in original force of "small coin" heaped up: pendo, "to pay"] *Tribute, impost, tax, payable in money, as distinguished from vectigal, which was paid in kind.*

**strēp-ītus, itūs, m.** [strēp-o, "to make a noise"] *A noise.*

**stūd-ēo, ūi, no sup. ēre, 2. v. a.** [akin to Gr. σπουδή, "haste"] *To be eager for, very desirous of.*

**stūd-ūm, ii, n.** [stūd-ēo, "to be eager"] *Eagerness, eager desire; zeal, energy.*

**sūb, prep. gov Acc. and Abl.:** [akin to Gr. ὑπό] With Acc.: *Under, below, beneath; near, close to.* —With Abl.: *Under; at the foot of.* —Of time *In during, at.*

**sub-dūco, duxi, ductum, dūcere, 3. v. a.** [sūb, "from below;" dūco, "to draw"] Of troops: *To withdraw, draw off.*

**sūb-ēo, ivi or ii, Itum, ire, v. a.** [sūb, "under;" -ēo, "to go"] *To enter; to undergo.*

**sūbit-o, adv.** [sūbit-us, "sudden"] *Suddenly, on a sudden.*

**sub-jic̄io, jeci, jectum, jic̄ere, 3. v. a.** [for sub-jac̄o; fr. sub, "under;" jác̄o, "to throw"] *To throw, place, or bring under or beneath, to expose to peril*

**sublātus, a, um: P. perf. pass. of tollo.** *Elated, proud, haughty.*

**sub-lēvo, lēvāvi, lēvatum, lēvare, 1 v. a.** [sūb, "from beneath;" lēvo, "to lift up"] *To raise or hold up; to assist, aid.*

**sub-mīnist̄ro mīnistrāvi, mīnistrātum, mīnistrāre, 1. v. a** [sūb, "without force;" ministro, "to supply"] *To supply, furnish.*

**sub-mitt̄o, misi, missum, mitt̄ere, 3. v. a.** [sub, "without force;" mitto, "to send"] *To send, dispatch.*

**sub-rōo, rūi, rātum, rūrē, 3. v. a.** [sūb, "below;" rōo (act) "to cast down"] *To undermine.*

**sub-sēquor, s̄-quūtus sum, sēqui, 3 v. dep.** [sub, "close after;" sēquor, "to follow"] Of a general or troops: *To follow close after.*

**sub-sid̄-ūm, ii, n.** [for sub sid̄-ūm; fr. sub, "behind;" sid̄-ēo, "to sit"] Of troops: *A body of reserve; the reserves; aid, assistance, succour.*

**sub-sisto, stiti, stitum, sist̄ere, 3. v. n.** [sūb, "without force;" sist̄o, "to stand"] *To take a stand or position.*

**sub-sum, fūi, esse, v. n.** [sūb, "beside, near;" sum, "to be"] *To be beside or near; to be at hand.*

**sub-trāho, traxi, tractum, trāhēre, 3. v. a.** [sūb, "from below;" trāho, "to draw"] Of troops: *To draw off, withdraw.*

**sub-vēho, vēxi, vectum, 3. v. a.** [sūb, "from below;" vēho, "to carry"] *To carry, bring or convey up a stream or by a stream.*

**suc̄-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cēdere, 3. v.** [for sub-cēdo; fr. sūb, "towards or up to;" cēdo, "to go or come"] *To go, or come, towards or up to; to approach.*

**succes-sus, sus, m.** [for succed-sus; fr. succed o, "to advance"] *An advancing, advance, approach.*

**sūi (no Nom., Dat. sibi; Acc. and Abl. se, or reduplicated sese (same in both numbers), pron. reflex. Of, etc., himself, herself, itself, or themselves.**

**sum, fūi, esse, v. n.** [in pres. tenses akin to ēo-ūi=ei-ūi, and to Sans. root AS, "to exist, to be," in Perf. tenses akin to φύω, φύ-μi, and Sans. root BHG, "to be"] *To be* —With Gen.: *To be the property of; to belong to.*

**summ-a, ae, f.** [summ-us, "highest"] *The whole of anything, as opp. to a part; summa belli. the whole conduct or management of the war.*

**sum-mōvēo, mōvi, mōtum, mōvēre, 2. v. a.** [for sub mōvēo; fr. sūb, "from beneath"; mōvēc, "to move"] *To drive off or away.*

**sū-mo, mpsi. mptium, mēre, 3. v. a.** [contr. fr. sub-mo : fr. sub, "up;" emo, "to take"] *To take up, to lay hold of; to take by choice; to choose, select.—Of punishment: To inflict.*

**sum-ptus, ptūs, m.** [sūmo, "to suspend"] *Expense, cost, charge.*

**sūper-b-e, adv.** [superb-ūs, "proud"] *Proudly, haughtily, arrogantly.*

**sūpēr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a.** [sūper, "past"] *To conquer, vanquish, overcome.*

**sūper-sēdēo, sedi, sessum, sēdere, 2. v. n.** [sūper, "upon, above;" sēdēo, "to sit"] With Abl.: *To abstain, or refrain, from; put off.*

**super-sum, fui, esse, v. n.** [sūper, "over and above;" sum, "to be"] *To remain; to be left as a remainder.*

**sūpēr-us, a, um, adj. sūpēr, "above"] Comp. : sūpērior, us;** *Of locality;*

**Higher, upper** —Of time: *Former, preceding.* —*Sup.*: *summus*, a, um. —Of locality: *Highest; the highest part of that denoted by the substantive to which it is in attribution.* —Of degree: *Highest, utmost, very great, most important.*

**sup-pēto**, pētivi, or pētīl pētūm, pētēre, 3. v. n. [for sub-peto; fr. sūb, "near;" pēto, "to go near to"] *To be in hand, or in store.*

**supplex**, Icis, comm. gen. [supplex, "suppliant"] *A suppliant or supplicant.*

**supplicā-tiō**, tōnīs, f. [supplic(a)-o, "to supplicate"] *A public prayer or thanksgiving.*

**supplic-īter**, adv [supplex, supplicis, "suppliant"] *As a suppliant would, submissively, humbly.*

**supplic-īun**, il, r., [supplic-o "to kneel down"] *Punishment*, see sumo.

**sup-porto**, portāvi, portātūm, portāre, 1. v. a. [for sub-porto; fr. sub, "up to;" porto, "to carry"] *To carry, convey, or bring up to.*

**suprā**, adv. and prep. contracted tr. original form supérā, adverbial abl. of supérus] Adv.: *Of time: Before, above, previously.* Prep. gov. acc. *Above.*

**sus-cipio**, cēpi, ceptum, cipere, 3. v. a. [for subs-cipio fr. subs (=s)b, "from beneath," cipio, "to take"] *To undertake.*

**suspic-īo**, ēnis, f. [suspicor, "to suspect"] *Suspicion.*

**suspic-īa**, ātus sum, āri. 1. v. dep. [suspic-īo, "to look at secretly;" hence, "to mistrust" - in which sense it is found, perhaps, only in participles] *To mistrust, suspect.*

**susten-to**, tāvi, tātūm, tāre, 1. v. intens. [sustinēo, "to sustain," through root SUSTEN, see sustineo] *To sustain; to hold out.*

**sus-tinēo**, tāndī, tentum, tāndre, 2. v. a. [for subs tānēo, fr. subs (=sub), "upwards, up: tānēo, "to hold"] *To bear, support, sustain, maintain. To bear up against, withstand: to check, restrain.*

**sū-us**, a, um, possess. pron. [1. sū i; Of, or belong ng to himself (hersef, etc.); his, etc., own.—As Subst.: sai, ē um, m. plur. Their countrymen.—sūt. órum, n. plur. Their things, property]

## T.

**tābernā-cūlum**, cūll, n. [taberna, uncontr. Gen. tabernā-i "hut"] *A tent.*

**tā-būla**, būlæ, f. [see tempus; hence,

"a plank, a writing tablet"] *A writing, list.*

**tāc-ēo**, ai, Itum, ēre, 2. v. n. and a.: Neut.: *To be silent, hold one's peace.* Act.: *To be silent, or to hold one's peace, about.*

**tāc-ītus**, Ita, Itūm, adj. [tācēo, "to be silent"] *Silent, holding one's peace, in silence.*

**tam**, adv. [prob. akin to tālis, "such"] With Adj.: *So, so very.*

**tam-diu**, adv. [tam, "so;" diu, "for a long time"] *For so long a time, so long.*

**tāmen**, adv. [perhaps a lengthened form of tam, "so"] *Nevertheless, however, notwithstanding, yet, still.*

**tām-etsi**, conj [contr. for tāmen-etsi; fr. tāmen, "however;" etsi, "though?"] *However, though, notwithstanding, although.*

**tan-dem**, adv [for tam-dem; fr. tam, "so far," with suffix dem] *At length, at last.*

. **tanti**, tantōpēre; see tantus.

**tantū-lus**, Ia, lum, dim. adj. [for tantō-lus, fr. tantus, uncontr. gen. tanto-i, in force of "so small"; So very small, so small.

**tantū-m**, adv. [adverbial neut. of tantus, "so much," also "so little"] *So much; only.*

**taut-us**, a, um, adj.: 1. *So much — Adverbial expression: Tantopere, also written separately tanto opere (=tanto, abl. of tantus; opere, abl. of opus, "work"; With so great a work; i.e.) So greatly; so great.* — Tanti: Elliptic Gen. of quality or value. *Of so great price or value.*

**tardior**, us; see tardus.

**tard-o**, avi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [tard-us, "slow"] *To impede, present a hindrance or obstacle to, check, retard.*

**tar-dus**, da, dum, aij. [prob. for trah-dus; fr. trāh-o]

**teg-tum**, ti, n. [for teg-tum; fr. tēg-o, "to cover;" root tēg-, "to cover;" cp. Gk. τέγνω, O.H.G. dack (deck); Old Norse. til ek; English. thatch] *The roof of a building a house, dw. thing, building.*

**tēg-ūmentum**, ūmenti, n. [tēg-o, "to cover"] *A covering, cover.*

**tēlum**, i, n. [=tend-lum; fr. tend-o, "to hurl or launch"] *A weapon whether for hurling or for close quarters.*

**tēmēr-ārius**, āria, ārūm, adj. [obsol temer us, "despising"] *Rash, headless*

**těměr-e**, adv. [id.] ("After the manner of the *temerūs*"; hence) *Rashly, inconsiderately*.

**tempérant-ia**, i.e., f. [temperans, *temperant-is*, "moderate"] *Moderation*.

**tempér o**, āvi, ātum, āre, v.n. [prob. akin to tempus, in its etymological force; see tempus] *To refrain, abstain, forbear*. —With Dat. of reflexive pron.: *To moderate, or restrain, one's self*.

**temp-pus**, pōris, n. [root TAM, "to cut off"; cp. tem-plum, *τέμενος*] *Time or season of the year; time in general; omni tempore, at every time, i.e., always*.

**tendo**, tētendi, tensum or tentum, tendēre, 3 v.a. [root TAN, "to stretch out"; cp. Gk. *τείνω*] *To stretch out or forth; to extend*.

**těn-ēo**, ūi, tum ēre, 2 v.a. [see tendo] *To hold; to possess, be in possession of, etc.; to hold or keep back; to restrain; to occupy*.

**těnēr**, ēra, ērum, adj. [see tendo] *Of tender age, young*.

**ten-to**, tāvi, tātum, tāre, 1. v.a. intens. [tēn-ēo] *To attempt, endeavour to do*.

**ter**, num. adv. [tres, tr-iūm (with e inserted, "three")] *Three times, thrice*.

**ter-gum**, i. n. *The back, whether of men or beasts: terga vertēre, to turn the backs, i.e., to take to flight, to flee*

**ter-ra**, rae, f. [akin to *τέρπομαι* "to be dry"] *The earth, soil, ground*.

**terr-ēnus**, ēna, ēnum, adj. [ter ra, "earth"] *Of, or belonging to, the earth*.

**terr-or**, ūris, m. [terr-ēo, "to frighten"] *Afright, alarm, terror*.

**ter-tius**, tia, tium, adj. [tres, t(e)r-iūm, "three"] *The third*.

**testā-mentum**, menti. n. [test(a)-or, "to testify or bear witness"] *A will*.

**test-īmōniūm**, imōnii, n. [test-or, "to bear witness"] *Witness, evidence, testimony*.

**testis**, is, comm. gen. *A witness*.

**test-ūdo**, ūdīnis, f [test-a, "a shell"] Military term: *A covering, shed, or pent-house, used for sheltering soldiers engaged in working a battering-ram. From the head of the ram being projected and then drawn under cover, the machine was called "testudo," or "the tortoise;" the name "testudo" was also given to a body of soldiers who, formed in a compact mass, and with their shields overlapping each other like the scales of a tortoise, advanced to the attack of a place, or defended themselves in the field against the enemy*.

**tīmēo**, ūi, no sup., ēre, 2. v.a. and: n. Act.: *To be afraid of, to fear*. —Neut.: *To fear, be afraid*.

**tim-īdus**, ūda, ūdum, adj. [tīm-ēo] *Fearful, afraid, timid*.

**tim-or**, ūris, m. [tīm-ēo] ("A fearing", hence) *Fear, terror*.

**tōl-ēro**, ērāvi, ērātum, ērāre, 1 v.a. [root TOL; see tollo] *To bear, endure*.

**tollo**, sustūli, sublātum, tollēre [root TOL, whence tali: see fero] *To lift up: tollere anchoram, to weigh anchor; to take up from its place; to carry or convey away; to do away with, remove*.

**tor-mentum**, menti, n. [fr. torqueo, "to hurl"] *A military engine for hurling missiles*.

**tōt-īdem**, num. adj. indecl. [tot, "so many"] *Just so many, just as many*.

**tōtus**, ta. tum, adj. ("Increased", hence) *All, all the, the whole, the whole of*.

**trab-s**, is, f. *A beam, timber* [akin to *τράπ-ηξ*, "a beam"].

**trā-do**, dīdi, dītum, dēre, 3. v. a. [tra (=trans), "across"; do, "to give"] *To give up, hand over, surrender*.

**trág-ūla**, ūlæ, f. [for trähula; fr. trah-o, "to drag"] *A kind of large javelin*.

**trāho**, traxi, tractum, trähēre, 3 v. a. *To drag away or along*.

**trans**, prep. gov. acc. *Beyond, across, over*.

**trans-dūco**, duxi, ductum, dūcēre, 3. v. a. [trans, "across"; dūco, "to lead"] *To lead across*.

**trans-grēdior**, gressus sum, grēdi, 3. v. dep. [for transgrādior: fr. trans, "across"; grādior, "to step"] *To pass over, pass, cross*.

**transver-sus**, sa, sum, adj. [for transvert-sus, fr. transverto, "to turn across"] *Cross, transverse*.

**trans-ēo**, ūvi or ūi, Itum, Ire, v. a. irreg. [trans, "across"; ēo, "to go"] *To go across a thing; to cross, or pass, over*.

**trans-fīgo**, fixi, fixum, fīgēre, 3. v. a. [trans, "through"; fīgo, "to fix"; "to pierce"] *To pierce through, transfix*.

**trans-nāto**, nātāvi, nātātum, nātāre 1. v. a. [trans, "across", nāto, "to swim"] *To swim across*.

**trans-pōto**, portāvi, portātum, portāre, v. a. [trans, "across"; porto] "to carry"] *To carry, or convey, across, or over; to transport*.

**trē-cent-i**, ae, a, num, adj. [for trī-cent-i; fr. tres, trī-um, "three"; centum, "a hundred"] *Three hundred*.

**tres**, *tria*, (Gen. *trium*), num. adj. *Three* [*treis*, *tria*].

**tribūnus**, *ūni*, m. [tribus, "a tribe"] *A tribune*.—*tribunus militum, a military tribune*.

**tribū-ō**, *ūi*, *ūtum*, *ūcre*, 3. v. a. *To ascribe, assign*.

**tri-dūum**, *ūi*, n. [for *tri*-divum; fr. *tres*, *tri*-um, "three"; *di*-es, "a day"] *A space of three days; three days*.

**tri-ginta**, num. adj. indecl. ("Three tens;" hence) *Thwty* (*tres*, *tri*-um, "three;" *ginta*=*kovra*= "ten").

**tri-nī**, *nae*, *na*, num. distrib. adj. [*tres*, *tri*-um, "three"] ("Three each or apiece;" hence) *Three*.

**tri-plex**, *plicis*, adj. [for *tri*-plie-s: fr. *tres*, *tri*-um, "three;" *plico*, "to fold"] *Three-fold, triple*.

**tris-tis**, *te*, adj. [akin to *trēw*, "to tremble"] *Sad, sorrowful*.

**trist-itia**, *Itiae*, f. [*trist-is*, "sad"] *Sadness, sorrow*.

**tūb-a**, *ae*, f. [akin to *tub*-us, "a tube"] *A straight trumpet*.

**tum**, adv. *At that time; then* [prob. akin to a demonstr. root to; Gr. *tō*].

**tūm-ultus**, *ultūs*, m. prob. *tūm-ēo*, "to swell"] *Tumult, uproar, disturbance; insurrection, sedition; servilis tumultus, the insurrection of the slaves*.

**tūm-ūlus**, *ūli*, m. [id.] *A rising ground, mound*.

**turpis**, *e*, adj. *Shameful, base, disgraceful*.

**turp.itūdo**, *Itūdīnis*, f. [*turp-is*, in force of "disgraceful"] *Disgrace, shame, dishonour*.

**turris**, *is*, (acc. sing. *turrim* or *turrem*), f. *A tower* [*tūppis*].

**tū-tus**, *ta*, *tum*, adj. [*tū-ōr*, "to see to"] *Safe, secure*.

## U.

**ū-bi**, adv. [akin to *qui*] *Of time: When; ubi primum (when first, i.e.) as soon as.—Of place: Where*.

**ulciscor**, *ultus sum*, *ulcisci*, 3. v. dep. *To punish, take vengeance on*.

**ullus**, *la*, *lum*, adj. [for *un-lus*; fr. *un-us*, "one"] *Any*.—As Subst.: *ullius, ius, m. Any one*.

**ultēr-ōr**, *ius*, comp. dī sol. *ulter*, "that is beyond"] *Fur*.

**ultr-ā**, prep. gov. acc. [obsol. *ulter*, *ultr-i*, "that is beyond"] *Beyond*.

**ultr-o**, adv. [id.] *To the further side, on the other side; beyond* :—*ultrō*

*citroque*; see *citro*.—*On his, etc., part; of one's own accord*.

**ūn-ū**, adv. [adverbial abl. of *ūn-us*, "one"] *At one and the same time; in company, together*

**ūnde**, adv. [for *eu-nde* (= *qu-nde*), fr. *qui*, "who, which"] *From which place, whence*.

**undēcim-us**, *a*, *um*, num. adj. [undecim, "eleven"] ("Of, or pertaining to, undecim;" hence) *Eleventh*.

**und-i-que**, adv. [und-e; (i) connecting vowel; que, indefinite suffix] ("Whencesoever;" hence) *From all parts or every quarter; on all sides*.

**ūn-i-versus**, *versa*, *versum*, adj. [un-us "one:" (i) connecting vowel; versus, "turned"] *All together or collectively; the whole, entire, etc.*—As Subst.: *ūniversi*, *ōrum*, m. plur. *All, the whole of a body of persons*.

**un-quam**, adv. [un-us, "one"] *At ang (one) time; ever*.

**ūn-us**, *a*, *um*, (Gen. *ūnius*; Dat. *ūni*), adj.: *One; with Gen. of "thing distributed," *quarum*.*—As Subst. n.: *unum, One thing; alone, only*.

**urb-s**, *is*, f. [prob. *urb-o*, "to mark out with a plough"] *A city, a walled town*. Amongst the Romans: *The city*, i. e. Rome.

**urgēo**, *ursi*, no sup., *urgēre*, 2. v. a. *To press hard or beset*.

**u-s-que**, adv. [akin to *qui*; with (s) epenthetic; *qué*, indefinite suffix] *Even; usque ad, even up to or till a stated time; even up to a stated place*.

**ū-sus**, *sūs*, m. [for *ut-sus*, fr. *ūt-or*] *Use, employment; service, advantage, benefit*:—*ex usu, advantageously;—usu esse, to be serviceable, either alone or introduced by ad; e.g. ad bellum.*—*Custom; experience*.

**ut** (originally *ūti*), adv. and conj. [prob. akin to *qui*] *Ad.: as; when.*—*Conj.: *Thūt=to* with English Inf.—So that; to the end that, in order that*.

**ūt-ōr**, *ra*, *rūm*, (Gen. *utrius*; Dat. *utri*), adj. [prob. like *ut*, akin to *qui*] *Whether, or which, of the two; which.—One, or the other; either one; either of two*.

**ūtēr-que**, *utrāque*, *utrumque* (Gen. *utrius-que*; Dat. *utrique*), pron. adj. [uter, "which" of two; "one or the other;" que, "and"] *Both one and the other; both, each*.

*ūti*; see *ut*.

**ūtor**, *ūsus sum*, *ūti*, 3. v. dep. With Abl.: *To use, make use of, employ*.

Of laws: *To enjoy the exercise of.*—Of peace: *To be in possession of, enjoy.*

**utr-im-que**, adv. [uterque utr-(ius)-que; with adverbial suffix im inserted between que and the first portion of this compound word] *On both sides.*

**utrum**, adv. [adverbial neut. of uter] *Whether:*—**utrum...an**, *whether...or;*—**utrum...necne**, *whether...or not.*

**ux-or**, ōris, f. *A wife, spouse.*

## V.

**vāc-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v n. *To be empty, void, or vacant; to be unoccupied.*

**vāc-ūus**, ūa, ūum, adj. [vāc-o, "to be empty"] *With ab: Devoid or destitute of; without.*

**vādum**, i, n. [vād-o, "to go"] ("That through which one can go;" hence) *A shallow, shoal.*

**vāg-or**, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [vagus, "wandering"] *To wander, roam at large, etc.*

**väl-ēo**, ūi, Itum, ēre, 2. v. n. ("To be strong or vigorous" in body; hence) *To be strong in some respect; i.e. to be powerful, etc.—To prevail.*

**vall-um**, i, n. [akin to vall-us, "a stake, palisade"] *An earthen wall or rampart set with stakes, palisades; a palisaded mound.*

**vār-ius**, ia, Ium, adj. ("Party-coloured, spotted;" hence) *Varying, different.*

**vast-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1.v.a. [vast-us, "empty"] ("To make vastus;" hence) *To lay waste, devastate, ravage.*

**vāticinā-tio**, tiōnis, f. [vāticin(a)-or, "to predict"] *A predicting, soothsaying; a prediction.*

**ve**, enclitic conj. *Or* [akin to Sans. vā, "or."]

**vect-igal**, Igális, n. [vect-is, in etymological force of "carrying"] *A tax, impost, etc., paid to a state or sovereign.*

**vēhēmen-ter**, adv. [for vehementer; fr. vehemens, vehement-is, "violent"] *Violently; strongly, powerfully, vigorously.*

**vel**, conj. [akin to vol-o, vel-le, "to wish"] ("Wish or choose;" hence) *Or if you will, or:—vel.....vel, either .... or.*

**vēl-ox**, ōcis, adj. [prob. for vol-ox; fr. völ-o, "to fly"] *Swift, quick, speedy.*

**vēl-üt**, adv. [vel, "even;" ut, "as"] *Even as, just as.*

**ven-do**, didi, ditum, dēre, 3.v.a. [ven-um, "sale;" do, "to place"] *To sell, vend.*

**vēnīo**, vēni, ventum, vēnire, 4. v n [akin to Gk. βαίνω] *To come;*—Impers. Pass.:—ventum est, (it was come by them, i.e.) *they came.*

**verbum**, i. n. [root VER, "to say;" cp. ἐρέω] *A word.*

**vēr-ēor**, itus sum, ēri, 2. v. dep. *To fear, dread, be afraid of.*

**verg-o**, (perf, acc. to some versi), no sup., ēre, 3.v.n. *To bend, turn, incline itself; i.e., of places: To lie, or be situate, in any direction; to verge towards.*

**vēr-o**, adv. . [vēr-us, "true"] ("In truth;" hence) *But in fact, but indeed, however.*

**ver-so**, sāvi, sātum, sāre, 1.v.a. intens. [for vert-so; fr. vert-o, "to turn"] *To turn much or often; to keep turning;*—Pass. in a reflexive force, *to be engaged in; to buried with.*

**ver-to**, verti, versum, vertēre, 3. v. a. *To turn:—terga vertere, (to turn their backs, i.e.) to take to flight.*

**vērūs**, a, um, adj.: *True*

**vesper**, ēris and ēri, m. [root vas, "to dwell;" hence, "the dwelling place of the sun;" cp. ἑσπέρος] *The evening.*

**vētēr-ānus**, āna, ānum, adj. [vēt-us veter-is, "old"] *Of soldiers: Having served for a long time; veteran.*

**vēt-o**, ūi, Itum, āre, 1.v.a. *To forbid.*

**vēt-us**, ēris, adj. [akin to Fētos, "a year"] *That has existed for a long time, old, ancient.*

**vexo**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. intens. [=veh-so; fr. veh-o] *To harass, ravage, lay waste.*

**vex-illum**, illi, n. dim. [for vēl-illum; fr. vēlum, "a sail;" hence, "a cloth"] *A standard, banner, flag*

**via** (old form vē-a), ae, f. *A way, road.*

**victor**, tōris, m. [vinco, "to conquer," through root vic] *Conqueror, victor.*—As Adj.: *Conquering, victorious.*

**victōr-ia**,iae, f. [victōr, victōr-is, "a conqueror"] *Conquest, victory.*

**vic-tus**, tūs, m. [for vigv-tus; fr. vivo, "to live;" through root vigv] *A living; a way, or mode, of life.*

**vic-us**, i, m. [root vic, "to dwell"; cp. villa (=vic-ula); οἶκος] *A village.*

**vīdēo**, vidi, visum, vīdere, 2. v. a.: [root vid, "to see"; cp. θεῖν] *Act.: To see "to see."*

**vīgil-ia**,iae, f. [vigil-o, "to watch"] *A watch by night. The Romans divided the night into four watches, of three hours each, commencing at 6 o'clock in*

the evening, and ending at 6 o'clock in the morning.

**vi-ginti**, num. adj. indecl. ("Twice ten"; hence) *Twenty* [for bi-ginti; fr. bi. (=bis), "twice"; ginti=κοντα= "ten"].

**vi-men**, minis, n. [vi-čo, "to bind"] *A pliant twig; an osier, withie.*

**vincio**, vinxi, vincum, vincere, 4 v. a. [prob. akin to vinc] *To bind, tie.*

**vincō**, viei, victum, vincere, 3. v. a. *To conquer, overcome, vanquish.*

**vinc-ūlum**, ūli, n. (vincio, "to bind") *A chain, bond, fetters.*

**vires**: see vis.

**vinē-a**, ae, f. [vinē-us, "pertaining to the vine"] *A vinea*; a kind of pent-house, mantlet, or shed (built like an arbour), used in sieges by the assailing party to defend themselves against the missiles and the fire hurled from the walls. Its usual length was sixteen feet, and its height eight feet. The sides were formed of wicker work, while the roof was composed of wicker work or planks covered with raw hides, wet cloths, earth, etc., in order to prevent the fire hurled by the enemy from destroying it. Under cover of these *vineae* the besiegers carried on their military operations; either undermining the walls, or making a breach in them by the use of the *aries*, or battering-ram.

**vin-um**, i. n. *Wine* [Fοίνος].

**vīr**, viri, m. *A man.*

**vir-tus**, tūtis, f. [vir, "a man"] *Courage, bravery, valour.*

**vis** vis (plur. vires, ium)f.; *Strength, might, power, force, violence* :— vim facere, ("to make," i.e.) *employ violence or force* [Fις].

**visus**, a, um, P. perf. pass. of vidō:— pro visto, (*for that which had been seen, i.e.*) *as seen.*

**vi-ta**, tae, f. [for viv-ta; fr. viv-o, "to live"] *Life.*

**vito**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. *To avoid, shun, shrink from.*

**vix**, adv. *With difficulty, scarcely, hardly.*

**vōc-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a.: *To call, etc.; to cite, summon, etc.*

**vōlo**, vōlūi, no sup., velle, v. s. irreg.: *To be willing; to wish, desire; to have a wish or desire for.*—Only in interrogations, whether direct or indirect *To signify, mean* [akin to βόλομαι (=βούλομαι). "to wish."

**vōlun-tas**, tātis, f. [for vōlent-tas; fr. vōlens, vōlent-is, "willing"] *Will, inclination, free-will; wish, desire; good-will, favour.*

**vōlup-tas**, tātis, f. [vōlup-e, "according to one's desire or inclinations"] *Delight, pleasure.*

**vox**, vōcis, f. [for voc-s; fr. vōc-o, "to call"] *The voice; a word, speech, etc., as that which is spoken.*

**vulg-o**, adv. [adverbial abl. of vulg-us, "the common people"] *Commonly, generally, everywhere.*

**vulgus**, i, m. and n. *The multitude or mass; the common people, mob, populace.*

**vulnēr-o**, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. vulnus, vulnēr-is, "a wound"] *To wound.*

**vuln-us**, ēris, n. *A wound.*

**vul-tus**, tūs, m. [prob. vōl-o, "to wish"] *Expression of countenance, mien, looks; face.*

# Chapter I. Verbs

sum, esse, fui to be

divide, dividere, divisi, divisum. To divide

incolo, incolere, incolui, incoluum <sup>inhabit</sup> to inhabit

appello, appellare, appellavi, appellatum <sup>to call</sup> to call

differo - differre, distuli, dilatum. To differ

commeo, comare, commeair, commeatum. travel

absorbo, abesse, abfui. To be away

importo, ~~imp~~ are - avi - atum, To carry into

gero - gerere, gessi, gestum. To carry, towage

praecedo, cedere, - cessi, - cesso. To surpass

contendo, - tendere, - tendi, - tentum. Content

prohibeo, - ere, - ui, itum. hind, keep back

oblineo, - ere, - ui, - tentum, hold, oblainc

dico, dicere, dixi, dictum. To say

capio, capere, cepi, captum - To take.

continuo, - ere, - ui, tentum - To be enclosed

attingo, attingere, attingo, attactum - border on

vergo. vergere. perfect & supine wanting. To slope.

orior, oriri, ortus sumi - To rise

extinguo - ere, - ui, tentum - To extind

specto - , are, avi, alium - To look at earnestly

## Chapter II. Verbs.

inducere, -ere, -duxi; ductum - to lead in  
Lacio - cere - feci, factum - to make  
persuader, persuadere, persuasi, persuasum.

### To persuade

exire, exire, exivi, exitum - to go out.  
praestare - praestare, praestiti, praestitum -  
    to surpass, excel, to be superior to  
potior, potiri, potitus sum - to obtain, become  
fieri, fieri, factus sum. to come to pass  
vagari, vagari, vagatus sum - to wander  
inferre, inferre, intuli, illatum. to carry into  
possum, posse, potui - to be able  
afficere, afficere, affeci, affectum - to afflict  
habeo, habere, habens, habitum - to have  
arbitror - arbitrari. arbitratus sum - to think  
patio, patere, patui (no supine) to extend,

## Chapter III.

permovere - ere, movi, motum, to move  
constituere, constitui, constitutum.

### To determine

comparo, -are, -avi, alium - to procure  
coemere, coemere, coemi, coemptum - to buy up  
suspicio. suspectare, suspectavi, suspectum.  
    To be in doubt.

confirmare, confirmare, confirmari, confirmationem  
    To confirm

conficio, conficere, confeci, confectum  
    To accomplish

duco, ducere, duxi, ductum. to lead  
deligo, deligere, delegi, delectum. to choose  
suscipio, suscipere, suscepit, susceptum  
                        to undertake  
occupo, occupare, occupavi, occupatum.  
                        to occupy  
conor, conari, conatus sum. to endeavor  
do, dare, dedi, datum. to give  
probo, probare, provavi, probatum  
                        to prove  
concilio, conciliare, conciliavi, conciliatum.  
                        to bring about  
spero, sperare, speravi, speratum  
                        to hope.

## Chapter IV.

enuncio - are, avi, atum. divulge, reveal  
cogeo cogo, cogere, coegeri, coactum. to compel  
oporet. oporetur, oportuit - it behoves (impersonal)  
danno are, avi, atum. to condemn  
cremo, are, avi, atum. to burn  
eripo - eripere, eripui, eruptum. to escape  
incito, are, avi, atum. to excite.  
exequor - exequi, exequuntis sum. to follow  
morior, moriri; mortuus sum. to die:  
conoscō, conscientia, conscientia, concitum.  
to commit suicide.

## Chapter V.

- Paro - are, avi, alium to prepare  
incendo, ere, i, sum. to set fire to.  
comburo, comburere, combusci, combustum  
to burn
- subeo - subire, subiri, subitum - to undergo  
pubeo - pubere. füssi, füssum, to be old  
tulor - uti, usus sum - to use  
exrero - exrurere, exussi, exustum - to burn  
proficio, proficisci, profectus sum, to set on  
adscisco, adsciscere, adsciri, acts civitum.

## To form

- expago - are, avi, alium - Fattick. vact  
recipio, recipere, recepi, receptum - to take

## Chapter VI.

- impendo, impendere. to verhang  
fluxo - fluere, fluxi, fluxum to flow.  
pacio - are, avi, alium to tranquillize  
existimo are, avi, alium. to think.  
video. videre, vidi, visum. to see  
convenio - convenire, conveni, conuentum  
to come together

## Chapters VII

- mentis are, avi. atum. to amuse  
mature are, avr. atum, to make fit  
imperio are, avi. atum, to command  
rede - de, recidere, recidit, recidit  
to break up  
age - are, avi, atum, to ask  
ties - linere, licui. facilius - to be  
affordable,  
tenuis, tenuer, tenui, tentum to hold  
secede, recedere, excede, excedit, excedit  
to ray or fall  
cells, pellere, pepuli, paulsum  
leisure  
pepsi - patere, avi, atum - to think,  
excede Celer, concurre, concurrevit  
to go out  
contar - die, avi, atum - to refuse  
respondere, responsive, respondit,  
responsum to answer  
comit, comite, compice, compicere  
to take.  
dicto - ari, avi, atum - to do  
dicto - dictum, dictor, dictator, dicitur  
to choose.  
reducere, reverti, reversum sunt  
to turn back.

## Chapter VIII.

dispens, dispensare, dispensari,  
dispositionem to dispense of  
commod, commodare, communitas  
communitatum - to furnish  
negg-are, nigrum - to deny  
dare dodi datur - to give  
extender ostendere, extendi, extensum  
- to show  
depon, depolare, deplici, depectione,  
- to throw down (not hope)  
propon - proponere, propria, propositionem  
- to put forward  
persuader persuadere, persuaderi,  
- persuasion, ~~to tickle~~  
desistre desistere, desistere,  
abditure - to abandon

## Chapter IX.

relinquer relinquare, religeri, relictio  
- to leave behind  
are are, ari, atum - to obtain  
stolido - stolidus, stolidus (no spine)  
- to be devoid of  
vol- volle, volens (no spine)  
- to be willing  
assumpt - assupcere, ascepta  
- assumption to undertake  
assupcere are, ari, atum - to obtain  
perficio perficere perfice, perfection  
- to accomplish with a brief & brief

paliōr, paliō, passus sum  
it suffer.

obligo, obligare, obstinari.  
obstruction - to bind

### Chapter X.

renuntio. are, avi, alium - to report.

intelligo, intelligere, intellexi  
intellectum - to perceive

conscrībo scribere, scripsi, scriptum

hīemo - are, avi, alium - to winter

### Chapter XI.

Populor - ari, alius sum - to lay waste

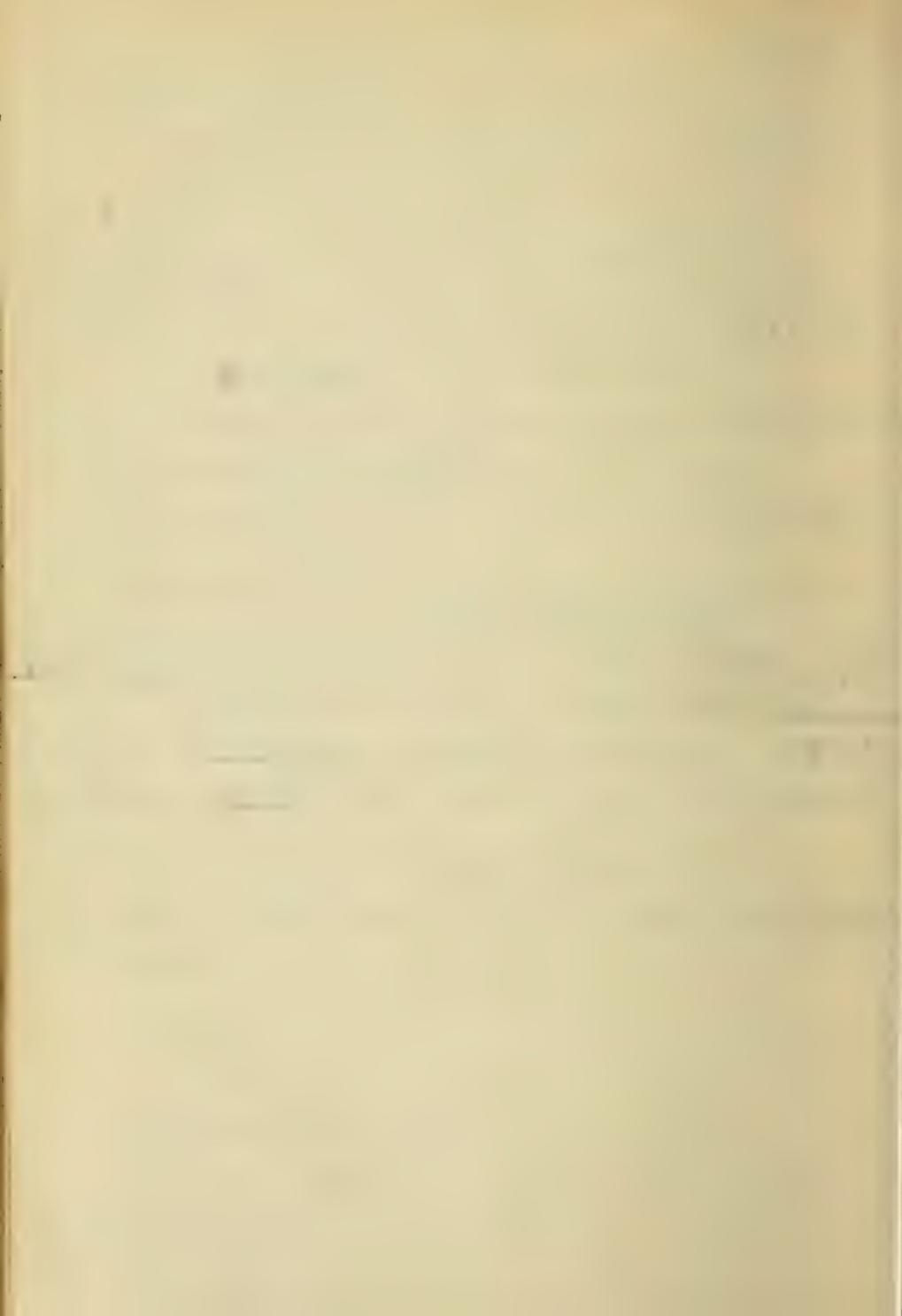
rogō are, avi, alium. to ask

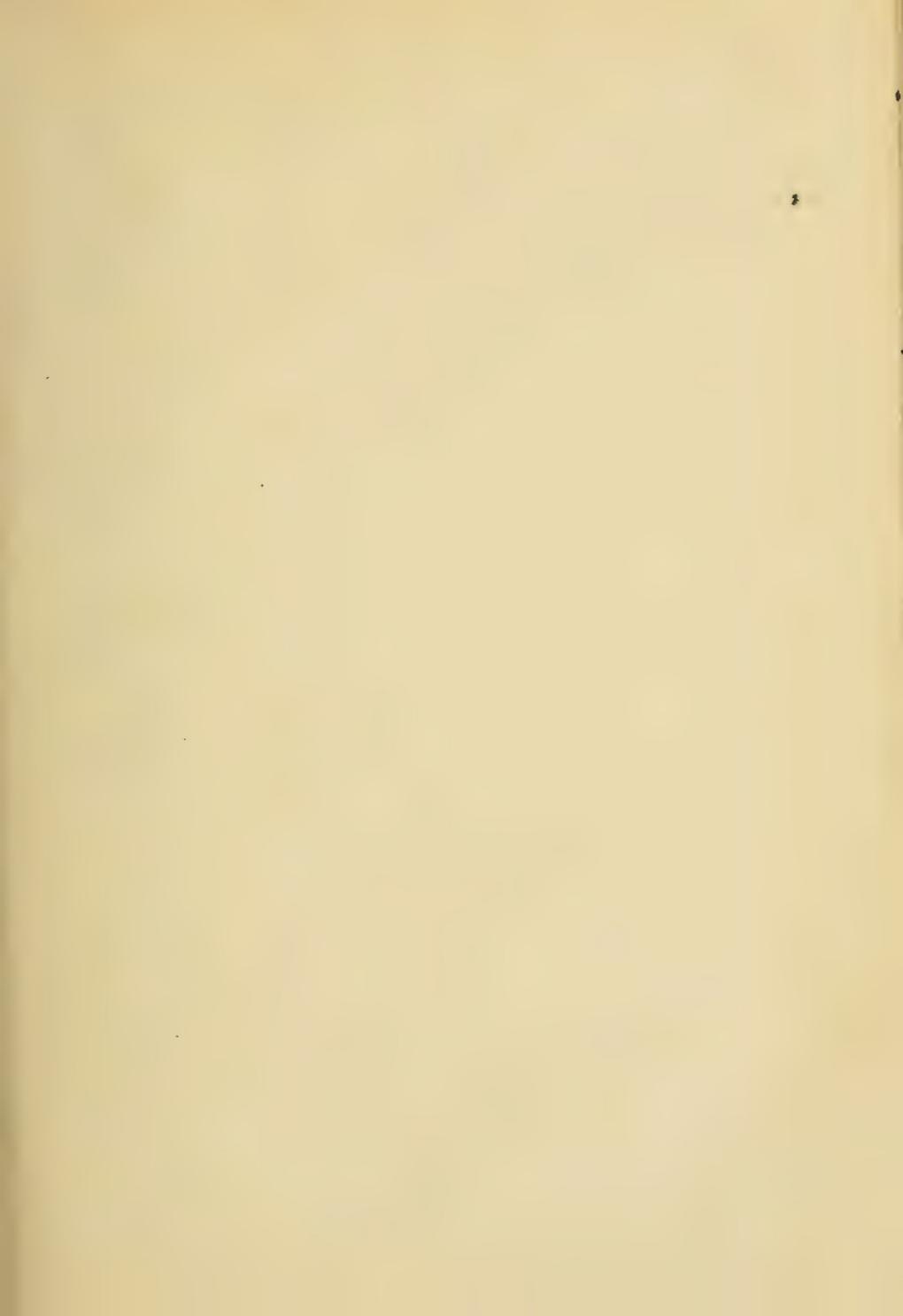
debo. ere, ui, itum - ought to, I owe to

demonstrō-are, avi, alium, show, point out

### Chapter XII.

transeo, ire, ixi, itum, to cross

























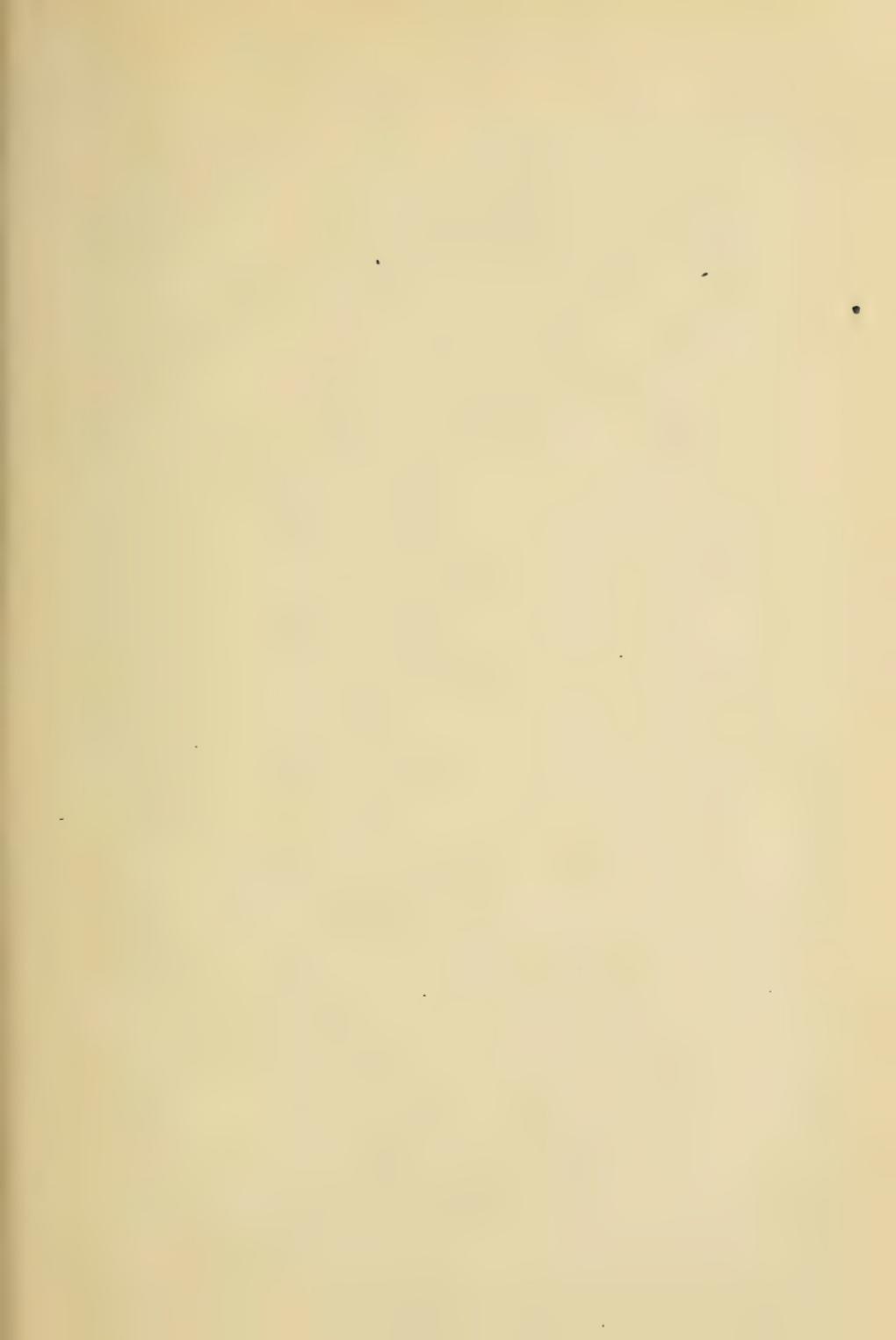






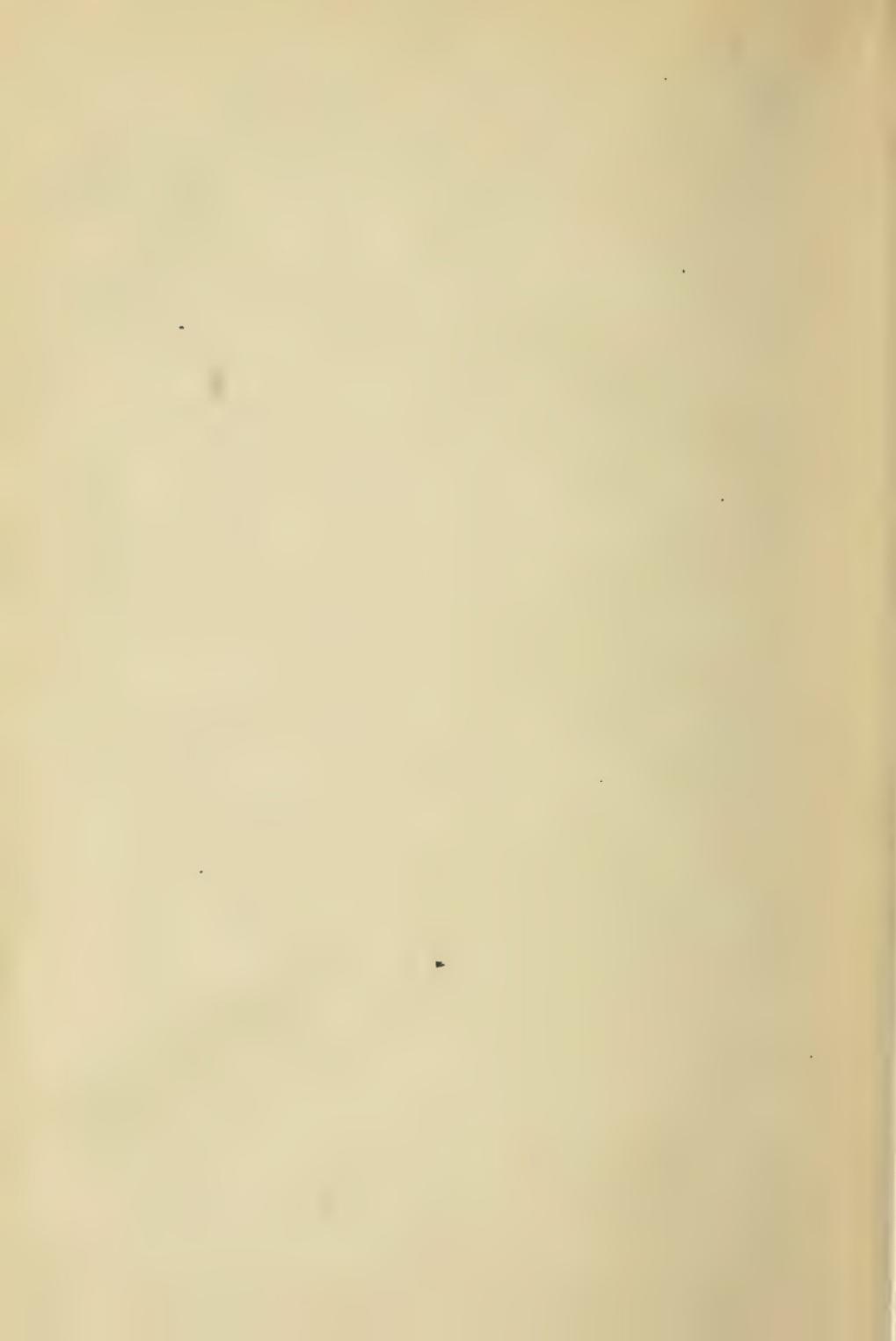






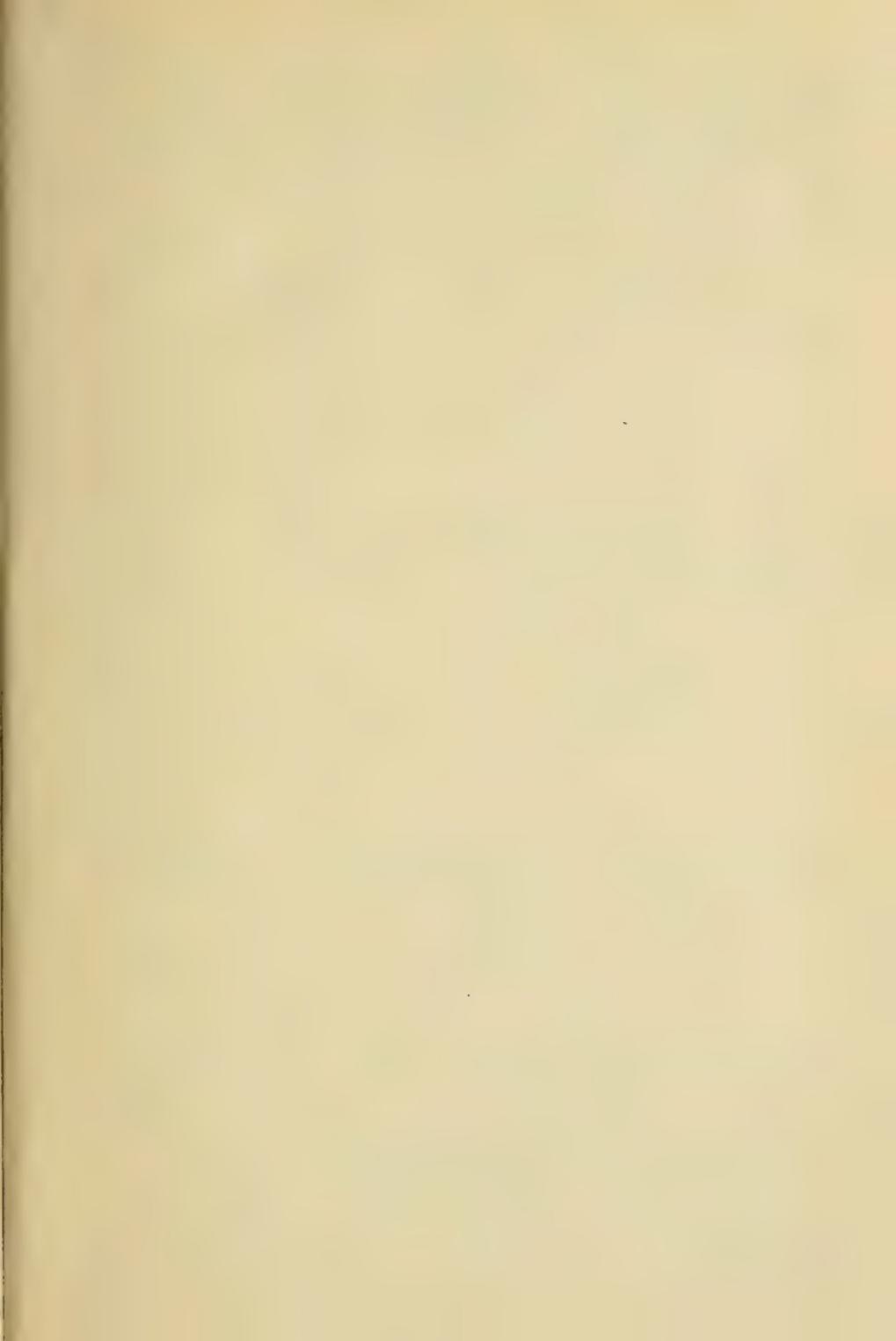












books - now you find we were my  
old companion friend  
with principal trust now; from  
no person - ignorant,  
helpless, foolish!

is (valuing) being  
known by others?  
similia similes

# THE COPP, CLARK CO., LIMITED.

---

## CLASSICS.

---

### Xenophon's *Anabasis*, Book III.

White's Grammar School Text and Vocabulary. With Explanatory Notes by JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.

75 Cents.

(Notes only, in separate volume, 35 Cents.)

---

### Homer's *Iliad*, Book VI.

With Life of Homer, Critical and Explanatory Notes, &c., by REV. T. H. L. LEARY, D.C.L.

30 Cents.

---

### Vergil's *Aeneid*, Book V.

Notes and Vocabulary by JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.

60 Cents.

---

### Caesar's *Bellum Gallicum*, Books I. & II.

Notes, Vocabulary and Maps by JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.

75 Cents.

(Also in separate volumes, each 50 Cents.)

---

### Kelley's & Giles' Keys to the Classics,

List sent upon application.

---

### Simpson's Latin Prose,

PART I.—CAESARIAN PROSE.

Special Canadian Edition, - - - 60 Cents.

GERMAN.

---

Riehl's *Culturgeschichtliche*,

PITT PRESS EDITION.

Notes and Index by H. J. WOLSTENHOLME, B.A.

— IN ONE VOLUME WITH —

Schiller's *Der Taucher*,

Notes by W. H. VAN DER SMISSSEN, M.A.

\$1.50.

---

Freytag's *Die Journalisten*,

Commentary by WALTER D. TOY, M.A.

40 Cents.

---

FRENCH.

---

Enault's *Le Chien du Capitaine*,

and Daudet's *La Belle Hivernaise*,

With Notes and Vocabulary by E. J. MCINTYRE,  
St. Catharines Collegiate Institute.

75 Cents.

---

Erckmann-Chatrain—"Madame Therese,"

Notes by PROF. F. BECKER, Harvard College.

70 Cents.

---

Labiche—*La Grammaire*,

Notes by SCHELE DE VERE, Ph.D., LL.D.

30 Cents.

---

De Fivas' Introductory French Reader,

50 Cents.

---

THE COPP, CLARK CO., LTD., TORONTO.

# ENGLISH.

---

## Shakespeare's *Tempest*,

CLARENDON PRESS EDITION.

Notes by W. A. WRIGHT, M.A., LL.D., Trin. Coll., Cambridge.  
40 Cents.

---

## Scott's *Ivanhoe*,

BLACK'S EDITION.

With Author's Notes.  
15 Cents.

---

## Macaulay's *Warren Hastings*,

With Introduction, Chronological Tables, Critical and  
Explanatory Notes, &c.

— TOGETHER WITH —

## Notes on Composition and Analysis of Scott's Ivanhoe,

By G. MERCER ADAM

— AND —

GEORGE DICKSON, M.A.,  
*Principal Upper Canada Coll.*

40 Cents.

---

## Chaucer's Prologue,

CLARENDON PRESS.

Edited by REV. R. MORRIS, LL.D. With additional Notes by  
REV. W. W. SKEAT, Litt. D.

Special Canadian Edition, - - 60 Cents.

---

## Literature, 1890-91,

SELECTIONS FROM LONGFELLOW.

With Life of Longfellow, Notes, &c., by H. I. STRANG, B.A.,  
and A. J. MOORE, B.A.

75 Cents.

---

THE COPP, CLARK CO., LTD., TORONTO.

